TEIXEIRA

HISTORY

OF

PERSIA

DS
272
.T2

LOND. 1715

Class I Sa Ta

Book .T2

Rechtsf. 1.305

354
1473

P. Lamsvelt fec

THE HISTORY OF *PERSIA.*

CONTAINING,

The LIVES and Memorable ACTIONS of its KINGS from the first Erecting of that Monarchy to this Time; an exact Description of all its DOMINIONS; a curious Account of *India*, *China*, *Tartary*, *Kermon*, *Arabia*, *Nixabur*, and the Islands of *Ceylon* and *Timor*; as also of all Cities occasionally mention'd, as *Schiras*, *Samarkand*, *Bokara*, &c. MANNERS and CUSTOMS of those People, *Persian* Worshippers of Fire; Plants, Beasts, Product, and Trade.

WITH

Many instructive and pleasant Digressions, being remarkable Stories or Passages, occasionally occurring, as Strange Burials; Burning of the Dead; Liquors of several Countries; Hunting; Fishing; Practice of Physick; famous Physicians in the *East*; Actions of *Tamerlan*, &c.

To which is Added,

An Abridgment of the LIVES of the KINGS of *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*.

The *Persian* History written in *Arabick*, by *Mirkond*, a famous Eastern Author; that of *Ormuz*, by *Torunxa*, King of that Island, both of them Translated into *Spanish*, by *Antony Teixeira*, who liv'd several Years in *Persia* and *India*; and now render'd into *English*.

Pedro Teyeira

By Captain *JOHN STEVENS.*

LONDON: Printed for *Jonas Brown*, at the *Black Swan* without *Temple-Bar*. MDCCXV.

DS272
.T2

R.D. 9104

THE

PREFACE.

PERSIA *is at this time, and has been for ſeveral Ages, one of the great Eaſtern Monarchies, and yet the Accounts we have hitherto had of it in* Engliſh *have been no better than Fragments. Several Travellers have deſcrib'd the Country, and given us the Lives of ſome of their latter Kings; the* Turkiſh *Hiſtory here and there has ſomething of them occaſionally; other Books make mention of the Conqueſts of it by the* Tartars *and the* Sarazens. *A compleat Hiſtory of that Kingdom from its Foundation to this Time has been ſtill wanting, and is what the Publick is here preſented with, as a Work doubtleſs acceptable to all curious Perſons, the* Spaniſh *from which it is now tranſlated be-*

ing very ſcarce, and the Arabick *from which that was taken very little underſtood. All Nations have their fabulous Originals, and therefore it is hop'd none will condemn this Work for what may appear Romantick in its remoteſt Antiquity; for it is but reaſonable to allow the* Perſians *the ſame Liberty we take our ſelves as to thoſe Primitive Times. Nor are we to conclude that all thoſe Things which may perhaps appear to us incredible are abſolutely falſe, ſince it is moſt certain that the* Aſiatick *Nations were civiliz'd, and had the uſe of Letters long before us, and conſequently their Hiſtories may with Truth extend much further than ours. The Judicious will not be apt to condemn Things ſlightly, being ſenſible that there is nothing perfect in this World, and for thoſe Ages which are ſomething remote from the firſt Original of that Kingdom, there does not appear to be the leaſt juſt Cauſe of Objection againſt what is here ſaid of them. Not to detain the Reader too long, we ſhall now give him as much of* Teixeira's Spaniſh *Preface to his Tranſlation from the* Arabick, *as is proper for the underſtanding of the Motives that induc'd him to write, and of his Performance. His Words are as follows.*

Having,

PREFACE.

Having, in my Youth, been addicted to reading of Hiſtory, I was often at a ſtand on Account of the Diſagreement there is among Authors about the ſame Things. This I more particularly obſerv'd in what has been variouſly and confuſedly tranſmitted to us in Writing by thoſe who went before us concerning the Kings of *Perſia* and their Succeſſion; among which Authors are *Procopius*, *Agathius*, *Genebrardus*, *Zonaras*, *Tornamira*, and ſeveral others; whoſe Relations are ſo uncertain, that they ſeldom agree in any Point. I labour'd under this Uneaſineſs for ſome time, 'till going over to *India*, and the Eaſtern Pars, and travelling there I came to *Ormuz*, and the Dominions of *Perſia*; where the ſame Curioſity ſtill poſſeſſing me, I laid hold of the Opportunity to reſolve my Doubts, and to that End, and to diſcover the true Hiſtory of thoſe Kings and Antiquities, I began to make Inquiry after them, but found my ſelf more perplex'd than before; for when I ask'd for *Cyrus*, *Artabanus*, *Ahaſuerus*, and others mention'd by our *Greek* and *Latin* Hiſtorians, I could hear nothing of them, or their Actions, agreeable to what theſe have related of them. At length, having acquainted ſome *Perſians*, Men of

Knowledge and well read, with my Desire, after much Discourse they advis'd me, since I design'd to know the History of their Kings, to take up with what had been writ of them in their Chronicles, the Authors whereof being nearer at Hand, deliver'd their Actions with less Confusion and more Certainty than those of other Nations, who were often mis-led either by Prejudice, or Distance, or both of them. I lik'd the Advice, and in order to make the true use of it, enquir'd and was inform'd, that the History in greatest Reputation among them was one they call *Tarik Mirkond*, that is, *Mirkond*'s *Chronicle*, which I purchas'd, and having perus'd, and finding him very extensive and universal as to the Affairs of *Persia*, I extracted as much as the Publick is here presented with, concerning the Number and Succession of their Kings, from the first of them to him that is now reigning, which being altogether new and not publish'd by any other, I thought might be acceptable.

It is not my Design to argue upon doubtful Points, or to confuse the Opinions of others, but only briefly to relate what the *Persians* have preserv'd by Tradition, and is confirm'd as Truth

by

by their Writings; and ſince they look upon it as ſuch, it is reaſonable we ſhould do ſo too; for we ought rather to believe the Natives, who ſpeak like Eye-witneſſes, than Strangers in this Particular; ſo that this Hiſtory of ours may be of uſe for the perfecting of others, which have hitherto been very imperfect. The *Portugueſe* Hiſtorian, *John de Barros*, makes mention of *Mirkond*'s Chronicle in his Decads, but for want of underſtanding the Language, could give us no more than the Name.

Beſides the ſhort Account of the Kings, this Book contains ſome Curioſities, moſt of them taken notice of in the Margent, which I have inſerted, as believing them pat to the Purpoſe and diverting. I am ſenſible that ſome of them might have been more properly plac'd in the Second Book; but having at firſt deſign'd to publiſh only the Firſt, they were plac'd there, and I thought it not worth while afterwards to remove them; the Reader may give entire Credit to them, for they were either ſeen by my ſelf, or receiv'd from Perſons I believe as I would my own Eyes.

The Proper Names either of Men, or of Places, or of other Things, may per-

haps be thought harſh and difficult of Pronunciation, which I could eaſily have adapted to our Language; but thought it better to give them their own Sound, by reaſon the altering of them generally creates Confuſion; for had thoſe who have writ, or tranſlated Hiſtories, been always careful to give Men and Places their Proper Names, without any Alteration, there would be leſs Confuſion in reading of them. And in regard that this Book may happen to be read by ſome Perſon that has attain'd the Knowledge of the *Perſian* and *Arabick* Languages, who may call in Queſtion any of the Etymologies I produce upon Occaſion, I deſire ſuch to take Notice, that the more univerſal Languages are, the more they vary in their Terminations, according to the Provinces they are us'd in, whereof there are Inſtances enough in our own and in the *French*, *Latin*, and *Greek* Tongues.

The Calculation of Time, according to the *Perſians*, is to be ſeen in general in the Firſt Book; but much more particularly in the Second, their Method being ſtill obſerv'd. It is poſſible I may have committed ſome Miſtake in reducing the Years of their *Era*, to our Year of CHRIST, by reaſon of the diffe-

difference of the Lunar Year us'd by them, and the Solar by us; I did my beſt, and if any other can and will reduce it to a greater Exactneſs, I ſhall be very well pleas'd, and return him now Thanks before-hand.

Together with the Kings of *Perſia*, I give a Relation of thoſe of *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, &c.

Thus far our Author Teixeira; *to which I ſhall only add, that the ſhort Supplement made to his Kings of* Perſia, *to continue them down from his Time to ours, is collected from the* Turkiſh *Hiſtory, and the beſt Modern Travellers, as* Thevenot, Tavernier, Chardin, Gemelli, *&c. and that it was not made longer, leſt it ſhould be thought not to bear Proportion with the reſt of the Hiſtory.*

CON-

CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

OF *the First King of* Persia, *and his Original, according to* Mirkond, *the most Renowned Historian of that Nation.* Page 1

Chap. II. *Of the War in* Damaoand, *upon the Death of* Nacek *Son to* Kayumarras. 8

Chap. III. *The Birth of* Siamek, *Second King of* Persia, *Grandson to* Kayumarras, *to whom he resigns the Government, and his Death.* 11

Chap. IV. *Of* Ouxangh, *third King of* Persia, *and his Death.* 13

Chap. V. *Of* Tamurés Divband, *fourth King of* Persia. ibid.

Chap. VI. *Of* Iambxed, *fifth King of* Persia. 15

Chap. VII. Zoahk *usurps the Crown of* Persia, *and is the sixth King, makes Search for* Frayhdun ; Kaoah *rises, and kills him, and puts* Frayhdun *into Possession of the Kingdom.* 24

Chap. VIII. Frayhdun, *the seventh King of* Persia, *being rais'd to the Throne of* Persia, *entertains, and honours* Kaoah, *marries, and has Children, they make War among themselves, and other Particulars till his Death.* 32

Chap. IX. *Of* Manucher *the eighth King of* Persia. 38

Chap. X. *Of* Naudar, *the ninth King of* Persia, *who is taken, and kill'd by* Afrasiab. 41

Chap. XI. Afrasiab *subdues* Persia; *the* Persians *assisted by his Brother* Agarires, *revolt against him, for which he puts him to Death.* 44

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XII. *Of* Bazab *the tenth King of* Persia. Page 45

Chap. XIII. *Of* Kaykobad *the eleventh King of* Persia; Afrasiab *overthrown in Battle, and Peace restored.* 46

Chap. XIV. Kaykaus *the twelfth King of* Persia, *reduces* Mazandaron, *which had rebell'd; passes on into* Arabia, *where he marries; returns to* Persia, *and what happen'd there, till his Death.* 48

Chap. XV. *Of* Kaykozrao, *the thirteenth King of* Persia; *he makes War on his Grandfather* Afrasiab, *King of* Turkestam, *for which Reason his Son* Syavex *differs with him, and goes over to* Turon; *the End of* Afrasiab, *and two of his Sons.* 56

Chap. XVI. *Of* Lorasph, *the fourteenth King of* Persia; *his Son* Gustasph *rebels, flyes into* Turkestam, *marries there, stirs up a War against his Father, is brought back into* Persia, *and other Accidents till his Death.* 60

Chap. XVII. *Of* Gustasph, *the fifteenth King of* Persia; *he Wars on the King of* Turkestam, *on Account of Worshipping the Fire, with various Success; his Son* Spandiar *kill'd by* Rostam, *and other Accidents till his Death.* 65

Chap. XVIII. *Of* Bahaman Daraz Daz, *the sixteenth King of* Persia, *his Life and Death.* 70

Chap. XIX. Homay *Wife to* Ardxir, *and Queen of* Persia, *after her Husband's Death is deliver'd of a Son, who is cast into a River, and comes afterwards to be King.* 77

Chap. XX. *Of* Darab Kebar, *the seventeenth King of* Persia, *he makes War on* Phaylacus, *or* Philip *of* Macedon, *and other Accidents till his Death.* 79

Chap. XXI. *Of* Darab Seguer, *or* Kucheck, *that is,* Darius *the Little, eighteenth King of* Persia; Ascander, *or* Alexander *the Great, invades his Dominions, defeats him, and is murder'd by his own Subjects.* 80

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XXII. Aſcander, *or* Alexander *the Great, nineteenth King of* Perſia, *ſubdues that Kingdom, and what elſe happened till his Death.* Page 87

Chap. XXIII. *Of the* Inter-regnum *in* Perſia. 113

Chap. XXIV. *Of* Schapur, *or* Sapor, *the twentieth King of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. XXV. *Of* Ardxir Babar Khon, *the twenty firſt King of* Perſia. 114

Chap. XXVI. *Of* Schapur Zabel Ketaf, *the twenty ſecond King of* Perſia. 115

Chap. XXVII. *Of* Baharon Kermonxa, *the twenty third King of* Perſia. 116

Chap. XXVIII. *Of* Yazd Gerd, *the twenty fourth King of* Perſia. 120

Chap. XXIX. *Of* Baharon Gur, *the twenty fifth King of* Perſia. 123

Chap. XXX. *Of* Yazd Gerd, *the twenty ſixth King of* Perſia. 142

Chap. XXXI. *Of* Hormoz, *the twenty ſeventh King of* Perſia. 143

Chap. XXXII. *Of* Pheruz, *the twenty eighth King of* Perſia. 144

Chap. XXXIII. *Of* Belax, *the twenty ninth King of* Perſia. 148

Chap. XXXIV. *Of* Kobad *the thirtieth King of* Perſia. 160

Chap. XXXV. *Of* Keſere Anuxiron, *the 31ſt King of* Perſia. 163

Chap. XXXVI. *Of* Hormoz *or* Hormiſda, *the 32d King of* Perſia. 182

Chap. XXXVII. *Of* Khoſrao Parvez, *or* Coſroes, *the 33d King of* Perſia. 186

Chap. XXXVIII. *Of* Kobad Schirughe, *or* Siroes, *the 34th King of* Perſia. 190

Chap. XXXIX. *Of* Ardxir Schirughe, *the 35th King of* Perſia. 192

Chap. XL. *Of* Scharear, *or* Siahriar, *Uſurper of* Perſia, *reckon'd the 36th King.* ibid.

Chap. XLI. *Of* Joon, *the 37th King of* Perſia. 193

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XLII. *Of* Turon Doct, *Queen of* Persia, *the 38th in the Royal Descent.* Page 193

Chap. XLIII. *Of* Jasancedah, *the 39th Monarch of* Persia. 194

Chap. XLIV. *Of* Azarmy Doct, *Queen of* Persia, *and the 40th Sovereign.* 195

Chap. XLV. *Of* Cesere, *the 41st King of* Persia. ibid.

Chap. XLVI. *Of* Ferrogzad, *the 42d King of* Persia. 196

Chap. XLVII. *Of* Yazdgerd, *the 43d and last King of* Persia, *of this Race.* ibid.

BOOK II.

Chap. I. *Which of the* Arabs, *and at what Time they subdu'd* Persia. 198

Chap. II. *Of* Mawya *the sixth* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia. 201

Chap. III. *Of* Yhezid, *the seventh* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia. ibid.

Chap. IV. Mawya, *the eighth* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia, *soon depos'd.* 202

Chap. V. Marwan, *ninth* Calif. *The* Arabs *make War on him, and destroy* Cufa; *he marches against and overthrows them, and at his Return is murder'd by his Wife.* 203

Chap. VI. Abdel Malek, *10th* Calif; *the* Schiahis *make War on him in* Persia *with various Success, and other Accidents till his Death.* 204

Chap. VII. Oelid, *the 11th* Calif, *extends his Empire in* Persia; *he possesses himself of all the Lands of* Maurenahar, Koarrazm *and* Turkestam; *infests the Dominions of the* Roman *Empire; his and* Oiasge's *Death.* 206

Chap. VIII. Solyman, *12th* Calif, *subdues the Provinces of* Gerion *and* Tabarstam *in* Persia. 207

Chap. IX. Hamar, *13th* Calif, *the Descendants of* Abas *make War on him, and he is imprison'd.* 208

Chap. X. Yhezid *the 2d, and 14th* Calif. Abu Mocelem *makes War on him in* Karason, *in favour of* Aly Ben Abas, *which lasts till his Death.* 209

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XI. Oxon, 15*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia. Page 209

Chap. XII. Oelid *the* 2*d*, 16*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia. 210

Chap. XIII. Yhezid *the* 3*d*, 17*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. XIV. Ebrahem, 14*th* Calif, *depos'd by* Marwan, *who uſurps, ſeizes and murders him.* 211

Chap. XV. Marwan *the* 2*d*, 19*th* Calif, *and laſt of the Tribe of* Ben Humya; *Affairs of* Perſia *during his Reign.* ibid.

Chap. XVI. Safah, 20*th* Calif, *and firſt of the Tribe or Race of* Eben Abas. 213

Chap. XVII. Abu Jafar, 21*ſt* Calif, *puts to Death the Governor of* Karaſon, *for intending to rebel; reduces the Rebels of* Mecca *and* Bazora; *builds the City of* Bagdat *on the River* Tigris, *and dyes on the Way to* Mecca. 215

Chap. XVIII. Mahady Bila, 22*d* Calif, *and what happned in his Time.* 216

Chap. XIX. Elady Bila Muza Ben Mahady, 23*d* Calif. 218

Chap. XX. Araxid Bila Harun, 24*th* Calif. ibid.

Chap. XXI. Mahamed Amin, 25*th* Calif; *he makes War on his Brother* Mahamun, *by whom he is defeated and killed.* 219

Chap. XXII. Mahamun Ben Arun, 26*th* Calif. 220

Chap. XXIII. Abu Ezach Matacon, 27*th* Calif; *he builds the City* Samarrah; *Wars in* Perſia, *and other Accidenss till his Death.* 221

Chap. XXIV. Wacek, 28*th* Calif, *and all that hapn'd in* Perſia *till his Death.* 223

Chap. XXV. Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar, 29*th* Calif. 224

Chap. XXVI. Montacer Bila, 30*th* Calif. 225

Chap. XXVII. Abul Abas Hamed, 31*ſt* Calif, *murder'd by his Slaves.* ibid.

Chap. XXVIII. Moſta Hhin, 32*d* Calif. 226

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XXIX. Almater Bila, 33*d* Calif, *recovers some of the Lands that had been seiz'd by* Acem Ben Zeyd, *and is murder'd by his Soldiers.* Page 226

Chap. XXX. Motady Bila, 34*th* Calif. 227

Chap. XXXI. Almat Hamed Bila, 35*th* Calif; *and what happen'd under him in* Persia. ibid.

Chap. XXXI. Matazed Bila Hamed, 36*th* Calif, *the Affairs of* Persia *under him.* 236

Chap. XXXIII. Moktafy Bila, 37*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Persia. 238

Chap. XXXIV. Moktader Bila, 38*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Persia. 239

Chap. XXXV. Jafar Ben Matazed, 39*th* Calif; *Affairs of* Persia, *during his Reign.* 244

Chap. XXXVI. Kaher Bila Mahamed *the* 40*th*, Razy Bila Mahamed *the* 41*st*, *and* Moktafy Bila Ebrahim, *the* 42*d*, Califs. 246

Chap. XXXVII. Mostachfy Abdela, 43*d* Calif. 247

Chap. XXXVIII. Motyah Bila Fazele, 44*th* Calif. 250

Chap. XXXIX. Tayha Abdel Carim, 45*th* Calif. 254

Chap. XL. Kader Bila Hamed, 46*th* Calif. 267

Chap. XLI. Kahem, *or* Alkahem Beamaryla Abu Jafar Abdula, 47*th* Calif. 290

Chap. XLII. Almoktady Bila *the* 48*th*, Almostacer Bila *the* 49*th*, Almostarxed Bila *the* 50*th*, Raxet Bila *the* 51*st*, and Almoktafy Bila *the* 52*d* Calif. 301

Chap. XLIII. Almostanger Bila Issuf *the* 53*d*, Almostanzy Benur Elah Acen *the* 54*th*, Nacer, *or* Nacere Ladinla, *the* 55*th*, Alhazar, *or* Altaker Bila Mahamed *the* 56*th*, Almostancer Bila Mansur *the* 57*th*, *and* Almostacem Bila Abdula *the* 58*th*, *and last* Calif *of* Bagdat. 304

Chap. XLIV. *An Account of the* Mogols, *or* Tartars, *that Conquer'd* Persia. 305

Chap. XLV. *Of the* Turkish *Family of* Kara Kuyonlu, *that is, the Hord or Tribe of the* Black Sheep, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia. 323

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XLVI. *Of the* Turkish *Family, or Horde of* Akuyonlu, *which is, the Tribe of the* White Sheep, *by another Name, call'd* Bayonduryah, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia. Page 328

Chap. XLVII. *Of* Chinguyskan's *Successors, who Ruled in* Usbeck *and* Maurenahar. 335

Chap. XLVIII. *Of* Scha Ismael Sufy, *King of* Persia, *his Origin, and Progeny to this Time.* 337

The Supplement to Teixeira's *History of* Persia. 345

A brief Account of the most Remarkable Provinces, and which have continu'd longest under the Dominion of Persia. 361

A Chronological Table of the Sovereigns of Persia, *till the* Arabs *enter'd that Country, according to* Mirkond. 369

A brief Account of the Kingdom of Harmuz, *or* Ormuz, *and of its Kings, 'till it was subdu'd by the* Portugueses, *extracted from the History written by* Torunxa, *King of that City.* 376

THE

THE HISTORY OF PERSIA.

BOOK. I.

CHAP. I.

Of the First King of Persia, *and his Original, according to* Mirkond, *the most Renowned Historian of that Nation.*

WHen the Waters of the universal Deluge had ceas'd, and *Noah*, his Children and Posterity spread themselves over the Face of the Earth, and began to fill it, as they were enjoyn'd by God; many Families assembled themselves together in several Parts of the World, building Towns, and still multiplying, whilst every one endeavour'd to advance himself, tho' it were to the Detriment of his Neighbour, as will appear in the Sequel of this Work. Then did Pride,

Anarchy. and Ambition particularly take Poſſeſſion of the Inhabitants of the Province of *Aderbaion*, where this Hiſtory is to commence. The Natives of it for want of a Prince, or ſome Perſon to govern them, liv'd in continual Trouble and Uneaſineſs, every Man aſpiring to be Chief, and aiming by force to lord it o'er the reſt; ſo that ſome endeavouring to bear Sway, and others refuſing to ſubmit to it, they did one another great harm; theſe various Inclinations occaſioning Tumults, Wars, Rapin, Oppreſſion, Slaughter, and many other Miſchiefs; ſuch is, and was, even then in that naked, and ignorant Age, the Power of an inordinate Deſire of Rule. The Province of *Azerbaion*, or *Aderbaion*, as it is now call'd, and whoſe Capital is the famous City *Tabriz*, or *Tauris*, was the nobleſt, and moſt populous at that time, which made Men contend the more eagerly for the Dominion of it. The Natives conſidering their preſent Sufferings, and apprehending ſtill greater Misfortunes, conſulted about the means to redreſs the Grievances they then lay under, and prevent thoſe they fear'd might enſue, and reſolv'd to chuſe a Perſon among themſelves to whom the Government ſhould be committed. The Power of electing was given to ſuch as were thought the beſt qualified, who pitch'd upon four, and out of them choſe one, whoſe Name was *Kayumarras*, as being the moſt accompliſh'd of them, and known to be prudent, brave, generous, affable, and endu'd with all other Virtues, requiſite in a good Governor. The Choice was approv'd by all Perſons, with great Applauſe. He was not then preſent, but being attended, they unanimouſly intreated him to

A King choſen.

accept

accept of what was offer'd, in return for having been choſen, and preferr'd above all the reſt. He endeavour'd long to excuſe himſelf; but at length yielding to Importunity, and preferring the publick Good before his own private Satisfaction, he conſented to take upon him the Government, and being conducted to a publick Place, was there in the Preſence of all the People, clad in a Sort of Garment different from what was commonly us'd, and as a particular Mark of Royalty, they put on his Head a kind of Cap, call'd in their Tongue *Tage*, being equivalent to a Crown among us, and the ſame Name they ſtill give to the great Caps the Kings of *Perſia* now wear, and to any other high Covering for the Head; and the Cocks Comb is alſo call'd *Tage*, whence alſo the Herb our Botaniſts call *Criſta Gallinæ*, is by them nam'd *Tage Corus*, ſignifying the ſame. Thus was *Kayumarras* receiv'd as King, all Perſons kiſſing his Foot, in Token of Vaſſallage, a Cuſtom us'd to this Day in that Kingdom.

Tage *the Royal Diadem.*

According to *Tarik Mirkond*, the *Perſian* Hiſtorian, *Kayumarras* was the Son of *Aram*, the Son of *Shem*, the Son of *Noah*, whom the *Perſians* call *Adam aſſani*, that is, the ſecond *Adam*, for his being the ſecond Father of Mankind. As ſoon as *Kayumarras* was made King, he enjoyn'd all Men under ſevere Penalties, to call him *Adam*; whence ſprung an Error among the *Perſian* Pagans, which ſuch of them as yet remain hold to this Day, believing that this ſame was the firſt, and true *Adam*, firſt Progenitor of Mankind.

Kayumarras *the firſt King of* Perſia.

The Gentiles in the *Perſian* Tongue are called by three ſeveral Names, which are *Mayucy*, *Maurigy*, and *Gaor yazdi*, whereof the laſt is

Perſian *Gentils why call'd* Gaor yardi.

the moſt us'd for the following Reaſon. The *Indian* Gentiles of *Guzarat*, or *Cambaya*, commonly known by the Name of *Baneans*, among their other Superſtitions, obſerve one of worſhipping Cows, which the *Perſians* call *Gao*, and him that worſhips them *Gaor*, as they do the Cow-herd *Gaopon*, and the Herb we call Bugloſs, or Cows Tongue, they name *Gaorabon*, ſignifying the ſame Thing, from *Gao*, a Cow, and *Zabon* the Tongue, taken from the *Arabick*, which calls it *Lecen al Aſor*, which is the ſame, and hence it is that the *Perſians* ſignifie any Gentile by this Denomination of *Gaor*. Therefore they give the ſame Title to thoſe, who held this Opinion concerning *Kayumarras*, adding the Epithet of *Yazdi*, ſignifying the Gentiles of *Yazd*, a City in *Perſia*, the Chief Reſidence of thoſe Antient Natives, who adhering to their former Paganiſm, have to this Day refus'd to embrace either the Sect of *Mahomet*, or that of *Hali*: Theſe worſhip the Sun, and the Fire, which they have moſt carefully, and religiouſly kept lighted, without being once extinguiſh'd for a moment, above Three Thouſand Years, on a Mountain, a Days Journey from *Yazd*, call'd *Albors Kuyh*, that is, Mount *Abbors*, or by another Name *Atex quedah*, ſignifying the Houſe, or Manſion of the Fire, to attend the which many Perſons are continually employ'd. This Sect was formerly follow'd by all thoſe Nations comprehended under the general Name of *Perſia*, which were many, and very great; and they perſiſted in it, with very little Alteration, till the Conqueſt of the *Arabs*, who introduc'd theirs among moſt of them; and the other is preſerv'd among theſe few Gentiles; who are

ſo

ſo ſtrict Obſervers of it, that he is reckoned very unfortunate, who dies off that Mountain where the Fire is kept, and therefore they cauſe themſelves to be carry'd thither from Places very remote, for fear of loſing the Advantages they Hope to reap by dying there. They ſtill obſerve the Cuſtom of their Anceſtors in burying of the dead; and when any happen to live to a great Age; they do not ſtay ſtill they die naturally, but carry them to that, or ſome other Mountain, where they put them into certain Caves, they have there made in ſuch manner, that the old Wretches are there left ſtanding, and without any Proviſion but the Air, and ſo they are abandon'd and continue till they expire; and the Wind there blowing freſh, dryes up all their Moiſture; ſo that they are preſerv'd entire, without Corruption for many Ages; and thither they reſort to offer them ſweet Herbs, fragrant Flowers, and the like, having an extraordinary Opinion of thoſe that die ſo. When any one dies young, being in doubt of his Salvation, for they look upon it as moſt certain, that the old Men above ſpoken of muſt be ſav'd, they make faſt the dead Body on an Aſs, ſo as it may ſit upright, and on his Head tie a Veſſel, with a wide Mouth, full of ſour Cream, in the *Perſian* call'd *Maſt*, which alſo ſignifies, a Skin, ſuch as is us'd to carry Liquor in. With the ſame Cream they daub his Face, and Eyes, and then whipping the Aſs, make him run about the Fields, where abundance of Crows light on him, Cuſtom having made this familiar to them, and ſome peck at the Cream on his Head, others at that on his Face and Eyes, when thoſe who follow,

Perſian *Superſtition touching the Dead.*

follow, obſerve whether the Eye they peck'd firſt was the right, and if ſo, they conclude he is ſafe; but if the left be firſt ſtruck at, they agree he is damn'd. The Heathens, who live in *Bengale*, along the River *Ganges*, which they call *Ganga*, do not much differ from theſe in their Opinion, and Practice; for when they grow weary of Life, either on Account of Age, or Sickneſs, they cauſe themſelves to be laid near the River, with a large Veſſel of Water cloſe ſtopp'd, ty'd to their Neck, to the End, that when the Flood riſes as far as that reaches, or the Current where that comes not, it may carry them off, and they may ſink immediately; and he whom the Water happens to leave, is look'd upon as a grievous Sinner. Thoſe who die upon Land, and are caſt into the River, which is the common Buryal Place of the devouter Sort; if they happen to be carry'd up and down by the Tide, without being devour'd by ſome Alligator, whereof there are great Numbers and monſtrous large, they are ill look'd upon, and ſuppos'd to be Perſons that ſuffer there for ſome grievous Sins. On the other ſide, if the Alligators ſnapt them as ſoon as caſt into the Water, they are judg'd, and reputed to have been good Livers. It is alſo well known, that the *Japoneſes* uſe to put themſelves into *Fones*, being a Sort of Veſſels, with Proviſions, and launch out into the Sea, where having great Stones ty'd about their Necks, they make a Hole in the Boat, and ſo ſink with it; believing they go to a better and eaſier Life, and take the Proviſion to ſerve them by the way. Some *Indians* in other Parts have a Cuſtom very oppoſite to that we have mention'd

The like of Indians.

And of Japoneſes

tion'd of *Bengale*, as at the River of *Cranganor*, near *Cochim*, on the *Malabar* Coaſt, where there are ſome monſtrous large Alligators; for here when any Man is to clear himſelf of ſome heinous Crime laid to his Charge, as Theft, Adultery, Murder, or the like, he is oblig'd to ſwim over the River, which is not very broad, and if in croſſing he meets no Alligator, or is not hurt by any, he is clear'd; but if he is devour'd, they conclude him guilty, tho' he never was ſo, and this Opinion is not to be remov'd. In a Parcel of Iſlands thinly inhabited, lying between thoſe of *Nicobar*, and thoſe of *Tanazarim* toward the Gulph of *Bengale*, there lives a People ſo barbarous, that they eat Man's Fleſh, and neither ſpare Father, or Mother, Brethren, or Relations, when grown old, and decrepit. They make them get up into a Tree, which they below ſhake, and move with all their Strength, to ſee whether thoſe above will fall down, which if they do, either through Weakneſs, or want of hold, they ſay, they are ripe and fit to eat, and accordingly devour them; but if they hold faſt, and will not drop, they leave them, alledging they are not come to Maturity. Many more ſuch extravagant Cuſtoms are to be found among the Eaſtern Nations, which I omit for Brevity ſake.

The contrary at Cranganor.

Barbarous Cuſtoms.

Mirkond and all the *Perſian* Hiſtorians agree, that *Kayumarras* was the firſt King of *Perſia*, and the firſt that ſettled the Exerciſe of Juſtice, and defended it againſt all Enemies, that offer'd to diſturb its Quiet.

Chap. II.

Of the War in Damaoand, *upon the Death of* Nacek *Son to* Kayumarras.

Kayumarras was married, and had Children, his Eldeſt Son *Nacek*, being addicted to Solitude, and the Study of Natural Philoſophy, liv'd retir'd, with his Wife, upon one of the Mountains of *Damaoand*, a City then ſtanding in the Province of *Aderbaion*, which gave Name to the Mountain, and at preſent in that of *Hierak*, and being a well meaning Man, and of a ſolid Judgment, his Father us'd ſometimes, when he had leiſure to go ſpend ſome time with him. One Day he went to viſit him paſſing into the moſt private Part of his little Houſe, he found him dead of many grievous Wounds, and tho' the ſtricteſt ſearch was made, the Occaſion of his Death could not be diſcover'd at that time, nor could his Wife, who was afterwards found, give any Account of it. His Funeral Rites were perform'd, with general Lamentation, which according to the Cuſtom of that Age, and Nation, conſiſted in putting the dead Body into a Hole, or Grave, and there burning it with a great Fire made over.

Racek *Son to* Kayumarras *murder'd.*

Burning of the Dead.

This Cuſtom of burning the Dead Bodies was much practic'd through all the World, and is ſtill kept up in *India*, and many other Eaſtern Parts, among the Gentiles. Nor do they only uſe to burn the Dead, but the Living alſo, it being very common for the Wives of the deceas'd to caſt themſelves into

to the same Fire with them, and such as do it are reputed Women of Worth, and faithful to their Husbands; whereas those who do not are contemn'd, and look'd upon as worthless, and void of all Sense of Honour. And it is remarkable that when Princes die, not only their Wives, and best beloved Women, but even their Concubines are burnt with them; as happen'd whilst I was in *India*, when the *Naique* of *Madure*, a Place between *Malabar* and *Coromandel*, dying, four Hundred of his Women were burnt with him. Tho' several have writ concerning it, the manner of burning them is this. They dig a Pit in the ground, the Depth of a tall Man, and a half, if need be, then the Body being laid in it, they pile abundance of Wood on it very orderly, that it may the better take Fire, and such as are able to do this with Sanders, wild Eagle Wood, and sometimes the better Sort, and other precious Trees; over which they pour a Quantity of Oyl, and Butter, that the Fire may take the better. All Things being thus prepar'd, they bring the Widow that is to be burnt, from her House to that Place, attended by all her Kindred, and other People, clad, and adorn'd the best she can afford, and to show she comes of her own Will, and is easy in her Mind, she chews *Betle* by the way, being a certain Herb I shall speak of hereafter, which they usually chew upon solemn Occasions, and at other Times. When in Sight of the Place, she begins to take off those Ornaments that are about her, as Rings, Bracelets, Chains, Pendants, Jewels worn about the Ankles, and Rich Silks, bestowing them on whom she pleases, and throwing something

Women burnt with their Husbands.

Four Hundred burnt with a Prince.

Manner of burning.

thing into the Pile, then taking leave with Expreſſions of Joy, and the great Love ſhe bore her Husband, caſts herſelf into the Fire, which immediately blazes upon all ſides, and conſumes her in a moment. Some do it much againſt their Wills, prevail'd on by Importunity, and almoſt compell'd; and others upon this occaſion, where there happened to be *Portugueſe* Soldiers, have told them, they would become Chriſtians, if they would reſcue them from that Danger. This is practis'd only among the Gentiles, of whom there are others who have very different Cuſtoms, which I paſs by, to return to *Kayumarras*.

He having perform'd *Nacek*'s Funeral Rites, return'd home diſconſolate, and very deſirous to know who had committed that barbarous Act; which at length he obtain'd, being inform'd, it had been done by the Robbers of the Adjacent Countries; who breaking into his Palace, found his Son there and murder'd him. *Kayumarras* letting ſlip no Opportunity to obtain his Revenge, at length compaſs'd it, upon Intelligence, that his Enemies had ſettled in the Country of *Macarek*, which ſignifies, the Lands to the Eaſtward. He ſet out with a good Force, and found them in the Country of *Tabraſtam*, where he fought, and overthrew them, killing many, and taking a great Number of Priſoners, whom he employ'd in building a City he there founded, to ſecure thoſe Parts, calling it *Balk*, for the following reaſon. *Kayumarras* had a Brother in the Land of *Mogareb*, which ſignifies Weſtward, who came as far as *Damaoand*, from the Place of his Reſidence, to viſit him, and not meeting him

Murderers puniſh'd.

Balk *City.*

him there, went on to the Place where he heard he was. *Kayumarras* saw, and knew him, and after loving Embraces, to expreſs the Satisfaction he receiv'd in ſeeing him, call'd the City he was building. *Balk*, which ſignifies a Hug, as it is call'd to this Day, being one of the beſt in the Province of *Uzbek*, populous, wealthy, and warlike, as are the reſt in thoſe Parts. Having put it into a good Poſture, and plac'd Inhabitants in it, with all Neceſſaries for a Defence, he return'd to *Damaoand*; and being afterwards at Peace, founded the Cities of *Stahhar*, which he made his Court, *Ardauel*, *Kabulſtan*, *Komuz*, *Macron*, *Naciben*, which is *Ninive*, *Gerion*, *Sagiſton*, and *Goms*; all of them Subject to the Crown of *Perſia*, but ſtanding in ſeveral Provinces, as ſhall be obſerv'd when Occaſion offers.

Chap. III.

The Birth of Siamek, *Second King of* Perſia, *Grandſon to* Kayumarras, *to whom he reſigns the Government, and his Death.*

Nacek at his Death, left his Wife with Child, who was in due ſeaſon deliver'd of a Son, call'd *Siamek*, whom his Grandfather *Kayumarras* caus'd to be educated, and inſtructed, as became ſuch a Perſon, and when come to years of Maturity, by the Conſent of the People, reſign'd up the Government into his Hands, and withdrew himſelf to live at Eaſe. *Siamek* being enthron'd,

Kayumarras *abdicates.*

thron'd, marry'd ; but very ſoon after, being inform'd that ſome Enemy ravag'd his Country, he went out to oppoſe them, and coming to a Battle, obtain'd the Victory, which coſt him very dear, being mortally wounded. He caus'd himſelf to be ſpeedily carry'd into his Tent, where his Wife was big with Child, and directing his Diſcourſe to the Infant ſtill in the Womb, deſir'd, if it prov'd a Man, to revenge his Death, having ſpoken which Words he expir'd, to the great Grief of all the Kingdom. *Kayumarras* took upon him the Government again, and ſoon after *Siamek*'s Wife was deliver'd of a Son, whom they call *Ouxangh*. At this time the Enemies again invaded the Lands of *Perſia*, againſt whom *Kayumarras* march'd, and overthrew them, taking many Priſoners, ſome of whom he burnt, being inform'd they had been guilty of the Death of the Princes. After this Victory obtain'd, he again retir'd, and dy'd, when he had reign'd Forty Years, leaving the Province of *Aderbaion*, and the others he had ſubdu'd in a flouriſhing and peaceable Condition. *Kayumarras* having been ſo much engag'd in Wars, is reputed the Inventor of moſt ſorts of Weapons us'd in thoſe Parts, and particularly of all Furniture for Horſes.

Siamek's *Death.*

Kayumarras *dies.*

CHAP.

Chap. IV.

Of Ouxangh, *Third King of* Perſia, *and his Death.*

Ouxangh, as ſoon as of Age, was plac'd on the Throne, and govern'd during his Life to the Satisfaction of all Men. He married, and had a Son call'd *Tamurés*. His Enemies breaking into his Dominions with an Army, ſurpriz'd him on a Mountain near *Damaoand*, where he was wounded on the Head with a Stone, whereof he dy'd, when he had reign'd Fifty Years.

Chap. V.

Of Tamurés Divband, *Fourth King of* Perſia.

Ouxangh being dead, his Son *Tamurés*, ſirnam'd *Divband*, that is, Devil Binder was ſet up in his Place. The *Perſians* call the Devil by theſe Three Names, *Div*, *Jándon*, and *Geyton*; and in regard, that *Tamures* gain'd many notable Victories over his Enemies, whom the *Perſians* dreaded, and hated, as they did the Devil, therefore they gave him the Title of *Divband*, ſignifying, a Subduer, and Impriſoner of Devils. The *Arabs* call the Devil *Beliz*, as alſo *Geitano*, which ſeems to be the ſame as *Satan*.

Tamurés Divband conſidering the Damages ſuſtain'd by his Subjects, during the late Wars,

Wars, remitted all Taxes for Three Years. He was brave, and of a Martial Spirit; yet no less prudent, addicted to Peace, and a Favourer of wise Men, whom he sought after, and caus'd to be brought from remote Parts, bestowing great Favours on them, that by their Advice he might maintain Justice, and Peace in his Dominions; and he was very fond of hunting. He created the first *Wazir* in *Persia*, whom we corruptly call *Vizier*, being the supreme Governor of the Kingdom, under the King; tho' all of them have not this Soveraign Power. By his Advice *Tamurés* plac'd Garrisons in all the Frontier Towns of *Aderbaion*, or to speak more extensively of *Persia*. This Province of *Aderbaion*, as I hinted above, is one of the chiefest in *Persia*, from which that Monarchy derives its Original. Some will have *Taurus*, its Capital, to have been formerly call'd *Ecbatana*, which was taken by the *Turk Selim* from *Scha Thamas* King of *Persia*, as many have observ'd, and afterwards recover'd by *Scha Aba's*. The many Victories obtain'd by *Tamurés* over his Enemies were the occasion, that all the neighbouring Princes, who before acknowledg'd no Superior, as also others more remote, and powerful, submitted themselves to him, putting their Dominions under his Government, and Protection. This extraordinary Prosperity was follow'd by a tedious Dearth throughout *Persia*, which destroy'd abundance of People, and Cattle; nor did *Tamurés* himself escape, for he fell sick, and dy'd at the City of *Balk*, in the Province of *Uzbek*, when he had reign'd Thirty Years.

First Vizier.

Dearth.

CHAP.

Chap. VI.

Of Iambxed, *Fifth King of* Persia.

Amurés Divbând was succeeded by *Iambxed*, who some say was his Son, others his Brother, or his Nephew; a Man of an extraordinary Judgment, and Prudence, and no less Resolution. He extended his Empire over seven large Provinces, all govern'd by his Laws, and improv'd by his Care, which he continually employ'd, to maintain them in Peace, and free from contagious Distempers. To this purpose he made use of the Learning of *Faelasuf Rabony*, and *Faeyxa Gorrés*, two famous Physicians, that flourish'd in his time; and calling to mind the great Calamity, and Famine under *Tamurés*, he resolv'd to provide against the like Misfortune, causing many large Granaries to be built, in which he laid up great Store of Provisions, against a time of need. He invented Coats of Mail, Ponyards, and other Weapons; as also the use of Gold Ornaments, Precious Stones, and sundry Jewels; caus'd Silks of several Colours to be wove, and wore Garments of them; took Delight in Aromatical Odours, and sweet Scents, which he caus'd to be brought from remote Parts, with much Expence; and drank Wine moderately, as reckning it good, and wholsome in a small Quantity, and some will have him to be the Inventor of it in *Persia*. *Iambxed* had a Woman Slave, whom he entirely lov'd, for her extraordinary Beauty; she happen'd to be taken with a violent Pain in the Head, which

Famous Physicians.

Inventions of Arms, Jewels, Silks, and Wine.

which no Remedies could remove; ſo that deſpairing of any Relief, ſhe ſhut herſelf up privately in a Room, where *Iambxed* kept his Wine very chearily, whereof ſhe drank a good Doſe, and finding herſelf more at Eaſe ſome Hours after, repeated it ſo often, till ſhe was perfectly cur'd. She told the King what ſhe had done, who from that time valu'd Wine much the more, for its Virtue, and having reſtor'd her to Health.

Of Wine. The Uſe of Wine is very Antient, and therefore no Wonder it ſhould be now ſo univerſal throughout the World, for I believe there is no Nation but what delights in it; and thoſe who have not the true Wine made of Grapes, either through Want of Induſtry, or becauſe the Soil or Climate will not produce it, have ſome other Sort of Liquor, inſtead of it, to make merry upon their Feſtivals. There is Plenty of excellent Wine in *Perſia*, which in their Language they call *Scharab*, and the Natives drink it extravagantly, carrying great Quantities of it conceal'd in Bottles, put up in Cheſts, as if it were *Perſian* Roſe Water, to *Labor*, in the Great *Mogol's* Country. At *Ormuz*, and *Mogoſtan*, and all along the Coaſt of *Arabia*, on the *Perſian* Gulph, they make Two Sorts of Liquors; the one, whereof the Principal Ingredients are Dates, and Liquorice Leaves,

Arach *Liquor.* they call *Arequi*, from *Areca*, a *Perſian* Word, ſignifying Sweat, which Name they give it by way of Preference before all others. This is the ſtrongeſt, and moſt dangerous Liquor that ever was invented, and ſuch as it is, there are very notable Drinkers of it. An-

Wine of Raiſins. other Sort is made of Raiſins infuſs'd in cold Water, to a fixt Quantity and Proportion,

tion, which ferments of it self, and then settles, and is us'd, being reckned good and wholsome; and I have seen it made in *Syria*. In *India* they draw Wine from the Substance of the *Coco*, call'd a Palm Tree, from the Resemblance there is between them, and this is done two ways. *Sura* flows of it self from the Branches, cut for that purpose, into Vessels, plac'd to receive it. This they distil, and call the Spirit *Orraca*, or according to us Arack, which is also very strong, and sometimes they put Raisins into it, which takes off much of the Harshness, and makes it softer, and the older it is, the better, which is not so in the Liquor made of Water and Raisins. There is another Sort drawn by distilling, from another Species of Palm Tree, call'd *Nipa*, growing in marshy Grounds; this is much softer, pleasanter, as clear as Water, and said to be very wholesome. Abundance is made, and Ships loaded with it in *Pegu*, *Tanasarim*, *Malaca*, and the *Philippine Islands*; but that of *Tanasarim* is better than all the rest. In *Arracam*, and *Pegu*, they make a Liquor of rotten Rice, and call it *Pamplis*, [but we Arack] and it is us'd at *Manila*, and in *China*, where there are several Sorts of Liquors. The chiefest of these is that made of *Lechyas*, a kind of Fruit like Strawberries, but larger, and for its Excellency they call it *Mandarine* Wine, so we call all Persons having any Command in *China*. In the Country of the *Cafres*, or Blacks of the South Part of *Africk*, next to *Mozambique*, they make Drink of Millet, and call it *Huyembe*, or *Pembe*. In *Bengale*, about the *Ganges*, they make another Liquor of Rice, call'd *Modo*, [and by us as the

Sura.

Orraca.

Nipa.

Pamplis.

Huyembe. *or* Pembe.

others above Arack.] In *Mexico* they make Drink of *Maguey*, a Plant very like that the *Aloes* comes from, but much larger and thicker; other *Indians* do it with *Yuca*. In short, there is an almost infinite Number of Wines, or Liquors, us'd by several Nations; besides other Customs grown so habitual, that they cannot live without them.

Betle Herb. For instance, the *Betle* in the East, so call'd in *Malabar*; in the *Canara*, and *Guzarat* Languages *Pam*; in the *Persian*, and *Arabick Tambul*; in the *Malayan*, *Sire*, and at *Manila*, *Buyo*, being a Leaf well known, not unlike the Plantain, which generally all Sorts of Persons, from the Prince to the Peasant, chew all Day, mix'd with a Nut they call *Areca*, but by the *Persians* and *Arabs Fufel*, and a little soft Lime, made of Oyster Shells. With it they treat Friends at their coming in, and going away; Princes give it as a Token of their Favour, and Lovers to express their Affection. It is good against all Pains in the Stomach, preceding from Cold; for the Teeth and Gums, strengthning, and preserving them, and causing a sweet Breath; and for these and other Reasons, they carry it to other Countries, where it does not grow, and they put a great Value upon it.

Opium. Next follows the *Opium*, by the Eastern Nations generally call'd *Afion*, most universally us'd by the *Mahometans*. The *Persians* by way of Preference call it *Teriaca*, that is, Treacle, so highly do they esteem this Gum, which naturally flows from the Stems of the Poppies without any other Mixture, or Composition. The Poor make use of the Rhinds, and a Decoction of them instead

stead of *Opium*; and therefore because the said Rhinds are call'd *Pust*, they give those that make use of it the Name of *Pasti*, as they do that of *Afioni*, to those that use *Opium*; both which being spoken in Anger, are reproachful and injurious Words. According to the *Persians*, the use of this Gum was first brought up by Princes, and great Commanders, whose Rest is disturb'd by weighty Cares, and therefore they took it to sleep; and the common Sort being so apt to follow their Example, they soon fell into the same Practice; by which means it became so universal, that there are very few but what take it; and I have seen some die in several Parts for want of it, and others by taking more than they were us'd to; for it is a deadly Poison. There are two principal Sorts of it in the East, the *Malwy* growing at *Malve*; and the *Mecery*, brought from *Mecere*, that is, the City *Cairo* in *Egypt*.

There is another Liquor much us'd throughout all *Turky*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, and *Syria*, which they call *Kaoah*, and we Coffee, which being so universally known, needs not be described; but those Nations reckon it good for the Stomach against Wind, and the *Hemorrhoids*, and that it creates an Appetite. The *Cha*, or Tea is as common in *China*, and no less known in our Parts; as is also the Chocolate, first brought from *New Spain*. *Coffee, Tea, and Chocolate.*

In the Kingdoms of *Guzarat*, and *Cambaya*, the Natives Season every thing they eat with, *Assa fetida*, whereof I shall speak hereafter, and they reckon no Meat palatable without it, and therefore they rub the Vessels they dress their Diet in with *Assa fetida.*

it, and tho' it be unsavory, and of a loathsome scent to such as are not us'd to it, to them Custom has made it pleasant and relishable, and the want of it is very grievous to them, because they reckon it preserves their Health. Others generally drink hot Water, as on the Coast of *Coromandel*, and in *China*, where they make a Sort of Tin Vessels, with Cloth Cases and Coverings, where it keeps hot a whole Day, or longer. Others commonly chew Mastick, particularly in *Persia*, where they call it *Mastaguy*, and with it scent the Water they drink; as the great Men do with Amber, which they call by this same Name, and Abundance of it is us'd in *Persia*, and *Arabia*, brought from *India*; but much more from the Coast of *Melinde*, and all that of the Blacks in *Africk*, along the *Indian* Sea, which they call of *Zanguybar*, that is, the Sea of the Blacks, from *Zanguy*, Black, and *Bar*, the Sea. The *Portugueses* corruptly call it *Zanzibar*, and we *Zanguebar*: On the Shore of this Coast, near the Town of *Brava*, in the Year 1593, was found a Piece of Ambergreece, of such a monstrous Magnitude, that a Man sitting upon a Camel on the one side of it, could not be seen on the other. *Tabacco* is much us'd in most Parts of the World, either in Smoke, or Snuff, and some pretend to commend it. Thus we find there is no enumerating the Inventions of Men to please themselves in eating, drinking, and the like.

Hot Water drunk.

To return to *Iambxed*, he resided for the most Part in the Province, and City of *Sagistam*; and that he might be the nearer to take care of all Parts of his Dominions upon

Schiraz City.

occasion,

occasion, he founded a City in a most convenient Place, being almost the Center of them, and gave it the Name of *Schiraz*. This is the Metropolis of the Kingdom properly call'd *Persia*, whose Name is communicated to all the rest that are subject to it. The Natives call this Kingdom *Parz*, as do the *Arabs*, bating that they having no Letter P, make use of F, and pronounce it *Farz*. I could never learn the Etymology, and Original of this Name, tho' I have endeavour'd it; and tho' I am not ignorant of the great Difference Antient Authors make between the *Persians*, and the *Parthians*; I shall not think it any Presumption in me to affirm, they were both the same People, comparing the Name they retain of *Parz*, with that of *Parthian*; and besides the Resemblance of the Names, they differ not much from the *Parthians* in manners, and their Way of living and fighting. Besides, after I was acquainted with that Country, enquiring among Persons in our Parts, who were well vers'd in History, for the Situation of *Parthia*, they could never ascertain it, but after taking all their Dimensions, at last concluded placing it in *Persia*. However it be, the Kingdom is call'd *Parz*, and the Natives, or any thing belonging to it *Parzy*, that is of *Persia*; for the *y* at the End signifies of, as if we should say of *Spain*. *Schiraz*, as I said before, is the Capital of this Kingdom, founded by *Iambxed*, being Twelve *Farsanghes* in Compass, and each *Farsangh* is Three Thousand Paces. It is cold, as lying to the Northward; tho' *Tauris* is much colder, being the Metropolis of *Aderbaion* before spoken of. The Inhabitants of *Schiraz*,

Persia, *and* Parthia, *the same.*

are a fair People, for the most Part beautiful, and well shap'd. It abounds in all things necessary for the Support of Life, and Delight. The Language is easy, of no difficult Pronunciation; besides that it is universal, not only through the Dominions of *Persia*, but in others remote; there being few Parts in the East, where the *Persian* Tongue is unknown. This Language is divided into Three Sorts call'd *Schirazy*, *Roftábi*, and *Harmusi*. The first is the politest and most regular, spoken at *Schiraz*: The second the vulgar, not so much refin'd and embellish'd: The third has many very improper Expressions, and is more coarse and unpolish'd, us'd in the Island of *Ormuz*. Besides this universal Language, common to all Countries under the Dominion of the King of *Persia*, every Province has its peculiar Tongue, as we in *Europe* have besides the *Latin*. This is none of the largest Kingdoms the King of *Persia* rules, but rather the least of them, and yet it contains some considerable Towns, and Cities, which I shall speak of in particular as they occur: From *Schiraz* they carry to other Parts Provisions, Wool, Hides, and other Commodities it abounds in, as also vast Quantities of most excellent distill'd Rose Water, I say distill'd, to distinguish it from that which is made by Decoction. The Quantity made here is so great, that all the East is plentifully furnish'd with it from *Schiraz*. Here is also found that second Sort of bittter *Costus*, by the *Persians*, and *Arabs* commonly call'd *Kost*; but by the first of them more parcularly *Kost talk*, that is, bitter *Costus*, to distinguish it from the ordinary Sort brought from

Persian *Language.*

Costus.

from *India*, which they name *Kost Scherin*, that is, sweet *Costus*.

When *Iambxed* had built the City *Schiraz*, and settled his Court in it, he apply'd himself to regulate the Government, which till then had been confuse, and disorderly. He committed the general Care of it to Men of known Wisdom; gave a distinct Jurisdiction to Soldiery; order'd the Husbandmen, and Peasants not to intermeddle with other Affairs, and prescrib'd Bounds to Handicrafts, giving Rules, and Methods to them all, so that each Condition might be satisfy'd in their Calling. He enacted wholesome Laws, and study'd the Good of all his People, by which means *Persia*, in his Days, enjoy'd Peace, Plenty, and Health, till all this Prosperity was converted into Misery, and Trouble, for *Iambxed*, puff'd up with Success, and Prosperity, and attributing all to his own Wisdom, and Power, caus'd himself to be ador'd as a God, ordering his Statues to be set up in publick Places, and all Persons to pay him divine Honours under Pain of Death. This his Folly, and Presumption was not long unpunish'd; for a famous General, call'd *Ahad*, Kinsman to *Iambxed*, revolting in the Province of *Sagistam*, rais'd a powerful Army, and gave the Command of it to his Nephew *Zoahk*, who march'd to *Schiraz*, where he found *Iambxed* ready to receive him, with no less numerous Forces, whom he fought, and routed. *Iambxed* fled, but was taken, and brought to *Zoahk*, who caus'd him to be kill'd in his Presence; leaving a very young Son call'd *Frayhdun*, by a

Government regulated.

Iambxed ador'd as a God.

Is kill'd.

Woman whose Name was *Framak*; who hearing of *Iambxed*'s Disaster, absconded with her Son, where she could not be found.

Chap. VII.

Zoahk *usurps the Crown of* Persia, *and is the Sixth King, makes Search for* Frayhdun; Kaoah *rises, and kills him, and puts* Fraydhun *into Possession of the Kingdom.*

Zoahk, the Usurper took Possession of the Throne, being Nephew to *Iambxed*, descended from *Kayumarras*, and Son to *Helwan*, a Renowned Man, lineally descended in a direct Line from the Kings of *Arabia*.

Zoahk Learned, but base.

This *Zoahk* was much addicted to the Study of Natural Philosophy, and well skill'd in it; but in other Respects of a perverse Inclination, passionate, deform'd, of a dreadful Countenance, and hated by all Men. He had a long Life, and much of it healthy; but after he had been some time setled in the Government, he fell sick of a Distemper, the Physicians could never find any Cure for. Being in Despair of recovering, and mov'd by the Instigation of the Devil, at the Perswasion of some Sorcerer, he fancy'd nothing could cure him, but an Oyntment made fresh every Day, with Men's Brains, and was so positive in this Conceit, that he immediatley

Falls Sick.

His inhuman Cure.

put

put it in Execution, causing many Persons of both Sexes, and all Ages to be kill'd. This horrid Practice was the occasion of much Slaughter throughout the City; which mov'd the wiser sort to speak to *Zoahk*, and perswade him, not to make use of so inhuman a Medicin; and they prevail'd that he should supply it with Sheeps Brains, instead of those of Men, alledging many Reasons, why they were more proper for the end he design'd them. Yet neither did these, nor the others afford any Relief to his Disease, which is said to have been caus'd by Two Worms, or Snakes that gnaw'd his Vitals. In this Misery he liv'd some Years, during which time, he is reported one Night to have Dreamt, that Three Men came up to him, one of which kill'd him with a stroke of a Club on the Head, and the other Two, taking off his Girdle, ty'd his Feet with it, and dragg'd him to the Mountains of *Damaoand*. *His Dream*

Girdles, or Sashes ever were, and still are Badges of Honour, and Dignity in *Persia*, and by their Workmanship, and the matter they are made of, the Quality of each Person is known, and therefore we make mention of them. The Golden is Nobler than that which is of Silver, that which is adorn'd with precious Stones, more honourable than either, and others of smaller value proportionably less. Thus every Man at Court wears a Sash, or Girdle suitable to his Post; but new marry'd People, during the Wedding Solemnity, are allow'd to wear Sashes, or Feathers, which are also Tokens of Nobility, and I have seen some of them. These Girdles are generally *Girdles, or Sashes Badges of Honour, in* Persia.

nerally like those formerly worn by the Women in *Spain*, and *Portugal*. Nor is this only us'd in *Persia*; for in *China*, the principal Distinction of the *Mandarines*, who are the Magistrates, and Officers, to denote their Post, and Authority, is a Girdle and a particular sort of Cap, without which they cannot sit in Judgment, or give any Orders; nor whilst they have them on can they be Try'd, or Punish'd; but must first be stripp'd of these Ornaments. To this purpose I will here tell what hap'ned in *China*, to a *Portuguese*, that was made a *Mandarine*, when first that Nation Traded thither. He was by that King rais'd to the Dignity of a Judge, and happen'd to Convict a *Chinese Mandarine*, his Inferior, of some Offence, which deserv'd Punishment, which generally among the People of that Country consists in Bastinadoing, with a sort of Cudgels they call *Hupos*. The *Portuguese* was so hot, and hasty, that he caus'd him to be Bastinado'd with the Ensigns of his Dignity on; which was so highly resented, that he was depos'd, and all his Nation declar'd incapable of any Employment ever after. This was afterwards confirm'd upon Experience of their Injustice, which hap'ned in this manner. A Slave belonging to a *Portuguese* having kill'd a *Chinese*, was taken by those People, and proceeded against to Conviction; then they carry'd the Prisoner before the *Portuguese* Judge, residing at *Macao*, a *Portuguese* Colony in an Island, on the Coast of *China*, near the City of *Canton*. They brought the Criminal, and laid the Process before the said Judge in Court; for him to give Judgment,

The same in China.

Portugues *Injustice.*

ment, according to the Laws of *Portugal*. He to save that Man, and for his own Interest acquitted him, for it was affirm'd, that the Master of the Slave had corrupted him, with the Promise of a *Bahar* of Silk, which is Three Hundred Weight. The *Chineses* being sensible of this insolent Proceeding, deliver'd the Slave; but for the future were more upon their Guard. They behav'd themselves after a quite different manner, in a Case, which is a great Demonstration of their Integrity, and I will briefly recount, as well worthy to be known. A Butcher was accus'd of Fraud, in the Weight of the Meat he Sold, as being an Ounce short in every *Case*, consisting of Twenty Ounces, upon Conviction, it was adjudg'd that for as long a time as he had practis'd that Cheat, he should in every *Case*, or Twenty Ounces allow as much more as he had before given short, to the end that thus the Publick might receive Satisfaction the same way it had been wrong'd. The Judgment was executed, and when the time was expir'd, they hang'd the Butcher for the Offence he had been guilty of, and thus he suffer'd the Punish'd, and made Restitution. Such is the Government of the *Chineses*, who among the rest have this Law, that if a Merchant Breaks, the Creditor that trusted him last with Goods, or Mony, has the Preference before all others, and is first Paid. The Reason they alledge for it is, because say they, it's most just that the Goods found should belong to the last that dealt with him, and not to those before, all whose Stock is spent, and gone. To return to the

Justice of Chineses.

Notable Chinese *Law.*

the Girdles, or Sashes, it appears they denote some Preheminence among the *Javaneses*, tho' they are a barbarous, and unpolished People, and they look upon them as principal Ornaments, and signs of Gentility; for the best Commodity that can be carry'd among them is, a sort of Girdles, made at *Cambaya*, in *India*, thence transported to *Malaca*, and so to *Java*, being made of Silk, curiously wrought, call'd *Patolas*, well known among the *Indian* Merchants, some whereof are for Kings, and Princes, others for Noblemen, and others for the common Sort. We also read in the Book of *Maccabees* Chap. 10. That *Alexander*, King of *Egypt*, intending to honour *Jonathan*, sent him a Gold Girdle, then usually worn by the Kings Kindred, Relations, and Favourites; and thus much may suffice touching Girdles.

Girdles in Java.

In Egypt.

To return to *Zoahk*, he wak'd out of his Dream, crying out aloud; call'd together all his Wise Men, and told them his Dream. They declar'd, it was their Opinion he would be depriv'd of his Kingdom, and Life. He apprehended that Disaster might be brought upon him by *Frayhdun*, the Son of *Iamxed*; for whom he caus'd strict search to be made, was inform'd where he was, and went himself to find him; but his Mother *Framak* hid him. *Zoahk* inrag'd that he could not find him, vented his Malice upon *Aspeon*, Father to *Framak*, and kill'd him. When he was gone, *Framak* to remove all Suspition there might be grounded on her continuing in that Place, went away, recommending the Care of her Son to a Herdsman. *Zoahk* made a second search for *Frayhdun*,

Zoahk's Dream expounded.

Searches for Frayhdun.

Fraÿhdun, whom, and himself the Cow-herd hid in a Cave, he had made for that purpose, and not being to be found, *Zoahk* reveng'd himself on the Cows, causing many of them to be Slaughter'd. In the City *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahan*, as we call it, being the Capital of the Province of *Hierak*, in *Persia*, and sometimes the Residence of it's Kings, liv'd a powerful, and brave Man, call'd *Kaoah*, with the Additon of *Angar*, which in the *Persian*, signifies a Smith, and for his living in *Hisphaon*, they farther gave him the Name of *Hisphaony*. *Zoahk* had kill'd Two Sons of his, Men of Worth, and Note, and he thirsting after Revenge, conspir'd with others that were disgusted at *Zoahk*, to surprize *Zoahk*'s Garrison at *Hisphaon*, as accordingly they did, killing, and taking many Prisoners, so that they made themselves Masters of the City. Having provided for the Security of the Place *Kaoah* rais'd all the Forces he could, and began to overrun the Lands of *Persia*, taking several Cities, which surrend'red without any Opposition. *Zoahk*'s Forces attack'd him several times, and were as often overthrown. He encourag'd by Succes, regulated his Army, and march'd directly towards *Damaoand*, the Residence of *Zoahk*, in his way taking the City *Hrey*, formerly Capital of the Kingdom of the same Name, adjoyning to *Korason*.

Kaoah *rises against* Zoahk.

This City of *Hrey* is Famous, both for it's Greatnes, and for some things it is stor'd with, among which I shall only speak of the *Manna*, in regard it is the best, and purest hitherto known in the World, and great Quantities of it are transported thence to *Ormuz*, and from that City throughout all the

Hrey *City has the best Manna.*

the East. *Manna* in the *Persian* Tongue is called *Schir queſt*, ſignifying the Milk of the Tree *Queſt*, from *Schir*, which is Milk in their Language; tho' it alſo ſignifies a Lion, and *Queſt* is the Name of the Tree it flows from. There is alſo much of it gather'd about another City of *Perſia*, call'd *Rey Scharear*, in the Province of *Hierak*, but not ſo good. There is another Sort of *Manna* in ſeveral Parts of *Perſia*, which they call *Toraniabin*, very like the Seed of dry Coriander, growing upon a ſort of Plant like wild Thiſtles, and this is extraordinary fine, and ſafe; and as ſuch the *Perſians* commonly give it to Infants, and Women with Child, when out of order, and double the Quantity of what they adminiſter of the other. On the Coaſt of *Africk*, towards the *Indian* Sea, near *Mozambique*, are Two Iſlands, *Aniza*, and *Querinba*, where there is alſo a conſiderable Quantity of Manna gather'd; but much inferior to all that above mention'd in Goodneſs; for whereas that of *Perſia* is White, Soft, Sweet, well Taſted, and in Grains, like thoſe of Frankincenſe, or Maſtick; that of the ſaid Iſlands is hard, in Lumps, of a browniſh Red, hot in the Mouth, and not ſo Laxative, tho' it's Operation is good. From *Bazora*, a City at the bottom of the *Perſian* Gulph, on the Rivers *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, is brought a ſort of *Manna* in Skins, being like thick Honey. All *Manna* whatſoever is the Gum of a Tree, produc'd as others are; and what they tell of the Dew, and other Stories relating to it, are all Inventions, or Miſ-informations.

Other Sorts of it.

What it is.

As ſoon as *Kaoah Angar Hiſphaony* had poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Hrey*, he took a Review of his

his Forces, and acquainted them, that all he had done till then, proceeded from his Zeal for the Liberty of his Country; that now the Enemy was before them, at a small Distance, and therefore before he came to a Battle, he thought it convenient to find out a Person that should govern them, in case it pleas'd God to give him the Victory. They all unanimously saluted him King, alledging, that Honour was due to none but him for his Valour, and Worth. He excus'd himself, declaring he would not sully all his Actions with the Title of an Usurper. *Frayhdun* was propos'd, he caus'd him to be found out, brought into the Army, and Proclaim'd King, delivering up to him all the Treasure he had. Then ranging their Battle, they March'd towards *Zoahk*, who advanc'd to meet them. The Battle prov'd Bloody, but *Zoahk* was routed, and taken; and being brought before *Frayhdun*, they dash'd out his Brains with a Club, then taking off his Girdle, ty'd his Feet with it, and dragg'd him to the Mountains of *Damaoand*, as he had Dreamt. *Zoahk* by the *Persians* extolling his Knowledge in natural Philosophy, by his long Life, and the Similitude of the Names, may be suppos'd to be the same as *Zoroastes*.

Kaoah *refuses the Crown.*

Kills Zoahk, *who is thought to be* Zoroastes.

CHAP.

Chap. VIII.

Frayhdun, *the Seventh King of* Persia, *being rais'd to the Throne of* Persia, *entertains, and honours* Kaoah, *marries, and has Children, they make War among themselves, and other Particulars till his Death.*

THE aforesaid Victory being obtain'd over *Zoahk*, upon whose Death *Frayhdun* was seated on the Throne of *Persia*, he apply'd himself to the Government of it, and having settled all things at Home, sent *Kaoah*, whom he appointed General of all his Forces, with a considerable Army towards *Mogareb*, that is, the Western Countries; and his own Kinsman *Garracef* with another towards *Maxarek*, that is, the East, to Conquer. *Kaoah* spent 20 Years abroad, during which time he subdu'd several Kingdoms, and Provinces, and at the end of it *Frayhdun* call'd him home, and made him Lord of *Hisphaon*, and *Aderbaion*. He was well receiv'd by those People, whom he govern'd to theirs, and the Kings liking for Ten Years, and then dy'd, much Regretted by *Frayhdun*, who left his Goods to his Relations, and sent for his Children to Court, whom he Honour'd and Preferr'd.

Kaoah *General.*

Frayhdun took to Wife a Daughter of *Zoahk*, whom he had kill'd, and besides an elder Son call'd *Irege*, by a Noble *Persian* Woman, had Two by this, whom he nam'd *Salur*, and *Tur*, which Two prov'd Wicked, and

Frayhdun's *Wives, and Children.*

and of their Grandfather *Zoahk*'s Disposition. *Irege* was Courteous, and Affable, and therefore belov'd, honour'd, and respected by all Men, which was a great Satisfaction to his Father, who lov'd him better than the others. *Persia* at that time flourish'd in Peace, and Power, and *Frayhdun*, who labour'd under Age, and Infirmities, intending to settle the Affairs of his Kingdom, Assembled the Nobility, and proposing to them the Affair of the Succession, ask'd their Advice about it. They all unanimously Voted for *Irege*, which was pleasing to *Frayhdun*; yet believing it might be a means to prevent Troubles, he divided his Dominions among them after this manner. To *Salm* he gave *Magareb*, that is, the Western Countries; to *Tur*, *Maxarek*, or the Eastern, and to *Irege*, *Persia*, *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*, with the Title of King, and Soveraignty over his Brothers. Having assign'd each of them the Limits of their Jurisdiction, he sent the Two, with each an Army, into their Dominions, that is *Salm* into the West, and *Tur* to the East. *Divides his Dominions among them.*

Tur being come into the Dominions his Father had given him, pitch'd upon a Place he thought most convenient, where he founded a City, from his Name call'd *Turon*, as was that whole Kingdom, and Country *Turkestam*, which it still retains. The City is seated above the *Caspian* Sea, at a small distance Eastward, in the Lands call'd *Maurenahar*. This was the first Rise, and Original of the *Turki*, and hence they came and possess'd themselves of what they now hold. So that the City, and Kingdom of *Turon* and *Turkestam*, signifying the Province, *Turon City built by Tur.* *Original of Turks.*

or Country of *Tur*, had their Names from this *Tur*, and not from the *Teucri*, nor *Thracians*, and in the same manner they call the Lands, or Region of *India*, *Industan*; that of *Arabia*, *Arabistam*; and that of the *Rumes*, or *Romans*, *Rumestam*; and the Men of *Turon*, or *Turkestam*, the *Persians*, and *Arabs* call, *Turk*, or *Turkmans*. This shows how ridiculous, and groundless any other Original assign'd to the *Turks* is; and for as much as these Two Names of *Turk*, and *Rume*, are generally confounded, especially by the *Portugueses* in the East, as not knowing the difference there is between them, I will here briefly give an Account of it. Tho' there are several Nations serving in the *Turkish* Armies, they are commonly reduc'd to these Two Sorts of *Turks*, and *Rumes*. The first are those, we have but now spoken of, or their Of-spring, who leaving the Country of *Turkestam*, invaded *Persia*, as they had done several times before, and will appear in the Sequel of this History. These in process of time, advancing still forward, at last possessed themselves of the Empire of *Constantinople*, which they still hold, and is by us call'd *Turky*, because subject to the *Turks*, and their chief Place of Residence. The *Persians*, *Arabs*, and other Eastern Nations, call all those *Rumes* who serve under the *Turkish* Banners, and came not from *Turkestam*, nor are descended from those that did, and the Word signifies the same as *Romans*, for when *Constantine* the Great translated the Empire from *Rome* to *Bizantium*, calling it *Constantinople*, that is, the City of *Constantine*, by the *Persians* nam'd *Constantinea*, and by

by the *Turks*, and *Arabs* corruptly *Istambol*, the *Greeks* call'd those that came with him *Romi*, importing *Romans*, and the *Turks* and *Persians* pronouncing the Word amiss, say *Rumy*; and by this Denomination they always did, and still do distinguish all that are of those Parts, whether *Greeks*, or of any other Nation formerly subject to the *Grecian* Empire, but more properly the *Greeks* themselves. Thus *Turk*, or *Turkman* signifies a Man come from *Turkestam*, and *Rumy* as it were a *Roman*, signifies a *Greek*; and the Name of *Frangue* denotes any Christian whatsoever, because the *French* were the first known in those Parts, which they enter'd with their Arms. Hence it is that as we call the Venereal Disease, the *French* Pox, so the *Persians* call it, *Doney Franguy*, signifying the same. The *Canarines*, an Eastern Nation in *India*, with some small corruption, name the *Portugueses*, and white *European* Christians *Franguy*, and the Pox *Fringuy*. I say the white and *European* Christians, to distinguish them from the Black ones of the East, whom they call by the Name of *Nasarah*, being an *Arabick* Word, which the *Portugueses* pronounce *Nasaranes*, (and doubtless comes from *Nazareth*.) By what has been said, it will be easy for the future to understand, that when we shall have occasion to speak of *Turon*, or *Turkestam*, it signifies *Turky*; not that Country we now call so, on account of it's being subject to the *Turks*, but that properly so call'd above the *Caspian* Sea, whence those People came. So when we mention *Rumestan*, it imports the *Roman*,

Frangue *any* European.

or *Constantinopolitan* Empire, and by the King of the *Rumes*, or of *Rumestan* is meant the *Roman*, or *Greek* Emperor, and at present the *Grand Seignior*; tho' they also give him the Title of *Cayſar Rumy*, that is, *Roman Cæſar*, as ſhall be obſerv'd in it's Place.

To return to *Salm*, and *Tur*, they were both diſſatisfy'd to be Subject to a Baſtard Brother, reſolv'd to caſt off the Yoke, and having adviſ'd together by Letter, took the Field with each of them an Army. They joyn'd in the Province of *Aderbaion*, and thence writ to their Father *Frayhdun*, complaining of the wrong he did in preferring their Baſtard Brother before them, which was the Occaſion of their advancing to that Place, yet as ſoon as he was depos'd from that Honour, and Soveraignty, they would immediately return peaceably from whence they came, otherwiſe they ſhould be oblig'd to maintain their Right. This was a great Surprize to *Frayhdun*, who order'd *Irege* to prepare to meet them with all poſſible Speed. *Irege* was for compoſing this Difference by fair means without Bloodſhed, and therefore propos'd to his Father, to go treat with them, who would not conſent, but reprov'd him ſeverely. Yet he being zealous for the Peace, and Welfare of the Kingdom, and hoping to prevail upon his Brothers, went away to them, taking along with him ſeveral of the wiſeſt, and graveſt Men about the Court. They having obtain'd their Wiſh, as ſoon as they had him, chopp'd off his Head, and ſent it to his Father, who

Salm, and *Tur* rebel.

Behead their Brother Irege.

who being touch'd at that dismal Sight, rent his Garments, expressing most grievous Sorrow. *Irege* left a Son, call'd *Manucher*, whom *Frayhdun* substituted in his Father's Place, and he made War on *Salm*, and *Tur*, never desisting till he had overthrown them in Battle. They, to save their Lives, lay down among the Dead, but being carefully sought after, were found, and brought before *Manucher*, who as he sate on Horseback cut off *Tur*'s Head, with his Sword; and *Salm* drop'd down Dead with Fear. Thus they both ended their Days, and of their Armies, above 200000 Men were made Prisoners, besides those that fled and were kill'd. *Frayhdun* was now become Blind, and very Sickly, so that when *Manucher* came to him, after his Victory, not seeing, he ask'd who he was? He answer'd, I am your Grandson *Manucher*, the Revenger of *Irege*'s Blood, and Slayer of *Salm*, and *Tur*. *Frayhdun* hearing these Words, embrac'd, and kissing him often, with extraordinary Tokens of Affection, and Joy, took the *Tage*, or Golden *Cap*, which was the same as the Crown among us, from his own Head, and put it on his, as a Confirmation of his bestowing the Kingdom on him. Then appointing *Som*, the Son of *Narimon*, a brave, and wise Man, his *Wazir*, or *Prime Vizier*, he died well pleas'd. *Frayhdun* was a good King, Wise, and a favourer of such as were so; very Resolute, and Generous, and there are many honourable Stories told of him, which I pass by for Brevity sake. According to the *Persian* Computation, they

Manucher Irege's Son routs them.

Frayhdun dies.

tell us, that *Abraham* liv'd in the Days of this King *Frayhdun*.

Chap. XIX.

Of Manucher *the Eighth King of* Persia.

Manucher, the Son of *Irege*, and Grandson of *Frayhdun*, having taken upon him the Government of his Kingdoms, and considering the great extent thereof, sent his *Wazier*, or *Vizier Som Narimon* to rule the Eastern Parts. During his Residence there he had a Son Born to him, who came into the World cover'd all over with thick white Hair. *Som Narimon* was much surpriz'd, and concern'd at this unusual Birth, gave the Infant the Name of *Zal*, and took Care of his Education. *Manucher* hearing of this Child, sent for him, he was carry'd to Court by his Father, and the King having seen him, consulted his Wise Men about that strange Accident, who all assur'd him, the Boy would prove a renowned Warrior. The King took a Kindness to him, and order'd he should be left at Court, where he was bred up, till of Age to be assistant to his Father *Som Narimon*, to whom he then went, and being found of a pregnant Wit, was by him appointed Governor of the Lands of *Nimrues*, that is, the Southern Country, where *Zal* resided, spending what leisure time he had in Hunting. He hap'ned once

Strange Birth of Zal.

once to be so intent upon that Sport, that passing beyond his own Limits, he enter'd upon the Government of *Kabulstam*, which was also subordinate to his Father, who had put it under the Direction of one of his Commanders call'd *Merahb*. This Man being inform'd of his coming, went out to meet and receive him, with Presents of very great Value, and having kiss'd his Hand, set up Tents for him in the Field, according to his Quality, and return'd home himself, where he never ceas'd extolling *Zal*'s Virtue, good Qualities, and Bravery, before his Wife, and a most beautiful Daughter he had, call'd *Rudabah*. This so far prevail'd upon the Maiden, that she fell in Love, without seeing him, which she contriv'd to let him know, and to that purpose sent many beautiful Women Slaves she had into the Fields, to gather Flowers, with Orders in their Return home, to pass by *Zal*'s Tent, who saw them, and ask'd, who they were? Answer was made, that they were Slaves belonging to the beautiful *Rudabah*, Daughter to *Merahb*, whose Form and Perfections were highly extoll'd. *Zal* soon found himself inclin'd to love, and contriv'd to have some Messages pass between them, till at length they had a private Interview, joyn'd Hands, and made a solemn Engagement to marry one another. This done, *Zal* took his leave of *Merahab*, and return'd to *Numruz*, where he was so melancholy, and restless, for the Want of *Rudabah*'s Company, that not being able any longer to bear it, he went away to his Father *Som Narimon*, whom he acquainted with his Pas-

Amours of Zal *and* Rudabah.

sion, begging they might both go to Court, to obtain the King's Leave for him to marry, which his Father could not refuse him. Accordingly they repair'd to the King's Presence, who, tho' with some Reluctancy, gave his Consent. They return'd to *Kabulstam*, where the Nuptials of *Zal*, and *Rudabah* were celebrated, the Fruit whereof was a Son call'd *Rostam*, for whose sake this is so particularly mention'd, because we shall have much occasion to speak of him hereafter.

Afrasiab *rebells.*

Manucher had now govern'd his Dominions in Peace, for the space of Fifty Years, when a Commander call'd *Afrasiab*, the Son of *Paxangh*, King of *Turquestam*, rebell'd in that Country, on Pretence of revenging the Death of *Tur*, raising Men, and forming an Army, to invade *Persia*. *Manucher* met, and gave him Battle, but was overthrown, and pursu'd by *Afrasiab* to the Fortress of *Amal*, where he shut himself up, and was besieg'd by his Enemy, who having in vain summon'd him to surrender, resolv'd not to depart till he was Master of the Place. His Commanders were of another Opinion, because the Fort was impregnable, and well provided with all Necessaries, besides, that Winter was at Hand, and they wanted Provisions. However *Afrasiab* was positive, not to depart, and they no less resolute not to stay, which he understanding, and apprehending some ill Consequence, he propos'd some Accommodation with *Manucher*. The Treaty was manag'd by one *Arexe*, a wise and experienc'd Man, who brought it to a Conclusion, appointing the famous River *Jehun*, the

Routs Manucher.

Boundary

Boundary between *Persia*, and *Turquestam*. The Peace being ratify'd on both sides, *Afrasiab* went away to *Turon*, or *Turquestam*, and *Manucher* departing the Fortress of *Amal*, took his way through the City *Rey*, to *Sagistam*, where he kept his Court. No sooner had *Afrasiab* left *Persia*, than *Manucher* began to raise Forces against him, and he hearing of it return'd, and wasted that Country; but *Manucher* fell upon him with such Fury, that he was routed, and many of his Men taken. *Manucher* having reign'd many Years, and being grown old and sickly, dy'd, leaving the Crown to his Son *Naudar*, with much prudent and wholesome Advice for the Government of his People.

They make Peace.

Manucher dies.

Chap. X.

Of Naudar, *the Ninth King of* Persia, *who is taken, and kill'd by* Afrasiab.

THE News of *Manucher's* Death, and *Naudar's* succeeding in the Throne, was soon brought into *Turkestam*, where *Paxangh* the King of that Country, and Father to *Afrasiab*, calling together his Sons, advis'd them not to let slip such an Opportunity. *Afrasiab*, as best acquainted with the Affairs of *Persia*, was the forwardest, and gathering an Army of Four Hundred Thousand Horse and Foot, march'd towards *Sagistam*. *Naudar* hearing of it, immediately sent Orders to *Som Narimon*, Father to *Zal*, who still govern'd *Kabulstam*, tho' very old,

to

New War with Afrasiab.

to joyn him as soon as possible, with all the Forces he could gather, which he did, and they consulted together what was best to be done. *Som* advanc'd to meet *Afrasiab*, but dy'd by the way of Age, which much rejoyc'd *Afrasiab*. *Naudar* thinking *Som* was before him, marched with the rest of the Troops, by the way of *Mazandaron*, and when he least thought of it, met with the Enemy, halted, and encamped. It was an Antient Custom in the Wars between the *Persians*, and their Neighbour Nations, to begin their Battles by single Combats, after which the Armies engag'd. Thus both Parties being in Sight, a Soldier call'd *Bazmon* come forward from among the *Turks*, to give the Challenge, and was answer'd on the *Persian* Side by one *Kabad*, Grandson to *Kaoah Angar*, before spoken of in the Life of *Frayhdun*. They fought, and *Kobad* kill'd *Bazmon*, returning to the Camp with his Spoils. The *Turks* provok'd by this Disgrace, immediately drew out and fell upon *Naudar*. In the Heat of the Battle there fell such a heavy Rain, and it grew so dark, that the Two Armies were parted. *Naudar* was sufficiently convinc'd by this first Shock, that he was not able to withstand *Afrasiab*; and therefore calling Two Sons he had with him, the one call'd *Thus*, and the other *Gostam*, he bid them go away to *Sagistam*, with *Caren* Brother to that *Kobad*, who fought in single Combat, where gathering their Family and Treasure, they should convey them to *Abbors Kuh*; which as was said before is the Mountain, where the Heathen *Persians* to this Day keep, and worship the Fire. *Afrasiab* was inform'd of

Single Combat.

the

the Orders *Naudar* had given, and ſent after them one of his Commanders call'd *Karabhon*, who overtook and engag'd them. *Caren* was kill'd, but the Princes eſcap'd. In the mean while, *Afraſiab* perceiving that *Naudar* diſmay'd, attack'd him again, and overthrew him, killing abundance of *Perſians*, and taking all that eſcap'd alive contrary to his own Inclination; for he order'd they ſhould be all put to the Sword, but his Brother *Agarirés* obſtructed it. *Naudar* and moſt of his Commanders were made Priſoners, whom *Afraſiab* caus'd to be ſecur'd in a Fort. After this Victory, *Afraſiab* ſent away one of his Commanders with Thirty Thouſand Men to *Sagiſtam Naudar*'s Court, which he eaſily gain'd. The Fame of this Victory was ſoon ſpread abroad, and being brought to *Merahh*, Father in Law to *Zal*, he ſpeedily made up a conſiderable Preſent, of valuable Things, and ſent it to *Afraſiab*, giving him to underſtand, that he was deſcended from the Family of *Zoahk* his Kinſman, and Subject to the Kings of *Perſia* by Compulſion; but that ſince there was Kindred between them, he was more willing to ſerve him, and pay the ſame he had done to the others. At the ſame time, he gave Advice very privately, and with all Expedition to his Son in Law *Zal*, of what was tranſacting. He hearing it, gather'd ſome Forces, and making all poſſible haſte came to *Sagiſtam*, which being unprovided, he eaſily poſſeſs'd himſelf of. *Afraſiab* was much concern'd at this Accident, and in a Rage order'd *Naudar*'s Head to be cut off, who dy'd thus, when he had reign'd Seven Years.

Naudar *routed and taken.*

His Death.

CHAP.

Chap. XI.

Afrasiab *subdues* Persia; *the* Persians *assisted by his Brother* Agarires, *revolt against him, for which he puts him to Death.*

Afrasiab having subdu'd *Persia*, his Father *Paxangh* became King of it, and *Turkestam*; but *Afrasiab* govern'd tyrannically, which provok'd the *Persians* to conspire against him, imploring the Assistance of *Agarires*, by the Interposition of one *Kaharen*, a wise and brave *Persian*. He directed them to call *Zal*, and begin the War, and they should soon see how much he would do for them. *Zal*, who was then at *Sagistam*, was sent to, who came speedily, and having provided all Things, commenc'd the War, sending *Ghexuad*, a famous Commander towards *Tabrastam*, to stir up those Countries. This could not be done so privately, but that *Afrasiab* had notice of it, who being thoroughly inform'd of what was in hand, and that his Brother *Agarires* held Intelligence with the *Persians*, caus'd him to be kill'd. *Zal* was much concern'd at his Death, and made use of it to incense the *Persians* against the *Turks*, marching towards them with his Forces, and tho' they were stronger, did not refuse to come to a Battle; which having lasted all the Day with great Slaughter, Night parted them, without any visible Advantage on either side. They both return'd to their Camps, where they continu'd

Zal *makes War on* Afrasiab.

Agarires *kill'd.*

tinu'd Seven Months with many Skirmishes, wherein abundance of Men were destroy'd. Both Camps suffer'd equally through Want, and contagious Distempers, which oblig'd them to propose some Accommodation, and *Afrasiab* was content to retire to *Turon*, quitting *Persia*, after he had been possess'd of it Twelve Years.

Chap. XII.

Of Bazab *the Tenth King of* Persia.

After *Frasiab* being expell'd, the *Persians* put the Government into the Hands of *Bazab*, of the Blood Royal, and above Eighty Years of Age when he enter'd upon it; and being so old took his Nephew *Garxacef* for his Associate in the Throne. This *Bazab* taking into Consideration, the Miseries and Hardships the *Persians* lay under, by reason of the late Wars, endeavour'd to preserve Peace, during his Reign, which he did, and for his Life, which was not long, generously remitted all Taxes, that the People might recover their Losses. For the Improvement of the Country he brought into it Two Rivers from afar off, the Names whereof were *Habyn*, and *Raz Habyn*. He never had any Treasure, nor endeavour'd to have it; but as soon as any considerable Sum of Mony came into his Hands, distributed it among his Officers, and Soldiers; yet was a great Epicure, and much

His good Government.

much addicted to eating, and drinking, so that he invented several ways of dressing Meat; and this is all that *Mirkond* says of him, worth observing.

Chap. XIII.

Of Kaykobad *the Eleventh King of* Persia; Afrasiab *overthrown in Battle, and Peace restor'd.*

Kaykobad, the Grandson of *Naudar*, succeeded *Bazab* in the Throne, and appointed *Rostam*, the Son of *Zal*, and Grandson of *Som*, General of his Army. Forces were rais'd, and the King march'd, attended by *Merahb*, Grandfather to *Rostam*, *Ghexuad*, *Kaharen*, and other famous Commanders. *Afrasiab* met him with a more numerous Army, and they came to a Battle, in which *Rostam* perform'd such Feats, that *Afrasiab* in a Fear, demanded a Truce for Two Days, which was granted, he propos'd in Council to treat of Peace, and offer'd it to *Kaykobad*, who would have accepted of it, but that the *Persians* were averse. The Fight was renew'd, and *Afrasiab* routed in this second Engagement. In the Heat of the Action, *Rostam* desir'd to have *Afrasiab* shown him, whom as soon as he saw, he encounter'd, and being wonderful strong, easily forc'd him out of his Saddle, and binding his Feet with a Rope, which all *Persian* Soldiers did then, and still use to

to carry about them, to draw Water out of Wells, and for other Purposes, dragg'd him along among the dead, as he gallop'd. But *Afrasiab* being subtle, loos'd himself, and made fast a dead Body in his stead, so dexterously, that he was not perceiv'd, and by that means made his Escape at this time. *Rostam* came before the King, well pleas'd, believing he had brought *Afrasiab*, and presented him as such; but discovering his Mistake, was out of Countenance, and begg'd his Pardon, promising he would not be so impos'd upon another time. *Afrasiab* made his way into *Turkestam*, whence he sent an Embassador to *Kaykobad*, suing for Peace, which was granted. Then *Kaykobad* generously distributed his Treasure among his Men, and drew back into his own Country, where he behav'd himself as became a just, and good Prince, during the rest of his Life. At length, he grew blind, and other Diseases coming on, dy'd at *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahan*, the Capital of *Hierach*, where he kept his Court, leaving his Son *Kaykaus* to succeed him.

Rostam deceiv'd by Afrasiab.

Peace concluded.

CHAP.

Chap. XIV.

Kaykaus *the Twelfth King of* Persia, *reduces* Mazandaron, *which had rebell'd*; *passes on into* Arabia, *where he marries*; *returns to* Persia, *and what happen'd there, till his Death.*

Kaykaus, as was said above, ascended the Throne, after his Father *Kaykobad*'s Death. A *Persian* Commander, taking the Advantage of the late Broils, had rebell'd, with the City, and Province of *Mazandaron*. *Kaykaus* march'd against him, and laid Siege to the Place, which was strong, and well stor'd with Men, and Provisions, so that he attack'd it in vain. Hereupon he pretended to be in Want, and held Intelligence with the besieged, who being inveigl'd by the great Price he gave for all Sorts of Food, sold it without any Consideration, and the Quantity being great, soon felt the Want, which made them fall into the Hands of *Kaykaus*, who could never have reduc'd them any other way.

Policy of Kaykaus.

Where Mazandaron *is.*

This City of *Mazandaron* is one of the famousest in those Parts, seated beyond the Country of *Gueylon* Northwards, near the *Caspian* Sea. The Natives are a robust warlike People, and reckned among the other Subjects of the King of *Persia*. In the Year 1597, when I was that way, one *Malek Sultan Mahomet*, a *Persian* of singular Courage, and Bravery, was Governor of that City, and Province. He had one Arm con-

considerably longer than the other, so that it reach'd below his Knee, and about that time gave a notable Testimony of his Valour; for an Enemy making an Inroad into his Country, with Seven Thousand Men, he opposed him with only Three Hundred, fought, and defeated him in open Field, killing a great Number of his Men. To this purpose I remember, that in the City of *Cochim*, there was a Citizen that I convers'd with many times, whose Right Arm was very remarkably bigger than the Left; and the Gentiles of *Coromandel*, where he was born, in the City of St. *Thomas*, paid him extraordinary Respect, as a wonderful Creature; for the Eastern Heathens do great Honour to any thing that is out of the common Course of Nature, looking upon it as supernatural; as among Trees to any that is remarkably bigger than the rest of that kind; so as an Ox with Two Heads, as I saw once at *Goa*; or a Stone of any extraordinary Shape, or Figure. For this Reason, that the Pagans might not have the Occasion offer'd them, that Citizen was forbid travelling through those Countries, without special Leave.

Bravery of a Persian.

Indian *Superstition.*

Mazandaron being reduc'd, *Kaykaus* took a Progress through his Dominions, till he came into *Arabia*, between which and *Persia* was that great Limb of the Sea call'd the Gulph of *Persia*. An *Arabian* King, whose Name was *Zoulzogar*, met him, they fought, the *Arabian* was routed, and fled, abandoning his Country, and the best Fortress he had, where his whole Family was, and with it a most beautiful Daughter. A Treaty of

Kaykaus *routs the* Arabians.

Peace was set on foot, and concluded, on Condition, that *Zaulzogar*, should give his Daughter *Saudaba*, that was her Name, in Marriage to *Kaykaus*. She was brought by one of her Brothers, with a Thousand beautiful Women Slaves, and the Nuptials were celebrated, with general Satisfaction.

Marries their King's Daughter.

Whilst this was doing in *Arabia*, *Afrasiab* enter'd the Dominions of *Persia* with an Army, doing much Harm; but was repuls'd by *Kaykaus*'s Garrisons. He having settled the Affairs of the Kingdom of *Ammon*, and the other Lands he possess'd in *Arabia*, return'd to *Persia*, with his Wife *Saudaba*, where he bestow'd the Governments of *Sagistam*, and *Kabulstam*, on *Rostam*, with very great Privileges, and Immunities. Before *Kaykaus* went into *Arabia*, he had a Son, call'd *Syavex*, carefully educated by *Rostam*, virtuous, and belov'd by all Men, which was not pleasing to *Saudaba*, who resolv'd to set him at Variance with the King. To this Purpose, she pretended to love, and made him acquainted with it, whereupon he shunn'd her as much as possible. She waited her Opportunity, when the King had very much Company, and ran in weeping, tearing her Hair, and shrieking, declaring that *Syavex* would have ravish'd her. *Syavex* was secur'd, but upon Examination came off clear. The King would have had her burnt, had not Intreaties, and the Love he bore her prevail'd.

Saudaba's Practices against Syavex.

Afrasiab invades Persia.

News was brought that *Afrasiab*, taking a Compass above the River *Jehun*, was marching towards *Balk*, a City of Note, in the Province of *Uzbek*. *Kaykaus* sent his Son

Son *Syavex* against him, with Twelve Thousand Horse, and the same Number of Foot, and Orders to pass by *Sagistam*, and take *Rostam* along with him, with all the Forces he could gather. *Syavex* did so, and was honourably receiv'd by *Rostam*, whence they march'd together, and encamp'd within Two Leagues of the Enemy. Whilst they lay thus expecting to ingage, it is reported, that *Afrasiab* dreamt Three Nights following, that if he fought, he should be defeated, and dangerously wounded. This repeated Dream terrify'd him, and he had Thoughts of making Peace, which he communicated with his Brother *Garceres*, who manag'd the Affair so well with *Syavex*, *Rostam*, and their Council, that they consented to it. *Kaykaus* being acquainted with it, was much offended, and immediately sent away his Unkle *Thus*, the Son of *Naudar*, with Letters of Reproof to *Syavex*, and Orders to pursue *Afrasiab*, and give him Battle, wheresoever he could be found, and in Case of Refusal, to deliver up the Army to the Conduct of *Thus*. *Rostam* took it ill, that the King did not approve of what had been done by *Syavex*, and himself, and therefore left the Army, and went away to *Kabulstam*. *Afrasiab* had a Commander in his Army, call'd *Pirond Vaysa*, with whom *Syavex* was acquainted, and entertain'd a friendly Correspondence, to whom he went, and was by him joyfully conducted to *Afrasiab*. He went out a considerable way to meet, and lead him to his Tent, where in Token of Affection, he gave him a Daughter of his own, call'd *Franguys*, to Wife. *Garceres*, Brother

Syavex *goes over to the Enemy.*

Brother to *Afrasiab*, did not approve of this Match, as neither the other great Men of his Court, who thought their Honour concern'd, and conspir'd to murder *Syavex*, and he being inform'd of it, acquainted his Wife *Franguys*, then with Child by him, desiring that in Case he dy'd, and she was deliver'd of a Son, she would give him to any *Persian* that should desire it. Many Days did not pass before the Conspirators slew *Syavex*, and would have done the same by *Franguys*, to destroy the Infant she had in her Womb, but *Pirond Vaysa* secur'd her, and she was deliver'd of a Son, whom they call'd *Kaykozrao*, and by the same *Pirond Vaysa* caus'd to be privately brought up in the Country, till *Guyu*, the Son of *Gudarz*, afterwards carry'd him into *Persia*.

Is kill'd by the Turks.

Kaykozrao *his Son born.*

The Death of *Syavex* was much lamented throughout all *Persia*, and more particularly by his Father, who resolv'd to revenge it, and therefore sent *Rostam* with a considerable Army, and positive Orders to fight *Afrasiab*, which he did, and routed him, killing his Brother *Garceres*, and the same Fate would have befallen him, had he not fled in time. *Rostam* was returning victorious, when News was brought him, that *Schaydah Afrasiab*'s Son, march'd after him, with a fresh Army; *Rostam* halted to expect him, with *Frayborz*, Son to King *Kaykaus*, and Brother to the murder'd *Syavex*. This Prince knowing *Schaydah* in the Battle, ran at him with his Launce, and bore him down to the Ground dead. The *Turks* fled, and he pursu'd his Victory as far as *Turon*, *Afrasiab*'s Court, and Capital of *Turkestam*, which was plunder'd

Afrasiab *routed by* Rostam.

plunder'd by the *Persians*, of all the vast Treasures laid up in it. *Franguys* Widow to *Syavex*, was in that Place, to whom *Rostam* sent to desire she would show him her Son, she excus'd herself, saying, she knew not what was become of him. *Rostam* return'd into *Persia*, where he was honour'd, and rewarded by the King, and went back to his Government.

King *Kaykaus* was very desirous to bring his Grandson *Kaykozrao*, Son to *Syavex*, and *Franguys*, who was at *Turon*, into *Persia*, and to this Effect, sent *Guyu*, the Son of *Gudorz*, a noble *Persian*, very well qualify'd, into *Turquestam*. He manag'd so well, that coming to *Turon*, he saw *Franguys* and *Kaykozrao*, and prevail'd with them to go away into *Persia*, without any other Attendance, but *Guyu* himself, and *Pirond Vaysa*, who being inform'd of their Departure, overtook them on the Road, and went on to Court, where they were receiv'd, and entertain'd by the King, as became such Persons. Some time after, *Kaykaus* being sensible of the great Worth, and many Virtues of his Grandson *Kaykozrao*, appointed him General of his Army, and bestow'd signal Favours on *Guyu* for his good Service. *Thus*, Unkle to *Kaykaus*, and *Frayborz* his Son, were much offended, that *Kaykozrao* who was his Grandson, and had the Blood of the greatest Enemies of *Persia*, should be preferr'd before them. This occasion'd Factions, the one for *Frayborz*, supported by his Unkle *Thus*; the other for *Kaykozrao*, which *Guyu* took Part with. The King could not reconcile these Enmities, and therefore to

Kaykozrao *Grandson to* Kaykaus.

Factions at Court.

prevent ill Consequences did thus. One *Bahaman* was Governor of the City *Ardavel*, and being in Rebellion, ravag'd the Lands of *Persia*. *Kaykaus* form'd Two Armies, equal in Numbers, and Experience, and putting one of the Pretenders at the Head of each, told them, that he who first reduc'd that Enemy should have the Preference. They were both satisfy'd, and set forward. *Frayborz* going foremost, did nothing worth speaking of; but *Kaykozrao* fighting *Bahaman*, overthrew him, and reduc'd the City *Ardavel*, then returning to Court was declar'd King, and *Guyu* his General *Kaykaus* retiring, when he had reign'd many Years.

Ardavil *City.*

Ardabel, or *Ardavil*, for it is call'd by both Names, is a City in the Province of *Aderbaion*, in *Persia*, a few Days Journey from *Tabris*, or *Tauris*, not large, but well known, on Account of its being the Birth Place of *Scheque Aydar*, Father to *Scheque*, *Scha* or *Ishmael Suphy*, who govern'd *Persia*, when the *Portugueses* began to trade, and conquer in those Parts, and it was he that *Alfonso de Albuquerque* corresponded with by Letters. Now in regard that in *Portugal*, and throughout all *Spain*, they vulgarly call all the Kings of *Persia*, *Sophys*, tho' they are not so, I will briefly declare the Signification of this Name, and its Original. All the *Mahometan* Sects which have been, and still continue numerous, are reduc'd to Two Heads. That of the *Sunys*, follow'd by the *Turks*, and *Arabs*, and others who observe *Mahomet*'s *Alcoran*, without any Comments, or Expositions; and that of the *Schyahys*, being the *Persians*, and all the Followers of *Morts Aly*. Of this last

Sophy *whence, and its Significacation.*

Sunys *and* Schyahys Mahometan *Sects.*

was

was *Scheque Aydar*, Father to *Scheque Ishmael*, who held as his Father had done, being always extraordinary zealous of his vain and cursed Sect; on which Account he practis'd inhuman, and incredible Cruelties on the Professors of the other Sect, in his Conquest of *Persia*, pretending to aim at nothing, but the Salvation of Souls. Now for as much as in *Persia*, they commonly give the Name of *Sufy* to one that forsakes the World, and devotes himself to the Service of God, therefore this Man's Party gave him the Title of *Sufy*, for his Zeal towards his Sect. Not long before him, *Hhalila* had revolted in *Persia*, and for the same Reason was call'd *Sufy Hhalila*. So that *Sufy* is no proper Name, nor belonging to every King, but an Adjective, signifying, a Religious Man, or one that has left the World, and wholly applies himself to serve God, which plainly appears, in as much as none, after him above mention'd, bore that Sirname; and there is a great Number of *Sufys* throughout all *Persia*, who are all Religious Men. I have made this Digression on Account of *Ardavel*, the Place where *Scheque Ishmael* was born, of whom more shall be said in its Place. According to the *Persian* Computation, this King *Kaykaus* was contemporary with *Solomon*, whom they call *Soleimon ben Davd*, that is, *Solomon* the Son of *David*.

Kaykaus Solomons *Contemporary.*

Chap. XV.

Of Kaykozrao, *the Thirteenth King of* Persia; *he makes War on his Grandfather* Afrasiab, *King of* Turkestam, *for which Reason his Son* Syavex *differs with him, and goes over to* Turon; *the End of* Afrasiab, *and Two of his Sons.*

Kaykozrao *makes War on* Turkestam.

Kaykozrao succeeded his Grandfather *Kaykaus* in the Throne of *Persia*, and reconcil'd past Differences by his Generosity, and Affability. He restor'd Justice, which had been much laid aside, call'd an Assembly of his chief Men, to whom he propos'd his Design of making War upon the *Turks*, in Revenge for their murdering his Father, which they all approv'd, and promis'd to stand by him. He presently sent his Unkle *Frayborz*, Brother to his Father, and his Unkle *Thus*, the Son of *Naudar*, with Thirty Thousand Horse to ravage the Country of *Turkestam*. *Kaykozrao* had a Son call'd *Syavex*, who being offended that his Father should make War on his Great Grandfather, went away from him to *Turon*. *Pirond Vaysa*, who, as has been said, came into *Persia* with *Guyu*, when he brought *Kaykozrao*, and his Mother *Franguys*, was marry'd there, and had a Son he call'd *Ferud*, whom when of Age he sent into *Turkestam*, and follow'd after himself. The King lov'd this Youth, as if he had been his own Child, and therefore when he sent *Frayborz* into

into *Turkestam*, understanding that *Ferud* kept Garrison in a Fortress, he earnestly charg'd his Commanders to keep at a distance from it; yet they, upon some occasion, pass'd close by it, and *Ferud* sallying out, was kill'd in Fight. The King being inform'd of it, was very much concern'd, and understanding that *Thus* had been the cause of it, sent for him to Court, where he was disgrac'd, and thrown into Prison. *Frayborz*, and *Gudarz* prosecuted the War against the *Turks*, wherein they were unsuccessful; for *Pirond Vaysa* meeting, overthrew them, with a great Slaughter of *Persians*, and among them of Seventy Gentlemen of the Family of *Gudarz*, who, with *Frayborz*, fled hastily into *Persia*. The King sent *Gudarz* again, with another Army, and *Thus*, who was again receiv'd into Favour. He march'd towards *Turon*, but met the Enemy ravaging *Persia*, whom he ingaged, and not being able to stand their Shock, retir'd hastily to the Mountain *Damaoand*, where he Intrench'd, and the *Turks* Besieg'd him, securing all the Passes. The Fame of this Siege brought Two other Kings, neighbouring upon the *Turks*, with their Armies to assist them. The one of them was call'd *Hhabbon*, and the other *Schangol*, which made the *Persians* look upon themselves as lost. *Kaykozrao* hearing the Danger his Troops were in, made hast to relieve them, sent for *Rostam*, who advanc'd with what Forces he could gather, marching incessantly till he came up with the Enemy. The *Persians* had notice of his coming, and perceiving he was near, came

Ferud *kill'd.*

Persians *defeated.*

Again, and Besieg'd.

Rostam *routs the* Turks.

came down from the Mountain; but being attack'd in Front, and Rear, were entirely defeated, most of them slain, and among them *Hhakhon*, one of the confederate Kings. This did not satisfy *Kaykozrao*, who forming Four several Armies, sent them as many ways to invade *Turkestam*, the greatest, which went by the way of *Balk*, being commanded by *Gudarz*, whom *Pirond Vaysa* oppos'd, with the best of Four *Turkish* Armies, *Afrasiab* sent to oppose the *Persians*. They ingag'd, the *Turks* were quite routed, and *Pirond Vaysa* slain, whose Head was sent to *Kaykozrao*, and he much lamented at the sight of it, because he had been bred by him. Above 100000 *Turks* were taken in this War, with 11 Prime Commanders. *Frayborz* rewarded all those who had serv'd upon these occasions, giving *Frayborz* the Lands of *Kyche*, by the *Portugueses* call'd *Cache*, and those of *Macron*, which are Kingdoms lying between *Goadel*, and the *Abindos*, at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Persia*.

They are again defeated.

Afrasiab recruited his Army, and put it under the Command of another of his Sons, who march'd with it to *Kaorrasm*, the Boundary of the *Turkish* Dominions, where the *Persian* Forces lay, by whom they were overthrown, and *Afrasiab*'s Son kill'd. He not thinking himself safe in a Fortress, where he lay, fled, and that Place fell into the Hands of *Kaykozrao*, with his Wife and Daughters, who were by him honourably receiv'd, and entertain'd. Some Months after *Afrasiab* was taken, and put to Death. This tedious War being thus happily

Third overthrow of them.

pily ended, and all things well settled, *Kaykozrao* retir'd from Court, and having no Sons, transferr'd the Crown to *Lorasph*, Grandson to a Brother of *Kaykaus*, and his own second Cousin, contrary to the Inclination of some Great ones. Not long after he dy'd, having first restor'd all the Lands, and Possessions his Predecessors had taken from his Subjects, and paid all his Debts. He favour'd the Poor, administred impartial Justice, maintain'd the Soldiers at his own Charge; and never undertook any important Affair without mature Advice. In his Days there were two famous Philosophers in *Persia*, the one call'd *Hhores*, the other *Lokman*. Of this last the *Persians* still have some Works of an extraordinary Wit, and among the rest a Book of Comparisons, and Examples, very like *Esops*, and I am of Opinion he was the same Man, for speaking of his Life, they say he was a great Philosopher, Slave to another, Deform'd, but very Witty, and that he was condemn'd to Death; all that hesitates me is their affirming that he was a *Jew*; and when they would commend a Man's Wisdom, they say, *there is no need of teaching* Lokman.

Kaykozrao *dyes.*

Two Philosophers.

Esop.

CHAP.

Chap. XVI.

Of Loraſph, *the Fourteenth King of* Perſia; *his Son* Guſtaſph *rebels, flyes into* Turkeſtam, *marries there, ſtirs up a War againſt his Father, is brought back into* Perſia, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

Loraſph aſcended the Throne, for want of any other nearer ally'd to it, being as has been ſaid, Grandſon to a Brother of *Kaykaus*, and ſecond Couſin to *Kaykozrao*. His Promotion was oppos'd by ſome, and particularly by *Zal*, Father to *Roſtam*, becauſe he was known to be of a harſh, and cruel Temper; yet he prevail'd, and was proclaim'd King. He ſet out from *Hiſphaon*, or *Iſpahan*, and took a Progreſs through his Dominions, as far as *Balk*, whence he ſent *Gudarz* with an Army, into *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, and *Paleſtine*; who behav'd himſelf ſo well upon that Expedition, that he ſoon ſubdu'd the Country of *Babel*, that is *Babylon*, *Dimesk*, and *Scham*, being that of *Damaſcus*, and then marching to *Beyt almocadas*, ſignifying *Jeruſalem*, an *Arabick* Name, from *Beyt*, a Houſe, and *almocadas*, of the Holy ones, the King of that Place ſubmitted himſelf, ingaging to become Tributary, and delivering up ſome Men of Note, as *Hoſtages*, for the performance. Theſe *Gudarz* ſlew a few Days after, upon Intelligence, that the *Jews* had rebell'd againſt their King, on Account

Babylon, Damaſcus *and* Paleſtine *ſubdu'd by the* Perſians.

count of the Agreement made with him, and design'd to make War on him. Hereupon *Gudarz* returning, attack'd the City, and took it by Storm, at which time the *Persians* exercised great Cruelty, carrying away a great Number of *Jews* Captives into *Persia*. *Gudarz* having obtain'd these, and other Victories, return'd into *Persia*.

Jerusalem *taken by them.*

King *Lorasph* had Two Sons, the elder call'd *Gustaph*, and the younger *Zarir*. *Gustasph* was Haughty, high Minded, and Turbulent, and some restless Spirits finding he was well dispos'd, perswaded him to Rebel against his Father, and Usurp the Crown, being Seconded by a considerable Part of it. His Father took the Field, with what Forces he could gather, and oblig'd him to quit the Kingdom, as being too weak to maintain his Ground. The better to compass it he went off alone in a Disguize, and fled into *Turkestam*, where he married that Kings Daughter, without being known, which hap'ned after this manner. It was an antient Custom in *Turkestam*, when the King was to marry a Daughter, for all the People then residing about the Court, to meet in a Field appointed for that purpose, in the best Dress they were able, and being drawn up in Order, the Father led the Bride by one Hand, and in the other she carry'd a Gold Ball, of the shape and bigness of an Orange, set with Precious Stones. Being come to the Place, where the People waited, she walk'd all over it, very particularly observing every Person in it, and at last gave the Ball to him she lik'd best, and he was by Law her Husband.

Gustaph *Son to* Lorasph *Rebels.*

Flies to Turkestam, *and marries the King's Daughter.*

Strange Custom.

band. It hap'ned, that a Daughter of the Kings was going to chuse a Husband, just as *Gustasph* came to the Court, and he, out of Curiosity went away, as he was in his riding Apparel, to the Place appointed, only to see Fashions. Fortune so order'd it, that the Bride took a Fancy to, and gave him the Ball. The King her Father, was very much concern'd at it, because *Gustasph* was not known, and the great Men there present complain'd, however the Custom was observ'd, and they were marry'd. To prevent the like for the future, a Law was enacted, that the King's Daughters should not from that time be given to any but such as had Parts, and Quality to deserve them. The King had still Two others, extraordinary Beautiful, who were su'd for by Two Sons of a neighbouring King, to whom he promis'd them, in case each of them would deliver up to him one of Two Rebels, who did great Harm in his Dominions. They thought this a very difficult Condition, and Enterprize; but *Gustasph*'s Valour beginning now to be known, they so far prevail'd with him, by the Mediation of Friends, that he alone undertook that Affair, and pretending to go abroad a Hunting, with a suitable Retinue, soon took, kill'd, and deliver'd them to the Two Brothers, who were in his Company, and they presented them to the King, who thereupon gave them his Daughters. Some few Days after, the King Riding at Tilt, *Gustasph* did it so dexterously, and with such a Grace, that the King highly commended him, and he answer'd, it was

Tilting us'd in Persia.

no

no wonder he should manage a Lance so dexterously a Horseback, who had been able to rid the Country of those Rebels, that infested it. The King heard it, and being assur'd of the Truth, was better satisfy'd; tho' he knew so well how to dissemble that none thoroughly knew him. This Tilting is much us'd in those Countries, and I have seen it done several times by King *Ferrogafxa*, at *Ormuz*, with all his Nobility, so regularly, that it could not have been better perform'd on Foot.

What has been said concerning the Custom of Marrying in *Persia*, will not be surprizing to such as are acquainted with the several Rites observ'd by the Eastern Nations in Matrimony, some of which I do not mention, as not thinking it lawful to write them; it is enough to know, that the World being so wide, there must needs be various Customs, and Manners in it, which being strange to us, appear unaccountable. *Gustasph* held in mind the unkindness his Father *Lorasph* had always shown him, and meditated Revenge; herein much differing from his Father, who was very much concern'd at his Absence, and could not guess what was become of him. The undutiful Son, being thus bent, perswaded his Father in Law, to forbear paying Tribute to his Father *Lorasph*, and make War on him. The *Turk* did it, but with no good Will, and sent an Embassador to declare the War. *Lorasph* was somewhat surpriz'd at it, and inquiring of the Embassador into the occasion of it, because he did not think that which he alledg'd sufficient

Gustasph perswades the Turks *to War on his Father.*

ficient, was inform'd, that it was caus'd by a Stranger, being a Man of Valour, who through an unexpected Accident had marry'd the King's Daughter; and inquiring into the matter, was perswaded, that must be his Son *Gustasph*, which being fix'd in his Mind, he sent his younger Son *Zarir*, Brother to *Gustasph* along with the Embassador, and by him a *Tage*, or Royal *Diadem*, to the end that when he had receiv'd it, he might come away, and take Possession of the Throne. *Gustasph* had notice of what was doing, and went out to meet them, long before they came to the Court, without acquainting his Father in Law. He met his Brother *Zarir*, put the *Tage* on his Head, and was by all the Company proclaim'd King of *Persia*. This done he sent for his Father in Law, who seeing him in that Posture, was much surpriz'd, thinking it had been some Treason, and that he intended to Usurp the Crown; but being inform'd of the Truth, rested satisfy'd, and embrac'd him. *Gustasph* took his leave, and went away into *Persia*, taking his Wife *Katabun*, so the King's Daughter that gave him the Gold Ball was call'd, a great Retinue, and many Camels richly loded, along with him. His Father *Lorasph* receiv'd him with singular Tokens of Affection, which afterwards increas'd, on Account of the many Services he did him; and a few Years after resign'd up the Crown to him, retiring from Court, to live a solitary Life, in which he continued some time, and dy'd, giving his Son much wholesom Ad-

Is call'd home to Reign.

Returns to Persia.

Lorasph *dyes.*

vice.

vice. *Loraſph* had the Surname of *Balkah*, becauſe he reſided for the moſt Part at *Balk*.

Chap. XVII.

Of Guſtaſph, *the Fifteenth King of* Perſia; *he Wars on the King of* Turkeſtam, *on Account of Worſhipping the Fire, with various Succeſs; his Son* Sphandiar *kill'd by* Roſtam, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

WHEN *Loraſph*, or according to others *Loraſeph*, withdrew from Court, *Guſtaſph*, or *Guſtaſef* was already receiv'd as King, being a Man brave in War, and diſcreet in Peace; but much addicted to the Worſhip of Fire, and ſo zealous in that Superſtition, as to wage War on thoſe that would not follow it; as he did on *Ariaſph*, or *Ariaſef*, King of *Turon*, becauſe he ſent him a Reproof, in Anſwer to a Letter, wherein he perſwaded him to embrace the Sect of *Zarduxt*, or *Zoroaſtes*, which is that of the Fire Worſhippers. In ſpeaking above of the City *Tabris*, or *Tauris*, I ſaid it was the Capital of the Province of *Aderbaion*, or *Azarbaion*, which in the *Calange* Language, being what is ſpoken in that Country, ſignifies, the Province of Fire, and as has been already mention'd, this Sect took it's Original there, giving it's Name to the Country, and that of *Zarduxt*, ſignifying, Friend of the Fire, to him

Aderbaion *ſignifies, Province of Fire.*

that follows it; tho' *Zar*, in the universal Language of *Persia*, which is very different from those of particular Places, signifies Mony, and *Azar*, a Thousand, and *Zahar*, Poyson, or Gaul; and they call the Fire, *Attex*. *Gustasph* being offended at the little Respect *Ariasph* had shown in reproving him, took the Field, attended by his Brother *Zarir*, and his Son *Sphandiar*, and march'd with the greatest Force he could raise towards *Turon*. *Ariasph* met him, and was overthrown, with the Slaughter of all his Sons, and Brothers; after which *Gustasph* took *Turon*, plunder'd it, and return'd to *Persia*. There upon some Jealousy conceiv'd, he secur'd his Son *Sphandiar*, in a Fortress, call'd *Guerdkuh*, that is, round Mountain, in the Country of *Rudbar*.

Gustasph *routs the* Turks, *and takes* Turon.

Whilst this was doing in *Persia*, *Ariasph* gather'd a considerable Army, and entering it, took the City *Balk*, plunder'd it, carry'd off some of *Gustasph*'s Daughters, and not so satisfy'd, pierc'd farther in, with such Celerity, that *Gustasph* not daring to expect him, retir'd in haste. A Council was call'd, and resolv'd that *Sphandiar* should be releas'd, and have the Charge of the War, both which he refus'd; but at length, at the earnest intreaty of his Brother *Jamasph*, and his Father promising, in case he return'd Victorious, to resign up the Kingdom to him, he set forward, with a numerous Army; met *Ariasph*, fought him, obtain'd a compleat Victory, and returning home was met by his Father, who after Congratulating his Success, represented to him, how little his Victory was to

Turks *invade* Persia.

Defeated by Sphandiar.

be

be valu'd, whilst his Sisters still remain'd in Captivity. Shame, and his Duty prevailing, he pick'd 24000 Men out of all his Army, 12000 Horse, and as many Foot, and taking his younger Brother *Buxutan* along with him, pursu'd the Enemy to a certain Place, where the Road divided it self into Three several Branches, all of them leading to *Turon*. He chose the longest, but most passable of them, which had plenty of Pasture, along which he sent the Forces, under his Brother *Buxutan*'s Command, with Orders, that when they came to a certain Place, near *Parvindez*, they should lay themselves so secretly in Ambush, that no notice might be taken in *Turon*; and when he discover'd many great Fires lighted near the City, he should assault it, with all possible Fury. *Buxutan* march'd along that way, with the Forces, and *Sphandiar*, with a few Companions, disguiz'd like Merchants, took another call'd *Aphtkhon*, signifying, Seven Kings, or Lords, which was Seven, or Eight Days Journey, taking along with him all the Jewels, and other Things of Value there were among them, being very considerable; for it was, and still is the Custom of the *Persians*, to carry all the Jewels, and other costly Ornaments they have, with them to the Wars. The *Uzbeks* do just the contrary, for being a Warlike People, they take nothing with them, but lean swift Horses, strong Bows, and Quivers full of Arrows, with which Equipage, and flying as they Fight, they have gain'd much Land from the *Persians*, in our Days, whereof I have often heard them complain, saying, they can never obtain

Persians carry their Wealth to the Wars.

Uzbeks the contrary.

tain any considerable Victory over the *Uzbeks*, because they carry so little abroad with them, besides their Arms, whereas they the *Persians*, practice the contrary; which has been the occasion of this Hint. *Sphandiar* soon came to *Turon*, with his Companions, all representing Merchants, and as such appear'd before *Ariasph*, with the Jewels he carry'd, and manag'd that Prince so dexterously, that he caus'd him to be lodg'd in his own Palace. Advice being brought *Sphandiar*, that his Brother *Buxutan* was in the Place he had appointed, with his Troops, he desir'd leave of the King to give him, and his Court an Entertainment, in the Field the next day, which was admitted, and under colour of preparing for it, he had the opportunity of making great Fires, near the Wall. *Buxutan* seeing them, secur'd the Avenues, and assaulted the City, making a dreadful Slaughter of the Inhabitants, and plundering the Place, of all the Booty reserv'd only Two Rarities, which he sent to his Father. The one, a Royal Throne of Gold, set with Precious Stones, of exquisite Workmanship; and the other a white Elephant. Next he releas'd his Sisters, and having deliver'd them to his Brother *Buxutan*, to be conducted home, he took a compass about the Mountains, to see the *Indian* Sea, where he compell'd some Nations to embrace his vain Superstition of Worshipping the Fire.

Sphandiar *plunders* Turon, *and rescues his Sisters.*

This done he return'd into *Persia*, and was well receiv'd by his Father, who instead of resigning the Kingdom, put him upon very dangerous Enterprizes, yet still he always came off well. At last he would have

Is sent against Rostam.

him

him go seek out *Rostam*, who was withdrawn to *Sistan*, and had not been to pay his Respects to him since his Accession to the Throne. He did so, much against his Will, in Obedience to his Father, whom he told, those were all delays to put off the performance of his Promise, and an Injustice towards *Rostam*, who had deserv'd so well. However he set out for *Sistan*, where *Rostam* resided, taking along with him a Son he had, call'd *Bahaman*; who when they came near, went before, and from a Hill saw *Rostam*, who was then a Hunting, perform such Feats of Strength, and Dexterity, that he was astonish'd, and fully perswaded, there would be no carrying him away, against his Will. He went up to him, discover'd who he was, and that his Father *Sphandiar* was coming. *Rostam* went to meet him, they Saluted, the occasion of his coming was handled, and *Rostam* excus'd himself, alledging, that he had been exempt from that Duty; but that in any case of necessity, they should always find him very ready. *Sphandiar* insisted upon his going, and *Rostam* positively refus'd, so that they came to Words, and challeng'd one another. *Sphandiar* was reckon'd one of the bravest Men of *Persia*, and consequently put *Rostam* hard to it: but was at last overcome, and so desperately Wounded, that he soon dy'd. Before his end, he recommended his Son *Bahaman* to *Rostam*, and his Body to his Brother *Buxutan*, who caus'd it to be afterwards convey'd into *Persia*, where he was honourably bury'd. *Kill'd by him.*

His Father *Gustasph* was much troubled at this Misfortune; but not knowing how to

Gustasph *routs the* Turks. help himself, at present, march'd with his Army against the King of *Turkestam*, then ravaging his Country, whom he Fought, and Vanquish'd. Returning to his Court, he sent for his Grandson *Bahaman*, the Son of *Sphandiar*, who was still at *Sistan*, to whom he surrender'd the Kingdom, and retir'd himself, to lead a solitary Life, in a Place call'd *Ghozghzar*, that is, the costly Pleasure House, which being very delightful, and artificial, the *Persians* say was contriv'd by *Soleyman ben Daud*, or *Solomon* the Son of *David*, adding other such Fables, for the more Grandeur. This Place is Ten *Farsanghes*, that is Thirty Miles from *Schiras*. *Gustasph* founded the City *Asuartah*, in the Province of *Maurenahar*; had himself the Surname of *Herbod*, and dy'd a few Years after his Resignation.

Resigns the Crown and dies.

Chap. XVIII.

Of Bahaman Daraz Daz, *the Sixteenth King of* Persia, *his Life, and Death.*

Bahaman *King.* GUstasph, as he has said, left the Throne to his Grandson *Bahaman*, surnam'd *Daraz Dast*, which signifies, of the long Hand, for *Dast* in the *Persian* Language, is a Hand, and *Daraz*, Long. They also give him the Name of *Ardxir*, which they use most commonly in the *Persian* Chronicles, but not being his proper Name, and only given him on account of a pleasant Accident, before he was born, I will here briefly relate it. Whilst he was yet in his Mothers

thers Womb, a famous Astrologer came to wait upon his Grandfather *Gustasph*, and his Father *Sphandiar*, who being both together, after the usual Salutation, he directed his Discourse to *Sphandiar*, and presenting him with a little Basket, said, he knew nothing more proper to offer his Son that would be born, than what he there brought. When uncover'd, it appear'd to be a Vessel with Milk, and a little Meal. They were very well pleas'd with the Wise Man's Prediction, valuing the Offering, and form'd him a Name of those they call'd such things by, being *Ardxir*, and he was better known by it, than by his own, which was *Bahaman*; for in the *Persian*, *Ard* is Meal, and *Xir* Milk, both of them making *Ardxir*, whence the *Greeks*, and *Latins*, call'd him *Artaxerxes*; and from *Daraz Dast*, came *Longimanus*, signifying the same Thing; and hence some of his Successors had *Ardxir* for their proper Name.

Why call'd Ardxir, *or* Artaxerxes.

This *Bahaman Daraz Dast*, or *Ardxir*, was of a graceful Presence, his right Hand, and Arm were considerably longer than the left, and he had all the good Qualities that can be wish'd for in a good Prince; but above all, was so zealous for the publick good, that when he sent any Judges, or Magistrates upon a Circuit through his Kingdom, he at the same time under Hand, employ'd others he confided in, to follow, and be Spies on all their Actions, to give him an Account of them, and if they behav'd themselves well, they were rewarded, or if otherwise severely punish'd. After governing for the space of a Year, he held an Assembly of his Nobility, whom he in-

Ardxir's Integrity. form'd, how desirous he was to proceed uprightly in all Respects, and desir'd they would, without any Fear, or Apprehension publickly acquaint him with any thing that was in him blame-worthy, that he might mend it; and that in case, he was not fit to govern well they should depose him; for it was better for him to obey one that knew how to rule, than to be himself in Authority, to the Detriment of the Kingdom. They all highly commended his good Intention, and loudly pray'd to God for his Life, and Prosperity; and after setling some Affairs, he dismiss'd them. *Ardxir* rebuilt many publick Structures, that were gone to Ruin, and regulated the Government. Next he apply'd himself to revenge his Father *Sphandiar*'s Death, and having rais'd a good Army, march'd towards *Sifton*. About half way, News was brought him, that *Rostam* was dead, and his Son *Framarz* was advancing against him, with considerable Forces. The Two Armies engag'd, and *Ardxir* came off victorious, tho' it cost him many Men; but *Framarz*, *Rostam*'s Son, and some of his Kindred were kill'd; and his Grandfather *Zal*, who still Liv'd, taken. *Ardxir* returning home Victorious, leaving a Kinsmans of his own to govern *Sifton*, and *Kabul*. He wag'd War by his Generals in *Syria*, and *Palestine*, reducing them under his Obedience, and abundance of *Jews* were carry'd Prisoners into *Persia*.

He marches against Rostam, *and finds him dead.*

Defeats and kills his Son Framarz.

His Son Salan *a Philosopher despises the Crown.*

Ardxir had a Son, call'd *Salan*, who prov'd a great Philosopher, and Astrologer, and left the Court to apply himself wholly to his Studies, nor did he ever aspire to the Crown, tho' he saw his Father taken away.

In

In fine *Ardxir* dy'd, to the unſpeakable Grief of all his People, leaving his Wife *Homay* with Child of a Son, which ſhe was deliver'd of, after his Death. In the Days of this *Ardxir* flouriſh'd *Hypocrates*, whom the *Perſians* call *Bokorat*; as alſo *Democritus*, whom they name *Dimocritis*, and they have the Writings of both. They have thoſe of *Plato*, by them call'd *Aphlatum*; of *Socrates*, by them pronounc'd *Sokorat*, of *Ariſtotle*, whom they call *Araſto*, and *Araſtatalis*, and of *Galen*, whom they name *Gialenus*. In ſhort they preſerve, and highly extol the Works of theſe, and ſeveral other *Greeks*; and it is very frequent among the *Perſians*, who value themſelves for Learning, and even for good breeding in their common Diſcourſe, to interſperſe ſome Quotations, Sentences, or Opinions of thoſe Men, and ſuch of their own, as have writ, which are many, ſome whereof I ſhall call to mind, as Occaſion offers. King *Ardxir*, or *Bahaman daraz daſt* was us'd to ſay, that no Door ought to be ſhut in a Princes Houſe.

Ardxir dies.

Learned Men in his Time.

We ſaid, that *Ardxir* marching againſt *Roſtam*, found him dead, and he having been ſo much ſpoken of in this Hiſtory, it will be proper to be more particular, as to the manner of his End, repeating all that *Mirkond* writes concerning it. *Roſtam* had a Brother, call'd *Schayad*, whom he had intruſted to overſee his Lands, take Care of them, and receive his Rents. *Schayad* going into *Kabul*, upon this Account fell in Love with a very beautiful Daughter of the Governor of that Country, and ask'd her of the Father, who perceiving him ſo much enamour'd, ſtood off the more, the eagerer he ſeem'd; till at laſt

Roſtam's Death.

last he consented, upon *Schayad*'s promising to deliver him from his Subjection to *Rostam*, by contriving his Death. This being resolv'd, *Schayad* return'd to *Sistan*, where talking with his Brother *Rostam*, he complain'd to him against the Governor of *Kabul*, alledging he had contemn'd, slighted, and treated him very ill. *Rostam* was in a Passion, reflecting on his Brother, as a Coward, and a poor spirited Man, and would have rais'd Forces to chastize the Governor. *Schayad* oppos'd it, alledging his Presence was sufficient to set all Things right, which *Rostam* gave Credit to. He set out with his Brother *Zanada*, another Kinsman of his, and a few Servants, for *Kabul*. *Schayad* under hand sent word to his Father in Law, who set out from *Kabul*, to meet him on the Road, having laid many Men in Ambush along it. When *Rostam* came up, he knelt down, and begg'd his Pardon, as if he repented his past Faults. *Rostam* forgave him, and the Governor desir'd he would go rest him, at a Pleasure House of his, guiding of him in such manner, that he fell into one of the Pits, he had provided for that purpose, cover'd over with Grass and Leaves, and within full of Brambles, which so sorely gor'd *Rostam* and his Horse, that he dy'd there. But finding himself betray'd, without any Hope, of Deliverance, after much upbraiding them, he desir'd, they would give him a Bow, and some Arrows, to defend himself against the wild Beasts, that they might not devour him alive. They did so, and he clapping Two Arrows into it, let them fly with such force, that tho' his Brother, and the Governor ran for shelter to a Tree, they overtook, and kill'd

Persians shoot several Arrows at once.

kill'd them, and thus ended *Roſtam* and his Murderers. It is very uſual in *Perſia*, to ſhoot Two or Three Arrows out of a Bow at once, eſpecially in Battles. The *Perſian* Hiſtory tells us, that *Roſtam* ſhot them thro' the Tree, which is contrary to Reaſon; but agrees well with the Wonders they tell us of his Strength, and Exploits, whereof there are as many Books in the *Perſian* Tongue, in Verſe, and Proſe, as there are among us of *Orlando Furioſo*, the Knight of the Sun, *Don Bellianis* of *Greece*, and ſuch like, and this may ſuffice as to the Death of *Roſtam*; but having ſo often ſpoken of *Kabul*, we will ſay ſomething of it, for the better Underſtanding of what is paſt.

Kabul Kingdom.

Kabul is a Kingdom, formerly ſubject to *Perſia*, and bordering upon *India*. It was in antient times, Three Months Journey from *Kabul* to *Lahor*, now the Court of the Great *Mogol*, and Center of all *India*; and now it is perform'd in Twenty, or Five and Twenty Days, and the Reaſon of it was, the great Compaſs taken about, for Fear of the many Robbers. One of the Kings of *Kabul* reſolving to put a Stop to this Miſchief, caus'd ſeveral ſtrong Houſes, in the Nature of Inns, to be built along the ſtrait way, at certain Diſtances from one another, with Men to defend them, and ſecure Travellers. Theſe being kept up, and much frequented, many of them by degrees grew up to be Cities, and Towns of Note, as they continue to this Day, *Kabul* being their *Metropolis*. This gives its Name to one Sort of that Medicinal Fruit, they call *Mirabolans*, to which the *Arabs* and *Perſians* give one general Name of *Alilah*, and

Mirabolans.

and the Gentiles of *India* corruptly as they do by other Names, *Arare*. Thus they say *Alilah Zard*, yellow *Mirabolans*, *Alilah Kabuly*, *Mirabolans* of *Kabul*, which our Physicians also call *Kebulos*. Dr. *Garcia Dorta*, treated sufficiently of these, and the rest; but was not acquainted with a wonderful large Sort of these *Kebulos*, which I have seen; for I saw a *Mirabolan* that weigh'd Sixteen Ounces, in the Hands of an Idolater Merchant, whose Name was *Ioghea Bangasaly*, and another weighing Twelve Ounces in the Hands of a *Portuguese* Gentleman; differing in nothing from the common *Kebulos*, but in Magnitude. They would have made me believe, that these extraordinary large ones had such a laxative Faculty, that only holding of them some time in the Hand would give a Stool. I try'd and found it to be false; but was satisfy'd that an Infusion, or Decoction of it, was loosening, and very good against Fevers, and bloody Fluxes; and thus much as to the *Kebulos*. The River *Behat*, one of the Five that compose the *Indus*, of which we shall speak elsewhere has its Rise near *Kabul*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Homay *Wife to* Ardxir, *and Queen of* Perſia, *after her Huſbands Death is deliver'd of a Son, who is caſt into a River, and comes afterwards to be King.*

Ardxir being dead, Queen *Homay*, his Wife, took the Government upon her, being with Child, as has been ſaid. Five Months after ſhe was deliver'd of a moſt beautiful Son. Aſtrologers being call'd to calculate his Nativity; they all agreed, that Child would be Father of one, that would occaſion mighty Calamities in that Kingdom. Many were of Opinion he ſhould be kill'd; but natural Affection prevailing, the Mother would not conſent, and caus'd a wooden Cheſt to be made, into which ſhe put a ſmall Cradle, with the Child, and ſeveral Jewels of Value, that if any poor Perſon ſhould happen to find the Infant, he might have wherewithal to maintain him, and thus was he caſt into the River *Jehun*, whoſe rapid Stream ſoon carry'd him very far off, and he was left a ground in a Place, where a Poor Man was waſhing Linnen on the Bank, for in the Eaſtern Parts the Men follow that Buſineſs, and are call'd *Maynotos*. This Man ſeeing the Cheſt in the Water, and wondring what it might be, drew out, and open'd it, where he found that beautiful Infant, with the Jewels that had been laid by him. His Beauty and Wealth made the Waſherman ſenſible, that the Parents muſt be

Queen Homay *governs.*

Her Son expos'd on the River Jehun.

be great. The Child being carry'd home, was carefully educated by his Wife, and call'd *Darab*, a Name compounded from the Cheſt, and the River he was found in, for *Dar* the *Perſian* Tongue ſignifies a Plank, or Piece of Timber, and *Ab*, Water, ſo the Two Words put together made *Darab*, denoting his being found in a Cheſt in the Water; and this is he, whom we, after the *Latins*, call *Darius*. *Darab* being grown up, the Waſherman would have put him to ſome ordinary Trade he ſhould fancy; but acquainting him with his Deſign, he was much offended, as having an Averſion to ſuch mean Imployments, and wholly inclin'd to the Exerciſe of Arms. The good Man being acquainted with his Humour, ſet him out the beſt he could, and ſent him to ſeek his Fortune. Queen *Homay* was at that time, raiſing a mighty Army, to be ſent againſt *Rumeſtam*. *Darab* liſted himſelf in it, and perform'd ſuch Feats upon all occaſions, that nothing was ſo much talk'd of as his Actions. That War being ended, the Army return'd, and the General giving Queen *Homay* an Account of his Succeſs, highly extoll'd the Bravery of a particular new rais'd Soldier. The Queen deſir'd to ſee him, and being brought before her, ask'd his Name, Parents, and Country. He told her his Name was *Darab*, and that he knew no Parents he had, but a poor Waſherman and his Wife, farther adding, how he came to be ſo call'd, and the manner of his finding, as they had inform'd him. By this he was diſcover'd to be her Son, and farther Enquiry being made, ſhe reſign'd up the Kingdom to him, after having govern'd it above Thirty Two Years.

Taken up, and call'd Darab.

Darab *is* Darius.

His mighty firſt Exploits.

Is known, and enthron'd.

Homay

Homay founded the City of *Gerbatkon*, and erected a Thousand Pyramids of a wonderful Structure, throughout *Persia*, which *Alexander* the Great afterwards caus'd to be thrown down.

Chap. XX.

Of Darab Kebar, *the Seventeenth King of* Persia, *he makes War on* Phaylacus, *or* Philip *of* Macedon, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

Darab the Son of *Homay*, enter'd upon the Government of *Persia*, with the general Applause, and Approbation of the whole Kingdom, on Account of the mighty Hopes conceiv'd of him, which prov'd not abortive, for he excell'd many of his Predecessors, that were reckned among the best, in Goodness, and Wisdom; and as such was both fear'd, and belov'd, as well by his own People, as by the neighbouring Princes; excepting *Phaylacus* King of *Yunon*, that is, *Philip* King of *Macedon*, Father to *Alexander* the Great, who growing haughty with the Victories he had obtain'd in *Greece*, refus'd to pay the Tribute his Predecessors had, for many Years past been under to the Kings of *Persia*, and then made War on *Darab*, who overthrew him first by his Generals, and then in Person, so that *Phaylacus* fled into a Fortress, where he besieg'd him. A Treaty was set on foot, and at length concluded, by which *Phaylacus*, and his Successors were oblig'd to pay *Darab*, and his, Forty Thousand Pieces of Gold Yearly.

This Darab *is* Darius.

Philip *of* Macedon *wars on him, is routed.*

Peace concluded.

Yearly. *Darab* demanded of *Phaylacus* a very beautiful Daughter he had, for his Wife, which was granted, and he carry'd her home, but soon after put her away, because she had a stinking Breath. About this time *Karimah*, Wife to *Phaylacus*, or as we call her *Olympias*, prov'd with Child, but not by her Husband, as is reported, and was deliver'd of a Son, call'd *Ascander*, that is, *Alexander*. *Darab* having put an End to this War, return'd into *Persia*, where he soon after dy'd, when he had reign'd 4 Years, leaving the Kingdom to his Son *Darab*, the Second.

Birth of Alexander the Great.

Chap. XXI.

Of Darab Seguer, *or* Kucheck, *that is*, Darius *the Little, Eighteenth King of* Persia; Ascander, *or* Alexander *the Great, invades his Dominions, defeats him, and he is murder'd by his own Subjects.*

Darab's ill Qualities.

Darab the Little, or the Second, Son to *Darab* the 1st, succeeded his Father in the Throne of *Persia*. He was viciously inclin'd, discourteous, surly in his Answers, deform'd, and of a frightful Aspect, for which ill Qualities he was as much hated by his own People, and Strangers, as his Father had been belov'd. The *Persians* took such a Dislike to him, that they resolv'd to submit themselves to *Ascander*, that is *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, to whom all the *Wazirs*, or *Viziers*, unanimously sent Letters, inviting him to raise the greatest Army he could,

and

and enter *Persia*, they being agreed to receive him for their Soveraign; and the better to conceal the Practice, they advis'd him, to begin the Breach, by refusing to pay the Forty Thousand Pieces of Gold agreed upon between his Father, and *Darab* the Great. *Ascander*, who was of a martial Disposition, laying hold of so favourable an Opportunity as was offer'd him, took their Advice, and with-held the Tribute. *Darab* sent an Embassador to demand it, to whom *Ascander* made Answer, that he was dead, who us'd to pay Tribute. *Darab* sent a second Embassy, and with it a Huckle Bone, and a Shepherds Hook, a Sack full of the Seed call'd *Sesamum*, and a Chest of Mony. What these Things meant is variously interpreted by the *Persian* Writers, the greater Number agree, that the Two first denoted his being a mere Boy, unsettled, and void of Judgment, from Children's playing with Huckle Bones, and the wandring Life of Shepherds; the Sack of *Sesamum*, which is a very small Seed, signify'd the innumerable Multitude of Men he had in his Dominions; and the Mony shew'd the vast Quantity of Gold, and Silver he was Master of. Thus all together imply'd that he plainly discover'd his youthful Folly, by presuming so rashly to provoke a Monarch that had such Numbers of Men, and so much Plenty of Mony, when his own Power was so inconsiderable. For it ever was, and still is much practis'd among the Eastern Nations, to express themselves by Figures, and Comparisons. *Alexander* had taken the Field, when this Embassy reach'd him, having an Army not numerous, but compos'd of brave Troops, and turning all those Things *Darius*

Alexander *invited by the* Persians.

Refuses to pay Tribute.

Persian *Embassy.*

Alexander *enters* Asia.

sent him, to such a Signification as foreboded his Success, he march'd out of *Greece*, and enter'd *Asia*, without any considerable Opposition.

Builds Alexandria. In *Egypt* he pitch'd upon a convenient Harbour, on which he founded a City, from his Name call'd *Ascandria*, which is, *Alexandria*, and took *Mezere*, that is, *Grand Cairo*. This City whose Fame has spread throughout the World, is now so well known, that nothing new can be said of it, unless in Relation to its Name. It ever, and still is the Capital of all *Egypt*, as appears by the Tradition, and Writings of the Natives. It was the *Memphis* of the *Latins*, and the *Mesrahim* of the *Jews*, from which last, the *Arabs*, *Persians*, and *Turks*, by Corruption deriv'd *Mezere*. There hapned the Tryal of *Joseph*'s Chastity, the whole Distance from the first Situation being but one Mile, where are still to be seen the Ruins of the Granaries, he caus'd to be built, to provide against the ensuing Famine. There the Prophet *Moses* was born, and cast into the River, which washes the Walls of the City; and this is so well confirm'd by the Resemblance of the Names, that there seems to be no Room left to doubt of it. Concerning the Name of *Cairo*, usually given it among us, *Mirkond*, in the Fourth Part of his History, speaking of the *Califs* of *Cairo*, which he, after many Revolutions, brings under the Dominion of a Prince call'd *Mohez*, under the Name of *Mezere*, tells us what follows. That this *Mohez* sent from *Damascus*, a Slave of his, who was a Renowned General, and Conqueror, by Name *Jawar Kadem*, to govern that City, which was brought under his Dominion;

Grand Cairo.

minion; and he to secure it, erected close by a Fortress, which he nam'd *Kayreh*, in Honour of one of his Master's Wives, so call'd. This new Structure, in Process of time increas'd to such a Degree, that the Name of *Mezere* was almost forgot, and the Place is scarce known by any other than the new one of *Kayreh*, especially in *Europe*, where with some little Corruption, we pronounce it *Cairo*. The same Prince also possess'd himself of *Scham*, and *Dimesk*, which is almost the same thing, being the City *Damascus*, and *Scham*, all the Country from the River *Euphrates* to that City inclusive. They also call *Damascus*, *Behest Duniah*, that is, the Paradise of the World, and this Distinction may serve for other Places where it is mention'd in this History.

Damascus and Scham.

Ascander mov'd thence into *Armenia*, where he receiv'd a Letter from *Darab*, conjuring him to desist from that Enterprize, and intermixing Threats, and fair Words to dissuade him. He answer'd, that Crowns and Kingdoms, did not belong to those Men who possess'd them, but to God, who gave, and took them away, as he thought fit. Thus he dismiss'd the Embassadors, march'd after them, and in the Province of *Aderbaion*, fought one of *Darab*'s Generals, that met him, whom he overthrew, and without losing any time, advanc'd into the Country of *Gueylon*.

Darius's *Letter*, and Alexander's *Answer*.

Gueylon was formerly a large Kingdom, and is now reduc'd into a Province, divided into Five Governments, all of them subject to the Crown of *Persia*. The *Persians* give it the general Name of *Gueylan*, or *Guylon*, and the Natives call it *End safet*, signifying, white

Gueylon *Kingdom*.

India, because it is pleasant, and delightful, to distinguish it from the true *India*, properly so call'd, and which they reckon dismal; and therefore they metaphorically give the Name of *India* to any Place they would represent, wretched, and horrid, as our Poets do by *Tartary*. Of the Five Governments the Province of *Gueylon* is divided into, the First is call'd *Raxt*, a Name taken from its chief City, which in the Year 1595, when I writ this, was in the Possession of *Iamshced Khan*. The Second takes its Name from the City *Gaxhar*, then govern'd by *Syavex*, both of them Princes of great Note. The Third is call'd *Laion*, like its Metropolis, and in it is the famous City *Delmon*, or *Delimon*, so much spoken of, in the Fourth and Fifth Books of *Mirkond*. This was govern'd by *Khan Hamed*, whom the *Turk Selim* took, when he reduc'd the City *Tauris*, and kept him at *Bagdat*. The Fourth Government call'd *Langor Kanon*, as well as its Capital City, was at that time under *Amir Amza Khan*, a Man of great Worth, and Valour, who had Eleven Brothers with him, all of them famous Men. The Fifth Government, for the same Reason as the others call'd *Kudam*, was in the Hands of *Komron Mirzah*. Next follows *Mazandaron*, already spoken of, which having combin'd with some Parts of this Province of *Gueylon*, in the Year 1593, rebell'd against *Scha Abas*, King of *Persia*, who to suppress them, march'd thither hastily, with Twenty Thousand Horse, in the Year 1594, and not knowing how to get over a broad and rapid River, because it was not fordable, and the Boats were all carry'd away, to prevent Delays, and giving

Boldness of Scha Abas *King of* Persia.

the

the Enemy time to go strong, he clapp'd Spurs to his Horse, and leap'd in, which he had no sooner done, but all his Men follow'd him; yet it had like to have cost him dear, for he was very near being lost himself, and Four Thousand of his Men were drown'd. The rest got over safe with him, and reduc'd the Country; tho' with too much Severity, for he is said to have made that speedy Conquest, with the Slaughter of above Sixty Thousand Men. He did this in Imitation of his Grandfather, *Scha Ishmael Suphy*, or *Sophy*, who marching to *Bagdat*, with Sixteen Thousand Horse, and not being able to ford the River it stands on, because much swell'd at that time, did the same, and lost Twelve Thousand Men, and falling unexpected on the City, with the Four Thousand he had left, took it. *Gueylon* lies along the *Caspian* Sea, which takes Name from it, being by the *Persians* call'd *Daria Gueylany*, that is, the Sea of *Gueylon*. It is Salt, in Shape Oval, and has no visible Communication with the Ocean. They reckon it somewhat above Three Hundred *Farsangues* in length, that is, Nine Hundred Miles, is subject to violent Storms, and bears large Vessels, but flat bottom'd, having Ports belonging to several Kingdoms, in which there is a mighty Trade. One of these is *Kefah*, a very considerable Harbour, and City, belonging to the *Tartars*. The River *Astrahan*, on which the *Muscovites* have a Town, falls into it, with others of Note. In Winter a great Part of it is froze up, and it has much Fish. Thus much may suffice, that we may return to *Ascander*, or *Alexander*.

Caspian Sea.

He departing the Province of *Gueylon*, took a Compass about by that of *Nacudumya*, where a great City presuming to oppose him, he caus'd it to be burnt down to the Ground. Thence he enter'd *Persia*, *Darab* met him with an innumerable Army, they came to a Battle, which was obstinate, and bloody; *Ascander* got the Day, and *Darab* fled, leaving behind him most of his Men dead, with all his Treasures, and his Wives, and Daughters, who were taken by *Ascander*, many of those that escap'd follow'd *Darab*, most whereof were drowned, passing a River, which being frozen over, some went foremost, to try whether it would bear, and being found sound, *Darab* cross'd it, but then the rest coming on in a Throng, it fail'd, and most of them perish'd. When *Darab* was out of his Enemies Reach, he tender'd him other Terms, offering, in case he would restore him his Wives, and Daughters, and quit his Dominions, to give him all the Revenues thereof, for some Years. Whilst these Propositions were making, he sent Embassadors to the Kings of *Maxarek*, and *India*, his Subjects, and Friends, who being inform'd of his Misfortune, soon succour'd him so powerfully, that he is said to have had a greater Army than the First. *Ascander* made a Jest of the Terms offer'd him by *Darab*, they met again, and the latter was the Second Time overthrown, who fled to a Fortress, where Two of his Favourites stabb'd him, and thinking he was dead, fled to *Ascander*'s Camp, who hearing of this Villany, march'd with all possible Speed to find out *Darab*. He found him at the last Gasp, paying him great Respect, with many Tokens of Sorrow, and abundance

Darius *defeated.*

Again.

His Death.

abundance of Tears, calling Heaven to witness that he was innocent of that Murder. *Darab* return'd him Thanks, signifying he believ'd him, and desiring he would punish the Traytors, and be pleas'd to take to Wife his Daughter *Ruxangh*, and not suffer his Dominions to fall into any other Hands. *Ascander* promis'd to perform his Request, and *Darab* dy'd, uttering many melancholy Reflections, and Sentences, concerning the Misery of human Life, and the Uncertainty of Temporal Prosperity; all which *Mirkond* sets down at large. He reign'd 14 Years. Roxana.

Chap. XXII.

Ascander, *or* Alexander *the Great, Nineteenth King of* Persia, *subdues that Kingdom, and what else hapned till his Death.*

Ascander, or *Sakandar*, so call'd by the *Persians*, *Turks*, and *Arabs*, and by another Name *Zulkarnhen*, being the same we call *Alexander* the Great, was of such a haughty Disposition, that tho' he was become Master of so considerable a Part of the World, yet he thought it all too little. He extended his Empire over all *Greece*, *Hyeraken*, *Persia*, *India*, and *Tartary*; and whereas here is frequent Mention made of *Hyeraken*. I will briefly say as much as may suffice for the better Understanding of what follows. The *Arabs* and *Persians*, assign this Name of *Hyerak* to Two Regions, and for a Boundary Hyerak Province.

between them assign, formerly the City of *Babylon*, and now that of *Bagdat*, seated not far from where the other stood. The one of them next to *Persia*, including several Kingdoms, and Principalities subject to it, and among them the Province properly call'd *Hyerak*, the Metropolis whereof, as has been already said, is the famous City of *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahon*, which Part is generally call'd *Hyerak Agemy*, that is, the *Persian Hyerak*. The other is that of *Babylon*, or *Bagdat* towards *Arabia*, all which Country it includes, as also *Egypt*, and other Provinces, and this they call *Hyerak Araby*, that is, the *Arabian Hyerak*; and to express both together, they say *Hyeraken*, that is, the Two *Hyeraks*, which short Exposition will render this Word intelligible, when it shall occur.

Alexander *not Son to* Phillip.

All the *Persian* Historians agree, that *Ascander* was not Son to *Philip*, whom they call *Phaylacus*; but that he was his Wives, and add that in the Reign of *Philip*, a Subject of his, whose Name was *Kolus*, fell in Love with the Queen, and believing the likelieſt means to enjoy her was to kill her Husband, he put it in Execution. *Ascander* came up in the midst of the Confusion, attended by *Barakus*, one of his prime Commanders, and meeting the Traytor *Kolus*, slew him, with his own Hand. Then he return'd to the Place, where his Father *Philip* was expiring, gave dismal Token of Sorrow, and Affliction. *Philip* being sensible of his Death, plac'd *Ascander* amidst all the great Men then present, desiring they would admit him for their King, as they accordingly did. Then he put him into the Hands of *Aristotle*, charging him, that as he had till then been his Instructor,

ctor, he should most carefully continue so to be for the future, directing him what course he was to follow, to govern himself and his Subjects equitably. This done he dy'd, and *Ascander* succeeded him, immediately undertaking to settle his Kingdom, which at that time, was somewhat turbulent. Having perform'd that, and subdu'd the Countries of *Magareb en yunon*, which are those of *Greece*, lying West of *Macedon*, he rais'd the best Army he was able, and relying on the Promises made him by the Grandees of *Persia*, mov'd thither, where he succeeded as has been mention'd in the foregoing Chapter. *Ascends the Throne.*

He seiz'd those that had murder'd *Darab*, whom he executed in the most rigid manner; and then as he had promis'd, marry'd his Daughter *Ruxangh*, a Name signifying, the Light that spreads from a Candle, or Flambeau. The Kingdom of *Persia* he committed to a Kinsman of *Darab*, and divided the rest into Ninety Governments, and put them under so many of his Commanders. He caus'd Three Books to be translated out of the *Persian* Tongue into *Greek*; one of them was call'd *Teb*, which treated of Physick, another nam'd *Noiun*, of Astrology, and Mathematicks, *Noiun*, signifying Stars; and a Third of Philosophy. On the River *Jehun* he founded a City, call'd *Marwoh*; another in *Korazon*, by the Name of *Herat*, and that of *Samarkand*, in *Uzbek*. Having settled the Affairs of *Persia*, he departed thence, towards the South East, travelling through uncooth, and dangerous ways, till he came into *India*. *Marries* Roxana, *and appoints Governors.* *Builds Cities.*

India having been so exactly describ'd by many, I shall give no farther Account of it, than briefly to observe, what the *Persians* and *Arabs*

India according to Persians, and Arabs.

Arabs mean, when they speak of *India*, which they express by the Word *Industan*, that is, the Region of *India*. This Country reaches from the River *Indus*, being in the Kingdom of *Sinde*, the Residence of the *Abindi*, a Nation well known, call'd in their own Tongue *Abind*, taken from the *Persian*, and signifying Water of *India*, or of the River *Indus*, from *Ab*, Water, and *Ind*, *India*. So that the Coast of *India*, begins at the End of the Kingdom of *Macron*, with the River *Indus*, which waters the Lands of the Kingdom of *Sinde*; so call'd by the Natives, from a River of the same Name, which is the greatest of Five, that compose the *Indus*. However the *Persians*, and *Arabs*, call this Kingdom *Diul*, and in *Persia*, and at *Lahor*, in the *Mogul*'s Country, they also usually call the *Indus*, *Pang Ab*, that is, Five Waters, from the Five Rivers, that meet in it. One of these, as has been said already, is *Behat*, rising near *Kabul*, towards *Persia*; a second is *Chanab*, coming from *Quexmir*, a Province Fifteen Days Journey from *Lahor*; the third *Rawy*, springs near *Lahor*, the *Mogol*'s Country, and almost the Heart, and Center of all that is call'd *India*. The others come from remoter Parts, the one being call'd *Via*, and the other *Send*, which gives Name to the Country, and Kingdom the *Portugueses* vulgarly call *Sinde*. All these Rivers, tho' their Courses differ, meet at *Bakar*, a Pass on the River *Indus*, equally distant from *Lahor*, and from the Sea. Below it is the Fort of *Seivon*, to secure the Passage of the River downwards. Lower down towards the Sea, yet far distant from it is *Tatah*, a famous City, Capital of the Kingdom of *Send*, or *Sinde*, where the *Portu-*

Indus River.

gueses

gueses drive a great Trade. Down this River, from *Lahor* runs a great number of *Kistes*, and *Chapuzes*, being large Vessels, loden with several Sorts of Commodities, great Quantities of Calicoes, of various Kinds, Sugars, Indigo, Cotton, and many other things brought from the Kingdoms of *Lahor*, *Multan*, *Agrah*, *Dely*, *Mandon*, *Sytroh*, *Utrad*, *&c.* to be Shipp'd off at *Bandel*, and thence transported to *Ormuz*, whether most of it all is convey'd in *Portuguese*, and *Mooriſh* Ships. [*Note, this was when the* Portugueſes *were Powerful in* India, *for now their Trade is inconsiderable.*]

Utrad *Kingdom it's Commodities.*

From the Kingdom, and City of *Utrad*, last nam'd, some things are brought which I will mention, because I think them singular, tho' they do not belong to this History. They bring from thence *Sal Gem*, which is found in that same Country, and the Natives call it *Geukar*, from *Kar*, *Salt*, and *Geu*, *Barley*, because it is made of the Dew that falls, and congeals in the Fields of Barley; and we to imitate them, take the Words by halves, and say *Salgeu*, but more corruptly *Sal Gem*. Hence also comes the Spikenard, in the *Arabick*, and *Persian* call'd *Sembul Tib*, the sweet scented Stem; and both those Nations call the Celestial Sign of *Virgo* by this Name of *Sambul*. From *Utrad* also comes the most excellent *Ingo*, which our Physicians call *Assa fetida*. This Gum is mostly found in Three Places, in *Utrad*, as has been said, and that we have thence is very pure, and not so bitter; the second Sort is found at *Duzgun*, in *Persia*, a Town near *Laston*, between *Komron*, and *Lar*, a City about 30 Leagues from *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*; the Third is brought from the Province of *Karazon*, in *Persia*.

Assa fetida.

Persia. There are Two Sorts of Plants that produce this Gum; the one is a tall Shrub, with small Leaves, like those of Rue, and this produces but little; the other is a Root like a Raddish, which shoots out large, and tender Stalks, and the Leaf is very like that of the Infernal Fig-tree. In some Places they Plant them, in others they grow wild, and delight in Mountains, and uncooth Places. Most of it is gather'd about the end of Autumn, for they make Incisions in the Plants, towards the end of the Summer, and then they begin to Weep. In the Year 1596, I had Four Roots at *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, which I had caus'd to be brought me from *Duzgun*, very like the great *Ynnames*, that come from *Guinea*, and of so strong a scent, that there was no enduring the House for them, and tho' I kept them Eight Months, they never perish'd, nor lost their Scent. The *Arabs* call this Gum by several Names, the chief whereof are, *Haltit*, *Samaktre*, *Hhilhheis*, *Zaefa*; the *Persians* name it *Inghza*; the *Baneans* of *Cambaya* call that of *Utrad*, *Inguh*, and that of *Persia*, *Ingara*, I have said so much, because it is so highly in Request in the Eastern Parts.

Cache *Kingdom.* Next follows the Kingdom of *Cache*, which besides Calicoes, and much Oyl made of the Seed call'd *Semanum*, and others, breeds many Horses, from the Name of the Country call'd *Kachis*, and these very well supply the want of *Spanish*, *Arabian*, and *Persian* Horses. Some Ports, and Lands, lye betwixt this Kingdom, and that of *Cambaya*, which is not large, but extraordinary Wealthy, tho' it has no Mines of Gold, or Silver. There are Three Sorts of Plants that enrich this Kingdom,

dom, being the Cotton, Indigo, and *Asion*, which is the *Opium* of the *Greeks*, and the *Arabs*, for want of the Letter *p*, insert the *f*, making *Osion*, by the Vulgar corruptly *Asion*. Those who have not seen it, can scarce believe, what immense Quantities of these Three Sorts are continually exported from that Kingdom. Besides, it produces much Sugar, and curious Stones as Christal, Alabaster, Porphiry, Jasper, Lake, Agats, and others, which the Natives cut very curiously; nor do they want Diamonds, Cats Eyes, and many other Commodities of Value. This Kingdom is by the Natives call'd *Guzaratte*, and the *Portugueses* give it the Name of *Cambaya*, from a City in it, where they drove a great Trade, tho' the Capital of it is one up the Inland call'd *Hamet Ewat*, that is, *Homed's City*, that being the Name of the King that founded it. The Inhabitants of it are divided into *Mahometans* and *Gentiles*, but above the Two Thirds one of the latter, yet not all of one Opinion, as I shall soon show; tho' almost all of them being *Pythagoreans*, hold the Immortality of the Soul, and that it receives Reward, or Punishment in it's Metempsychosis, or Transmigration; for they say, that when a Man dies, according as he liv'd virtuously, or wickedly, the Soul passes from his Body into another good, or bad Creature, and from that afterwards either mends, or grows worse, and so on *ad infinitum*. This is the Reason why they Worship Cows, and they were so much recommended to them by *Remah*, a Law-giver of theirs, whom they honour as a God, because they are tame, useful, well kept Creatures, and proper, as they think, to receive the Souls of the

Cambaya Kingdom.

Transmigration of Souls.

Cows Worshipp'd, and why.

the Just; besides many more Absurdities they hold. Hence it is they use so much Charity towards all Beasts, and Birds, which they will neither eat, nor kill, alledging the Souls of humane Creatures are Transmigrated into them. So prevalent is this Notion, that in the City of *Cambanet*, which the *Portugueses* call *Cambayet*, and is the same as *Cambaya*, they have a publick Hospital, in which they Cure all sorts of sick Creatures, tho' at the same time they take little, or no Care at all of sick Men, or of the Poor, that beg for Relief, to whom their Answer is, God did you Harm, and we too. Thus they spend vast Sums of Mony on Follies, and Superstitions, as hap'ned whilst I was in *India*, in the City of *Diu*, where a Pagan *Banean* Merchant spent Ten, or Twelve Thousand Ducats, to celebrate the Wedding of a Cow and a Bull, I will not say Thirty Thousand, as was then affirm'd, because I will be within Compass. This was done in the City of *Diu*, on the Coast of the Kingdon of *Cambaya*, where the *Portugueses* have that famous Fortress, so much talk'd of for the mighty Victories they obtain'd in it, at several times, and since I have nam'd it, and it will not be straying from the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, I will observe one Curiosity concerning it, which few have taken Notice of. The Name, the Natives and other *Indians* give to this City is *Dive*, pronouncing the e at the end, extraordinary soft; and this is no proper Name, but generical, signifying an Island, as they say *Ange Dive*, the five Islands; *Naledive*, which the *Portugueses*, pronounce *Maldiva*, Four Islands, *Selandive*, the Island *Ceylon*; so that *Diu*, is call'd *Dive*, the Island, signifying

Hospital for Beasts.

Wedding of a Cow, and a Bull.

Diu *Town.*

signifying it's Preheminence above all others; and when in Speaking, or Writing, they would distinguish it from others, they call it *Dive Nowlaká*, that is the Island of the Nine Millions. The Reason they give for it is, because the Daughter of the Lord of the Island formerly begging a Boon of her Father, he granted her all the Income of the Custom House for that Day, and it amounted to Nine *Leques*, being Nine Millions of that Country Mony, whence it had the Name of *Dive Nowlaká*; thus we see that *Diu*, or *Dive* signifies an Island, and is no proper Name. There is great variety of Sects among the People of *Cambaya*, insomuch, that it is rare to find a House whose Inhabitants are all of one Opinion, without differing in some Point. Some of them eat Flesh, and others not; some will eat, but not kill it, and others both kill, and eat it. Some may kill, and eat certain Creatures, but neither eat, nor kill others; some there are that eat no Flesh, but do Fish. Many live upon Milk, and Herbs; others refuse to eat red Blites, a very common Herb in *India*, alledging there is Blood in them, which they are forbidden to shed. They will not eat any *Portuguese* Preserves, besides other Reasons, because the Sugar is clarify'd with Eggs. Some eat at certain Hours out of Superstition, and others at quite different, as *Cambayans*, who must not eat after the Sun is set; and what is very remarkable, they are most strict Observers, of their Diabolical Ceremonies, and the most abstemious of any People in the Universe, and I have heard of, and seen incredible Instances of their Fasts, which I purposely omit, not to exceed my intended Brevity, but I shall

Various Opinions of Cambayans

I shall hint something, as occasion offers. Baneans. Before I pass from *Cambaya* to any other of the Kingdoms comprehended under the general Name of *India*. I must observe, that all the Natives of this *Guzaratte* Kingdom, are call'd by the general Name of *Vanean*, and the *Portugueses* corruptly pronounce *Baneans*, whereof there is a great Number of Families, Races, and distinct Sects, and among them Three Principal above all the rest, and these are call'd *Jon Kah*, *Mexery*, and *Baman*. The Difference between the Two first is, that those of *Mexery* have Idols, and worship them, which those of *Jon Kah* do not, but acknowledge one only God of Heaven, whom they adore, and acknowledge as Soveraign Beginning, and End of all Things; however it is lawful for them to intermarry with one another, and to eat together, their Customs being the same in all other Respects. The other Race *Baman*, whom we call *Brachmans*, are those who serve in the Temples of the Idols, marry People, and perform the like Functions. Some of these live upon Charity, but may not eat, or drink in the Houses of the *Baneans*. These have a large City, call'd *Byzanlagar*, in the midst of the Kingdom of *Guzaratte*, with other Towns about it, wherein are about Thirty Thousand Houses of them, a People formerly poor, and despising the World; at present they live upon Tillage, and breeding of Cattel, and some of them are very rich. These generally marry but one Wife, but may if they please, have two, which is not allow'd the *Baneans*, and if the Wife dies, they may not take another; but when the Husband dies, the Wife may marry again.

Three chief Sects.

Brachmans.

The

The contrary is us'd in the other Races, where the Wife dying, the Man may marry again; but if the Woman is once a Widow, she must ever continue so. None of these Three Races may kill, or shed Blood. It is not without some Cause that I have said so much as to this particular, for else I should be oblig'd to do it hereafter, and it is better now.

Dekan is the next Kingdom that follows, its Capital is *Hamedanager*, the Lands of *Cole*, and *Choute*, and others of considerable Extent, lying between. In this Kingdom is the City of *Chaul*, belonging to the *Portugueses*. To the Southward of this lies the Kingdom of *Cunkan*, whereof *Bizapor*, or *Vizapor* is the Metropolis, and within it is comprehended the Island and City of *Goa*, subject to the *Portugueses*. Then goes on *Barcelor*, and the Country of *Canara*, vulgarly call'd the Kingdom of the *Chatims*, that is, of Merchants, because it is a sort of Common-wealth, govern'd by the Citizens, who are all Merchants, and in *India* a Merchant is call'd *Chatim*, and thence the Kingdom of *Chatims*, which is no Name of Contempt, but reckned honourable. The *Persians* call it *Saudagar*; the *Malayans*, *Quelin*; the *Chineses*, *Queve*. Thus the Name of *India*, or *Indostan*, among the *Persians* and *Arabs*, is reckned to extend to this Kingdom, and speaking of the Countries which follow farther on, commonly included by us under the Name of *India*, they call them by their particular Names, extending the general Name no farther than the Sea Coast; tho' there are many large Kingdoms up the Inland, comprehended in *India*, as may be seen in those who

Dekan Kingdom.

Cunkan.

Canara.

undertake to describe it, that being foreign from my purpose.

For, *or* Porus *King of* India.

At the Time when *Alexander* enter'd *India*, the chief and mightiest of the Kings then reigning in it, was *For*. Our Histories, it is well known, call him *Porus*; but as has been said, the *Arabs* having no P in their Alphabet, instead of it substitute F, and I, to avoid Confusion, write it as the *Persians* do. But if it should be ask'd, why the *Persians* follow the *Arabs* in this particular, since the Letter P is us'd in *Persia*; I answer, that when the *Arabs* enter'd, and subdu'd *Persia*, they brought in their own Characters, and way of writing, which the *Persians* so intirely apply'd themselves to, that their own was totally lost, and forgotten; so that there is not at present one Man in *Persia*, that understands their Antient Letters; for having often seen some Plates of Metal, with antient Inscriptions on them, I have made Enquiry after the meaning of them, and Men well vers'd in their Antiquities, and very studious have told me, that was *Forz kadin*, after the old Fashion, and therefore I should find no Man that understood it. So that the *Persian* Alphabet, and manner of writing is intirely lost, and extinct; and they have taken up the *Arabick* Letters, and from that Nation they have also taken many Words, and Expressions, which they pronounce like 'em, in *Arabick*, especially as to natural Things. Nor is this any Wonder, considering that in *Spain*, and more particularly in *Portugal*, by their long Continuance among us, they have left many Words of theirs, such as, *Camiza*, a Shirt; *Arros*, Rice; *Azeyte*, Oyl; *Azeytuna*, an Olive; *Romam*, a Pomgranate; *Tamara*,

Persian *Character lost*.

mara, a Tamarind; *Aselgas*, white *Beets*; *Azucar*, Sugar; *Alfayate*, a Taylor; *Alveytar*, a Farrier; *Aldea*, a Village, and many more.

To return to *Ascander*, or *Alexander*, having enter'd *India*, and being inform'd of *For*'s mighty Power, he writ to acquaint him with his coming, and to perswade him peaceably to submit. *For*, or *Porus* met him with his Army, was overthrown, and fled; yet rais'd new Forces, and ask'd Succours of all those that were able to send any. Having thus gather'd considerable Forces, he march'd again towards *Alexander*, with whom he had several Rancounters, which took up Twenty Days, with much Slaughter of the *Greeks*. *Ascander* was at a Nonplus, and apprehensive of a greater Loss, and thinking that the safest way, challeng'd *For* to single Combat, which he accepted of. Being come together, with equal Resolution, and Weapons, in the Heat of the Fight, a loud Cry was rais'd in *For*'s own Tent, which made him forget himself, and look back, to see what it might mean; *Ascander* observing that favourable Opportunity, would not let it slip; but gave him such a Wound, that he dropt down dead. No sooner was this known, than all the *Indians* fled several ways, so that in a short time, there was not one to be seen in the Field, and *Ascander* had an open Passage into those Countries. He resolv'd to go on, as far as *Brahema*, where I said before the *Bamans*, or *Brachmans* resided, being Men that made no Account of this World, and he would go thither, only to see and converse with them. They hearing of it, sent to desire he would save himself that Trouble, since he could neither get Gold, nor Silver,

For, or Porus, *routed by* Alexander.

And kill'd.

3425

nor extend his Dominions by it. This rather serv'd to make *Alexander* the more eager, who causing his Army to incamp, order'd they should lie still till he return'd, and taking some particular Friends along with him, went away to see the *Brachmans*. Being come to the Place, he stood amaz'd at their Course of Life, Austerity, and Poverty; for they living strictly up to the Law of Nature, fed upon nothing but Herbs, and Fruit, were clad in Skins of Beasts, and spent their time in commendable Employments. He discours'd them, and being pleas'd with their way of living, offer'd them his Friendship. They desir'd him to turn back, without proceeding any farther; but that he told them he could not do, because he was sent. Having taken his Leave, he return'd to the Camp, to prosecute his Conquests. It has been declar'd before, that *Bizanlagar*, which is the Province of *Brahema*, is in the Kingdom of *Guzaratte*, or *Cambaya*, and thither *Tarik Mirkond* says *Alexander* went, and I believe those People from it had the Name of *Brachmans*, as they are call'd in writing, and by us; whether it was the proper Denomination of those People, or differently and corruptly pronounc'd by other Nations, as frequently happens, and the *Portugueses* now call them *Bramanes*, tho' they name themselves *Baman*, or *Bamang*. Nor is there any doubt to be made, but that these are the same, for tho' in Process of time, they may have vary'd something in their Ceremonies, and manner of living, however these are still the Priests, or Ministers of the Idol Temples, and in them is the Spiritual Government of the Gentils; and even some Kingdoms are go-

Alexander *visits the* Brachmans.

Who they were, or are.

vern'd

vern'd in Temporals by them, as thoſe of *Cochim*, and *Porkah*, where none can be Kings but *Bamans*, or *Brachmans*. Enough has been writ of theſe Men, their Manners, and the Superſtition of a white Thread they wear, by way of Diſtinction, about their Neck, next the Skin, and then croſſing from the left Shoulder to the right ſide, and therefore I ſhall not ſpeak of theſe Things.

Of the Joguys, and Kalandars.

However, I will ſay ſomething of another Sort of Vagabonds there is in the Eaſt, commonly call'd *Joguys*, and by the *Portugueſes*, *Jogues*, being like Pilgrims, who ſtroul from one Kingdom to another, upon long Pilgrimages. According to antient Cuſtom, as many of theſe, as poſſibly can, at a certain time of the Year, repair to the upper *Cananor*, a Town on the *Indian* Coaſt of *Malabar*, near to a *Portugueſe* Fort, which took Name from it; and there among themſelves, they chuſe a Chief, as it were a High Prieſt, to whom they are all ſubject in Spirituals. After the Election they all return to their Pilgrimages, travelling through ſeveral Countries, exerciſing themſelves, as they ſay, in Virtue, good Works, and an Exemplar Life. There are Two Sorts of theſe People, the one *Mahometans*, call'd *Kalandars*, the other Heathens, being the *Joguis*; both of them wander about, live poorly upon Charity, and are ill clad; but in all Places they paſs thro' they are free, priviledg'd, reſpected, and look'd upon as good Livers, as the Moral Philoſophers were formerly. Some of theſe are acquainted with Stones, Herbs, and other Simples of ſingular Virtue, and Efficacy, which they have learnt by ranging up and down, and ſcarce any of them are free from

much Fraud, and Knavery. The *Mahometan Kalandars*, travelling through colder Countries, especially *Persia*, and *Turkestam*, are better clad, wearing Felts, Sheep Skins, great Caps of the same, Stockins, and Shoes, or Buskins. They have something of Jesters, delight in carrying a green Nosegay, or a Flower, or the like, in their Hands, which they offer to any well dress'd Man they meet, reciting, at the same time a few *Persian*, or *Arabick* Verses, containing some Sentence, to incline him to give them an Alms; and tho' they range many Countries, they live for the most Part in Towns. The *Joguys*, who are Gentiles, wander in hotter Countries, wear less Cloaths, are fonder of the open Fields, and Deserts, practice more Austerity, value themselves upon leading a penitent Life, and in reality do it, in their way, to such a Degree, that it is amazing; for some of them live several Days successively without eating, or drinking the least Bit, or Drop, which is very frequent among the *Indian* Gentiles, who do wonders of this Sort. I saw one, whose Name was *Ralu*, that liv'd Ten Days, and Nights in a Cave on a Mountain, and because I admir'd it, they laugh'd at me, affirming there were others, who fasted much longer, which I afterwards found to be true. Tho' many Persons at several times, and in different Places, all agreeing in the same thing assur'd me, that a Woman was brought before the Great *Mogol*, who had liv'd Four Months, without eating, or drinking; yet I dare not vouch for the Truth of it, as being a thing incredible; and yet some of them I had it from were very reputable. When I came from

Wonderful Fasting.

A Fable.

from the Island of *Ceylon*, for *Goa*, in the Year 1588, with one that was presently after Viceroy of *India*, our Fleet came to an Anchor off of *Barcelor*, being desirous to see that *Portuguese* Fortress, and the City of the same Name, which they call, the upper *Barcelor*, Capital of *Canara*, and the Kingdom of the *Chatins*, above spoken of, I got leave to go a shore, and having travell'd about a League and a half, along a pleasant Road, for so far the City is from the Fortress, and enter'd, I found it of a considerable Extent, enclos'd with a Ditch, and Wall, in which there are Loopholes; being conveniently seated, on the Bank of a large, and delightful River. The Houses well built of Timber, the Temples, which are numerous, of Lime, and Stone, and in the midst of the City, one larger than all the rest, square, after the manner of our Cloisters, with a sort of Chappel, just within the door, made in the Nature of a Carriage, and an Idol in it. All the rest about the Square, being Galleries, and Dormitories, or Cels to lodge the *Bamans*, or *Brachmans*, who are the Priests, or Ministers belonging to the Temple. Without the Gate, and opposite to it, 6 or 7 Paces distant, on a plain Spot, stood a square Pedestal of Lime, and Stone, about 30 spaces high, full of Niches on all the 4 sides, and these serve for Candlesticks, where there are Lights at Night, and on the Top was a curious large Candlestick of Metal. I enter'd the City as soon as it was Day, and at the Foot of that Pedestal or Pile, saw a *Joguy*, of a large Stature, brawny, black, and deformed, sitting on the Ground, without any Cloaths, or Covering, but a little

Barcelor City.

A Temple.

dirty Clout, which cover'd his Nakedness. In his Hand he held a wooden Fork, about two Spans long, on which he sometimes rested one Arm, then the other, and then his Legs, having Ashes all round him, some of which he took every now and then, and strew'd on his Head. This was at the latter End of *March*, when the Heat is very violent in those Countries. Having made this Observation, I went on to see the rest of the City, and returning that way at noon, found the *Joguy* sitting in the scorching Sun as patiently, and sedately, as if he had been in the coolest, and most delightful House. So he continu'd till the Evening, when after Sun set, others came to him, to whom he stood up, and they having brought Boughs, lighted a Fire, and made new Ashes, some of which they strew'd on their Heads, turning their Faces towards the West; then after a Prayer, they parted, and every one went his way, and he return'd to his Post. I enquir'd, whether he had been long there, and they told me several Years, and that neither Heat nor Rain drove him away, nor did he ever stir, unless compell'd by some Necessity of Nature. I have mention'd this I saw my self as an Instance, to show what those Wretches endure, and how much Pains they take to go to the Devil, and how little we do to gain Heaven. Such sort of Men are all the *Joguys*, of whom I have said so much, on Account of what this History mentions of the Austerity of the Inhabitants of *Brahema*.

Strange Penitent Joguy.

Ascander proceeded on to the remotest Parts of *India*, where he met with a mighty King, call'd *Keyd*, who was 300 Years of Age. They convers'd together, with much

Indian King, 300 Years old.

Show

Show of Kindness, and Affection; and *Keyd* having taken his Leave, *Ascander* travell'd Eastward, till he came to *China*, where *Kha Khon* King of that Country came out to meet him, and they agreed peaceably, contracting Amity; in Token whereof *Kha Khon* gave him a Thousand *Mans* of the purest Gold, which amounts to 4000 Marks, each *Man* being little above 4 Marks of Gold, and a Mark is 8 Ounces; 1000 Pieces of rich white Silk; 5000 Garments of *Diba*, an extraordinary rich Sort of Silk, much worn in the East, by Kings and Princes, 100 Swords, the Hilts of Gold, set with Stones; 100 good Horses, richly accoutred; 100000 Ounces of Musk; 200 Pounds of *Calamba* rich Wood, and a great Quantity of the finest and most valuable Furs. It seems ridiculous, and groundless, to say, that *Alexander* went as far as *China*, as *Mirkond* tells us, when it is doubtful, whether ever he reach'd *India*, therefore to give the better Colour to what I have writ, delivering it, as I found it; the Reader is to observe, that it is very usual with the *Persians* to give the Name of *Chin*, to all that is beyond the Provinces of *Maurenahar*, being all *Tartary*, *Kethao Kothan*, by us commonly call'd *Cathay*, *China*, and other Countries lying that way. Thus they call the King, or Soveraign of *Tartary*, King of *China*, making this a general Name, as we do that of *India*, comprizing in it all the East Countries, because the true *India* lies that way; so that as we by the Name of *India*, denote all that lies Eastward of it, in the same manner the *Persians*, because *China* lies East of them, include under that Denomination all the remote Regions bearing that way from

Alexander in China.

Rich Presents made him by that King.

Rhubarb *the best.*

from them. This is the Reason why they call Rhubarb, *Revand Chin*, that is Rhubarb of *China*, because the best and greatest Quantity of it, comes from *Gax Khar*, or *Kax Ghar*, a City on the Frontiers of *Uzbek*, near *Kethao Ketham*, or *Cathay*; thus distinguishing it from another Sort growing in *Persia*, and *Karason*, which they name *Revand Aspey*, that is Horse Rhubarb, because us'd for curing of Horses. The *Portugueses* also bring it from *China*, of which I have seen some good, but not so excellent as the other, nor will it keep so long. Some have pretended, that the Reason why this is not so good, or lasting as the other, which comes by the way of *Persia*, is because the *Chineses* boil it, to make use of the Decoction; but they are deceiv'd, for in Reality, it is not so good of it self; besides that it is brought by Sea from *China* to *India*, which Country, especially those Parts inhabited by the *Portugueses* are extremely damp, and if it is kept there but never so short a time, being of Necessity to be carry'd by Sea again, it must decay, and lose much of its Virtue. The Rhubarb Plant, is like the Turnip, consisting of a short Stalk, with small Leaves, rising but little. They pull it up when ripe, and when cut into such Pieces, as are brought over to us, they run Threads through, and hang them a drying in the Air. Some Author has writ, that they strung them, to hang about the Necks of Cattel, in order to Exportation, as being prohibited; but he was misinform'd, for it neither is, nor ever was prohibited, and there is such Plenty where it grows, that a *Man* being almost 36 Ounces Weight, is generally sold for a *Sady*, being just half a *Royal*, or Three

Three Pence. Thus it appears, that *Kha Khon Chiny*, with whom *Mirkond* tells us, *Ascander* made Peace, was the King of *Tartary*, as we call it, or as the *Persians* name it *Tatar*, and the Inhabitants of those Parts *Tataron*, as we do *Tartars*, whose Empire they usually divide into Two Parts. The one is next to *Europe*, above the *Caspian* Sea, the Metropolis whereof is *Kefah*, on the Bank of the said Sea. The other being the principal, bordering on *China*, properly call'd *Khan balek*, signifying the Kings, or Lords City, from *Balek*, City, and *Khan*, King, or Lord. I know there are those that write it *Balu*, but it ought to be *Balek*. This is the Great *Tartar*'s Court, of whose Wealth and Grandeur, this is a sufficient Testimony, that it generally has a Garrison of Sixty Thousand Men within the Walls, and tho' this seems extravagant, there is nothing more certain; for I making a Question of it, enquir'd and was fully convinc'd of the Truth. *Chinguys Khan* was King of those Parts, and the first that brought those Nations into *Persia*, of whom something shall be said in its Place. There is much very pure Gold in those Parts, which perhaps is the same with that of *Pachim* and *Sucheo*, or *Fucheo*, in *China*, and extraordinary fine. Thence also comes the greatest Quantity of Musk, by the *Arabs*, and *Persians*, call'd *Mexk*, *Mesk*, or *Mosk*. The *Persians* also call a Mouse, *Moxh*, not that those sweet scented ones of *India*, which exhale a most fragrant Odour, are any thing a kin to the Creatures that produce the Musk; for these are call'd *Gazelles*, being large almost of the Species of Deer, or very like them; whereas the others are very small Mice, like those we call

Tartar Empire.

Of Musk.

call Shrews. All the Musk that comes not from *China*, is much more pure and excellent, as is that brought through *Bengale*, *Pegu*, and other Parts; and the Reason this is better, is, because it falls not into the Hands of the *Chineses*, who cannot endure to let any thing pass without Sophistication.

All these Nations, whether *Uzbeks*, *Tartars*, or those *Khetao Khotan*, or *Cathay*, differ little from the *Chineses* in Aspect, or Habit. They are fair, well limb'd, have small sunk Eyes, and thin frizly Beards. There is enough writ upon this Subject, for which reason I do not dilate farther upon it. Neither will I say much of the *Calamba*, it being well known to all Men, that the best comes from the Kingdom of *Champa*, neighbouring upon *China*, and the next to it from *Kacho Chin*, which the *Portugueses* vulgarly call *Cochinchina*, and it is wonderful, that very often one and the same Trunk of a Tree produces the *Calamba*, the Eagle Wood, or Lignum Aloes, and another Sort of Wood, different from them both, which I have seen several times, and this is the Reason, why, when they fall these Trees, they cast them into Bogs, or the Ouze of Rivers, to the End the useless Wood may there rot, and consume, and the good be preserv'd. Some thing of this Sort is also found in the Woods of *Malaca*, and the neighbouring Kingdom of *Pam*, which the *Portuguese* call *Pao*. The *Arabs* and *Persians* call the Eagle Wood, or Lignum Aloes, *Ud*; and the *Calamba*, *Kalumbuck*. Having spoken briefly of this precious Wood, I will say something not amiss of the *Sandal*, or Sanders, whose Virtue is not inferior to the other. The white, for there is no distinct Species of the yellow,

Calamba, *and* Lignum Aloes.

Sandal, *or* *Sanders.*

yellow, but only the white, through some Accident, contracts something of that Colour. This white I say, grows in the Island *Timor*, 500 Leagues distant from *Malaca*, and is call'd in the Language of the said Island *Chandava*, whence the *Arabs* and *Persians*, corruptly name it *Sandal*, as we do from them. The Trees grow on high craggy dry Clifts, and produce a Sort of Fruit like the Bay Berries, but square, which being eaten by the Birds, they evacuate it again, with their Excrement, in several Places, whence new Trees grow up, as happens with the Cloves in the *Molucco* Islands. These Sandal Trees, before they are cut down, are try'd cutting out a Piece as we do with Melons, to see whether they are fit to fall; as also to know whether it be *Sandal*, or another Sort of Wood, which is sometimes so like it, that the Eye can scarce distinguish between them.

Brutality of the People of Timor.

In this Island of *Timor* there daily happen very strange Accidents, to the *Portugueses* that sail thither for *Sandal*, occasion'd by the Brutality of the Natives, which perhaps is not to be match'd, and whereof I will say something, for the Diversion of the Reader. These People do not sail upon the Sea, nor do they understand any thing of it; and it is a known Truth, that the use of Fire is very new among them, having liv'd all past Ages without it. Among other ridiculous Opinions they hold, one is, that all those who die there, go to live at *Malaca*, and it has happened there, that a *Portuguese* Ship going thither to trade, and one of the Seamen somewhat resembling the Son of a Native, that was dead, the Father laid hold of him, crying, *my dear Child, how could you be so forgetful; why did*

did you stay so long, without taking Compassion of
3 Comical Stories. *me, who am quite weary of expecting you, and looking to your Buffaloes, and Goats? There they are all multiply'd, take them, for I must repose my self.* The *Portugueſe* being a ſly Fellow, receiv'd all that was offer'd him, and exchang'd it for a conſiderable Quantity of Sandal, with which he return'd home. A well known Inhabitant of *Malaca*, going in a Ship of his own to this Iſland, arriv'd in a Port of it, at the time when the King of that Place was lamenting the Death of his Father, who was newly departed this Life. He went a ſhore, viſited the King, and mixing among his People, made the beſt ſhow he was able of weeping with them; the King looking upon him as a good natur'd Man, loaded his Ship with *Sandal*, and diſmiſs'd him. Another came into another Port, upon the like occaſion, the King deſir'd him to reſtore his Father to Life; the *Portugueſe* anſwer'd, he knew the King of *Malaca*, ſo they call'd the Governor, was the Perſon that muſt raiſe the dead, as they ſaid; but that he had no orders from him for ſo doing; but that to ſerve him, he would carry his Father along with him, and deſire him to do it ſpeedily. The King was well pleas'd, the *Portugueſe* carry'd the Carcaſe aboard, taking it in on one ſide, and throwing it over into the Sea, on the other, with a good Weight of Stones to it; and this good Service was requited with his whole Lading. A Thouſand ſuch Accidents as this have hapned there.

Medicinal Woods. There are other Sorts of Wood of ſingular Virtue in this Iſland; yet not ſo valuable, becauſe they are not become a Commodity among them are, *Vidare pute*, ſignifying, white

white Apple, and *Vidare labor*, that is, Sea Apple, in the *Malayan* Language, which are of ſingular uſe, againſt ſeveral Diſeaſes. In *Solor*, another Iſland cloſe by, is another Sort by the *Portugueſes* call'd *Pao de Solor*, that is, *Solor* Wood, of no leſs Virtue. There is alſo a Compoſition, or Antidote againſt Poiſon, which they call *Belyla*, being the Name of a *Mahometan* who invented it, and is like Shoomakers Wax, held in great Eſteem. The Natives of *Timor* generally eat Buffalo's, and Goats Fleſh, with the Blood, Skin, and Hair, ſcarce heated at the Fire; and ſome Herbs and Roots; the reſt of their Cuſtoms are ſuitable, and yet ſo prevalent is the Avarice of thoſe who trade thither, that rather than be diſappointed of *Sandal*, when they viſit their Kings, they ſit down among their Subjects, not on Chairs, or on Carpets ſpread upon the Ground, and feed upon this Diet, and whatſoever elſe the King orders them, which is all wretched. To purchaſe *Sandal*, they carry Gold, mix'd with a third or fourth Part of Silver; *Loyas*, being a Sort of *Laton*, brought from *China*, whereof they make Bracelets; *Patolas*, which a kind of Callicoes from *India*, and other things. There is alſo Red Sandal, or Sanders, but in a Country very remote from *Timor*, that is, in *India*, on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, about the City of St. *Thomas*, or *Meliapor*. Great Quantities of both Sorts are carry'd to *China*, *Bengale*, *Cambaya*, *Pegu*, *Arabia*, and *Perſia*. *Diba* mention'd above is an extraordinary rich Silk, worn in the Eaſt, by Kings and Princes. The weight the *Portugueſes* in *India* generally call *Mao*, is by the *Perſians* nam'd *Man*, and *Men*, being the ſame as *Mina*, the Value, and Quantity whereof

Man a Weight.

whereof varies according to the several Countries. *Zahkyrey Koarrazmxa*, which with us signifies *Zachary*, King of *Koarrazm*, a famous Physician, who writ a Book very like that of *Mesue*, us'd in *Persia*, treats very fully of these Weights and Measures, and calls this we speak of *Min*. On the Coast of *Melinde*, they name it *Mayna*; the Reader will excuse this Digression, for I omit many things to avoid being tedious.

Alexander *the Great dies.*

To return to *Ascander*, he having receiv'd those Presents already mention'd from *Hhakon Chiny*, took leave of him, and directing his course towards *Maxarek*, subduing several Nations by the way, return'd into the West. At *Hermez*, near *Aureg*, in the Territory of *Babylon*, he fell sick, and dy'd; when he had liv'd 36 Years, and reign'd 17, having been Soveraign of 22 large Provinces in the 3 Parts of the World. The Kings of Thirteen of them always attended him. The *Persians* extol the Life, and Actions of *Ascander*, as wonderful, and have writ many Books in Verse and Prose, upon that Subject, full of abundance of excellent Flights, and Sentences; and *Mirkond* spends much time upon this Relation, delivering some things, which seem incredible; but my Design being only to treat of the Kings of *Persia*, laying down their right Succession from one to another, I do not pretend to be too particular. Thus we will conclude the Life of *Ascander*, whom the *Persians* reckon among their Kings, and allow 14 years to his Reign.

CHAP.

Chap. XXIII.

Of the Inter-regnum *in* Persia.

UPon the Death of *Alexander*, all Things were full of Confusion and Disorder, throughout his Dominions; and in *Persia* there hapned an *Inter-regnum*, which lasted 72 Years; during which time it was govern'd by *Wazirs*, or Viziers, being Regents; till at last their Rule expiring, the Kingdom was restor'd to the Race of the former Kings, which was continu'd as follows.

Chap. XXIV.

Of Schapur, *or* Sapor, *the Twentieth King of* Persia.

THE 72 Year after the Death of *Ascander*, during which *Persia* was govern'd by *Wazirs*, or Viziers; being expir'd, the Crown was conferr'd upon *Schapur*, or *Sapor*, *Darab*'s Kinsman, whose Brother *Mirkond* calls him, according to the common way of speaking us'd among the *Persians*, and *Arabians*, who call any near Relation Brother, and even in Holy Writ this same Expression is so us'd. Nothing remarkable worth mentioning hapned during the Reign of this *Schapur*, nor do they write any more concerning him.

Chap. XXV.

Of Ardxir Babar Khon, *the Twenty First King of* Persia.

Ardschir Baha Khon succeeded *Schapor* in the Throne, was a good King, and gave general Satisfaction during his Reign. According to the *Persian* Chronology, this King rul'd at the time when our Saviour *Jesus Christ* was upon Earth, and tho' several Objections may be made, I shall not undertake the Controversy, because I have only undertaken to deliver what I found written, always sticking to my intended Brevity. [*Here must be some Casma in the* Persian *History, for from the Death of* Alexander *to the Birth of Christ, there passed about* 220 *Years, by which we may guess those People have little, or no Account of their Affairs, from the Death of that Monarch, till the Incarnation of our Lord.*] This King's Sirname was *Baba Khon*, which in the *Persian* signifies the same as *Abu Malek*, in the *Arabick*, that is, Father and Lord, or Father King; for the *Persians* vulgarly call a Father *Pedar*, but when they speak of any Person, to whom particular Respect is due, by the Name of Father, they use this Word *Baba*, as *Baba Adam*, *Baba Noe*, Father *Adam*, and Father *Noah*. *Khon*, or *Khan* is a Title of Honour signifying King, or Lord, and so in the *Arabick*, *Abu* is Father, and *Malek* King, of which Titles I shall say something more hereafter.

Ardschir reign'd in the Days of our Saviour.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Schapur Zabel Ketaf, *the Twenty Second King of* Persia.

Ardschir Baba Khon dying, the Crown of *Persia* devolv'd upon *Schapur Zabel Ketaf*, who being an Infant, and a Brother he had younger, the Tuition of him was committed to an Unkle of his, Brother to his Father, nam'd *Ardschir*, and Son to *Hormoz*, whom many of the Great Men would have made King, and several of the *Persian* Historians reckon him as such; but *Mirkond* says he refus'd it, allaying that Heat, and Desire of Change by his extraordinary Prudence. After he had govern'd some Years, during his Nephew's Minority, the Administration was put into the young King's Hands, at a convenient time, which *Scapur Zabel Ketaf* manag'd to the general Satisfaction of all Men, being a virtuous and prudent Prince. Such Monarchs never wanting Enemies, it hapned that *Schapur* lying asleep in his Tent in the Night, some Persons never known enter'd it, and stifled him; then going out, cut the Cords that held it up, so that it fell upon him, and the Night being rainy and windy, they gave out, it had been thrown down by the Storm, and had kill'd him. Thus ended *Schapur Zabel Ketaf*, whose Death was much lamented throughout all *Persia*, by reason of his Goodness.

Schapur *murder'd.*

Chap. XXVII.

Of Baharon Kermonxa, *the Twenty Third King of* Persia.

IT was mention'd before, that *Schapur Zabel Ketaf* had a younger Brother, call'd *Baharon*, whom he had made Governor of *Kermon*, whence he had the Sirname of *Kermon Scha*, signifying *Baharon* King of *Kermon*.

Kermon *Province.* This *Kermon* is a large, and Principal Province of *Persia*, between it and the Country of *Karazon*, famous in the East for some particular Commodities it affords, which I will briefly mention. It has a City of the same Name, which communicates it to all the Province. Speaking of *Schiras*, the Capital of *Pars*, or *Persia*, I took notice, it abounded

Rose Water. in Rose Water; but besides others of less Note, there are 4 Principal Places, where it is made in great Quantities. The best, which is distill'd, they make at *Schiras*, and *Yazd*; the other not so good, as being made by Decoction, and Infusion, and therefore soon decaying, at *Kermon*, and *Duzgun*. The Rose Water in *Persia* is call'd by Two several Names; *Gulab*, which is Rose Water; and *Areka Gul*, the Sweat of the Rose, a Name proper enough for that which is distill'd. Of that which is made by Decoction, a very great Quantity is every Year exported to all the Eastern Parts. Carpets, by the *Persians* call'd *Kalichey*, are made in Three Parts of *Persia*, the richest, finest, and highest priz'd, at *Yazd*, some of which I have seen so curiously wrought, that they were valu'd at above

above a Thousand Ducats a piece; so that when they speak of a *Yazd* Carpet, which in *Portugueſe* they corruptly call *Dodiaz*, it is to be understood of the finest, and best. The next in Goodness are of this Kingdom of *Kermon*, and the Third those of *Karazon*. There are some also made at *Agra*, *Bengale*, and *Cambaya*, but not fine. The Name of *Alcatifa*, by which the *Portugueſes* call a Carpet, had its Original before the Kings of *Ormuz* went over to live in the Island of *Gerun*, where they since resided, and resum'd their former Title; the Mart or Fair was kept in another Island, call'd Keys, as I observ'd in speaking of *Ormuz*. The *Arabian* Merchants, who went thither to trade, both going and coming always pass'd through *Katifa*, a Port on the Continent of *Arabia*, in the Government of *Jasaph*, opposite to the Island *Barhen*, or *Baharen*, and thence convey'd their Goods to several Parts. Now Carpets being one of their Principal Commodities, when any ask'd whence they brought them; they answer'd, *Al Catifa*, that is, from *Catifa*, and thence the Name was given. So the Seed Pearl in *Spanish*, and *Portugueſe* call'd *Aliofar*, took it from the greatest Quantity of it being taken on the Coast of *Julfar*, a Port of *Arabia*, in the same Gulph of *Persia*, that is, from *Al Julfar*, signifying, of *Julfar*, whence corruptly *Aljofar*; tho' since that time better Fisheries have been discover'd in other Parts. *Kermon* also produces *Tutty*, which the *Persians* call *Tutyah*, and is found only in this Province, and only upon one Mountain, 12 Farsangues, that is 36 Miles distant from the City, whence it is carry'd to all Parts of the World, in great Quantities.

Carpets.

Tutty.

It is made by moulding the Earth of the Mountain with fair Water, wherewith they cover a Sort of Earthen Moulds, which they afterwards bake, as Potters do their Ware, and then taking it off the Moulds, the Tutty remains. This they send in Chests to sell at *Ormuz*, and those who buy, divide it into Tutty, Stone, of which there is a great Quantity, and Dust; each of which is sold by it self, and all is made use of. Dr. *Garcia Dorta* was misinform'd, for in his Dialogues of the Simples of *India*, he says, the Tutty is made of the Ashes of a certain Tree, and Fruit, call'd *Gune*. It is true there is a Sort of Fruit in *Persia*, call'd *Gaon*, of the Shape and Bigness of large Cherry Stones, cover'd with a thin green, and Orange colour Peel, or Film, which the Natives use by way of Diversion, as we do in picking of Pine Apple Kernels, and they say, the Effect is quite contrary to that of the Tutty, which is made in *Kermon*, as has been said. There is another thing no less useful in the Province of *Kermon*, which is to be found in no other Country, being the Herb against the Worms, by the *Persians* call'd *Dram nah Kermony*, that is, the Medicine brought from *Kermon*, or the Medicine against the Worms, for *Dram nah* is the proper Name of that Simple, and *Kermon* is equivocal, signifying the Kingdom of that Name, and the Worms. Hence corruptly comes the Word Crimson, of *Kermez*, becaufe made of the Scarlet Worms, and so among Physicians the Composition call'd *Alkermez*; for *Kermez* is the Singular Number, and *Kermon* the Plural. This puts me in mind of a Story, a famous *Persian* Poet, call'd *Cocia Yafez*, that is, *Japhet*, tells in his ingenious Works in Rhime.

Error of Dr. Garcia Dorta.

Crimson and Alkermez whence so call'd.

He

He feigns, that a Prince walking over a Field, heard a Voice, that call'd him by his Name. Turning that way, he saw a Skull, which he went up to, and ask'd, who it was that knew, and nam'd him. The Skull answer'd, you must know, I was a Man, as you are, and wore a *Tage*, that is, a Crown, or Royal Diadem, on my Head; I conquer'd, and subdu'd many Countries, and only wanted to reduce *Kermon*. I made ready for the Enterprize, and when I thought to assault *Kermon*, was my self attack'd, and devour'd by *Kermon*, (that is, by Worms, as has been explicated above) therefore do you take warning by me, *&c.* This in the *Persian*, taking the double meaning of the Word *Kermon*, runs very well. *Kermon* also produces the *Surmah*, which is a certain black transparent Stone, looking as if it were strew'd with black Sand. There are Two Sorts of it; the one coming from *Kermon*, and *Karazon*, being the best, and most valu'd; and another call'd *Moky*, because it comes from *Mecca*, or *Moka*, in the red Sea. The *Arabs*, *Persians*, and *Indians* make much use of this Stone, to cure sore Eyes, being of great Virtue compounded with other Simples; as also by way of Ornament, Men and Women blacking their Eyes with it, which they think sets them off very much. But a *Persian* Lover was not of this Opinion, who seeing his Mistresses Eyes smear'd with this *Surmah*, tho' it is likely her own were black, and beautiful, as most of the *Persian* Women have them, among other amorous Expressions, said to her, *Chesm Siah dary Surmah che tacony*; which is as much as to say, why do you use *Surmah*, when there is no need of it, since your Eyes are black,

Persian *Fiction.*

Surmah, *a Stone for the Eyes.*

and beautiful. It is likely this *Jezebel* made use of this Stone to black her Eyes, when she look'd out of the Window, to please *Jehu*, who order'd her to be kill'd. This may suffice, as to the Province of *Kermon*, where *Baharon* was Governor.

He was speedily advis'd of his Brother's unfortunate Death, and his own Accession to the Throne, which he took Possession of, without any Opposition. *Baharon* was of a graceful Presence, a sound Judgment, and prudent Conduct, so that he govern'd his Dominions 11 Years with general Applause; at the End whereof there hapned a Division in the Court, follow'd by such a Mutiny, that he was fain to go in Person to appease it, but when he had almost done it, a Kinsman of his, who waited such an Opportunity, to destroy him, let fly an Arrow, from amidst the Crowd, and aim'd so well, that it pierc'd his Bowels, and he dropt down dead, to the great Regret of all his People, who liv'd contentedly under him.

Baharon *murder'd.*

Chap. XXVIII.

Of Yazd Gerd, *the Twenty Fourth King of* Persia.

As soon as *Baharon* was dead, the *Persians* proclaim'd his Son *Yazd Gerd* King. He, before his Accession to the Throne was so much honour'd, and respected by all Men, that every one endeavour'd to serve, and please him, and he was thought to deserve it. But as soon as crown'd, his Behaviour alter'd

alter'd with his Fortune; for he became haughty, cruel, and covetous, and was always most obstinate, and implacable, when su'd to for Mercy in humblest manner. He was wont to say, there were Three Things from which no Mercy could be hop'd, or expected; and these were Fire, the Sea, and an angry King. Being marry'd, he liv'd discontented, because tho' his Wife had bore several Children, none of them liv'd. In the Heighth of this Dissatisfaction, his Queen prov'd with Child, and at her time was deliver'd of a Son they call'd *Baharon*, who living longer than any of the others, all which had dy'd within the Month, put his Parents in hopes that he would thrive. His Father *Yazd Gerd*, who wish'd for his Life, by the Advice of the Physicians, caus'd him to be nurs'd from the Court, in a Part of *Arabia*, putting of him into the Hands of a King that was his Subject, call'd *Neaman Ben Amarah ulkeys*, a Man of much Integrity; who carry'd the Infant home with him, into his own Country, which enjoy'd a serene, and temperate Air, causing him to be bred as became such a Person. When he was come to Years of Discretion, *Neaman* his Tutor dy'd, leaving a Son call'd *Manzar* in his Place, a Man of as much Worth, and Fidelity as the Father. In the mean while, *Yazd Gerd* govern'd his Kingdom with general Dislike, and Hatred of all the People, by Reason of his Wickedness, and Tyranny, which he continu'd to the End of his Days, and that was suitable to his Life. As he stood one Day looking upon a Horse, he highly valu'd that Creature, without any Provocation gave him such a kick, that he dropp'd down dead, and ne'er spoke

Yazd Gerd *a wicked King.*

Baharon *Son to* Yazd Gerd.

Yazd Gerd *kill'd by his Horse.*

spoke one Word. The News of his Death spread abroad throughout the Kingdom, was very little lamented, and he reign'd 22 years, and 5 Months. The Great Men consulted about the Succession, and fell into hot Debates, some insisting that the antient Course of Succession should not be interrupted, whilst others fearing lest *Baharon* should prove as bad as his Father, alledg'd, that the Crown ought to be bestow'd on one that might deserve it by his Virtue. This Party being numerous and strong, prevail'd, and enthron'd *Kezere Khozrao*, a near Kinsman of the late King, who tho' he had some good Qualities, was most recommended by Bribery, and large Promises. *Baharon*, who was in *Arabia*, receiv'd the News of his Father's Death, and of these Commotions, and Innovations at the same time, and advising with *Manzar* the Son of *Neaman*, ask'd his Assistance for recovering of the Kingdom, which belong'd to him of Right, and had been usurp'd by *Kezere Khozrao*. *Manzar* espous'd his Quarrel, furnish'd him with 10000 Horse to set forward, and follow'd himself with 30000 more, making up 40000. His Approach perplex'd the *Persians*, and many of the prime Men joyn'd him; but *Kezere Khozrao* met him with a numerous Army. Some were much concern'd at the publick Danger, and propos'd an Accommodation, before they came to Blows, which they manag'd so dexterously, that *Baharon* was receiv'd as King, and *Kezere Khozrao*, whom several *Persian* Historians reckon among their Kings, was the 1st that acknowledg'd him.

Kezere Khozrao chosen.

He submits and Baharon is receiv'd.

CHAP.

Chap. XXIX.

Of Baharon Gur, *the Twenty Fifth King of* Persia.

Baharon being possess'd of the Throne, the first Thing he did, was at the Request of *Manzar*, to grant a general Pardon to all those, who had been against him, during the late Troubles; bestowing many Favours on others. He restor'd the Administration of Justice, and adorn'd his Dominions with many magnificent publick Structures, building some new, and repairing such as were decay'd with Age. *Manzar*, who had bred him up, and been the occasion of recovering his Crown, was sent home with much Honour, and considerable Rewards; leaving one of his Sons at Court, where he was preferr'd. *Baharon* was much belov'd both by his own Subjects and Strangers, for his Generosity and Affability; and put brave and discreet Men into all his Fortresses and Frontiers, to govern, and defend them. His Dominions enjoy'd Peace, and Tranquility, so that his Reign was reckned most fortunate; for the *Persians* wholly addicted themselves to Pleasure, without any Application to the Exercise of Arms, which they almost look'd upon as useless, having liv'd so long in Peace. In the Height of this Prosperity, Advice was brought from *Karazon*, that *Hha Khon Chiny*, King of *Tartar*, or *Tartary*, observing the Negligence of the *Persians*, was broke into their Territories, with an Army of 250000 Men, doing much Harm. The *Persians* were at a Loss, the great ones met, attended *Baharon*,

Baharon's *good Government.*

Happy Times.

Tartars *invade* Persia.

haron, represented to him the imminent Danger, desiring he would apply some speedy Remedy. He return'd a cold Answer, making little Account of what they said; but order'd all Things to be made ready to go a hunting. There were 7 Kings his Subjects, who continually resided at Court, whom he acquainted with his Design of going abroad, to divert himself. They attended him, with a small Retinue, and he picking out 300 chosen Men of his Guard, went into the Country with a great Number of Hawks, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, Hounds, and other Things for Sport, which made all Men conclude him an insignificant Mad Man.

Hunting much us'd in Persia.

The *Persian* Kings, and great Men ever were, and still are much addicted to hunting, which costs them a great Part of their Estates, and they reckon it an Employment becoming their Grandeur. Hence *Baharon* had the Sirname of *Gur* given him. *Gur* is a *Persian* equivocal Word, of a double meaning, as signifying, the Beast we call a wild Ass, which this King singularly affected to hunt, and it is also the Grave or Cave, in which a dead Body is bury'd. For this Reason, when *Baharon* dy'd, among other ingenious Elegies, several Poets made on him, there was one, which took notice, that *Baharon* who always was in pursuit of, and taking *Gur*, that is, the wild Asses, was himself then taken by *Gur*, that is the Grave, which make a pleasant Quibble in the *Persian* Tongue. This Sport is practic'd in *Persia*, and other Eastern Parts, with Birds, and four footed Beasts; the Hawks are flown at Birds, as is us'd among us; as also at other Creatures, as Deer, *Gazelles*, Hares, and others, for some Falcons, and

Hunting, and hawking in Persia.

and other such Birds of Prey, being bred to it, and let fly at those Creatures, fasten on their Heads, whence they peck at their Eyes, and other parts, which stops their Flight, till the Huntsmen come in, and take them. They have several ways of Hunting with Beasts. They make use of Ounces, or Leopards tam'd for the purpose, which they carry on Carts in the Armies; and private Persons on Horseback behind them, on Iron Plates, that they may not hurt the Horse with their Claws. They have also great numbers of Hounds, and Grey-hounds very good, and extraordinary swift. The Game is the same we have here, and some over and above, as the *Gazel*, being a sort of Deer, but slenderer in the Body, the Horns sharp, straight, and twisted, the Eyes large, and extraordinary sparkling, insomuch that the *Persians* to extol a Ladies Eyes, say they are like the *Gazel*'s, so they call this Creature, whose Flesh is very wholesome, and well tasted. There is a sort of wild Sheep, by the *Persians* call'd *Pagen*, these, as well as the *Gazelles*, are always in craggy Places, and differ little from our common Sheep, saving that they are thicker Body'd, and larger, and wonderful strong; for I saw one ty'd to a Brass Demy Falconet, and he drew it after him, without any Difficulty. Their Horns are like those of our Sheep, but each of them as big as half a Hoop of a Pipe, thick, and standing back so far that they cover their hind Quarters, Nature having providently made them so, to the end that when, being hard drove by the Huntsmen, and Dogs, they throw themselves off the Clifts, and Rocks, always chusing the most dangerous Place, they may do it, without receiving

Gazelles.

Pagen, *wild Sheep.*

ving any Hurt; thus they cast themselves headlong on their Horns, and tumbling safely upon them, can avoid those that pursue them. There is another pleasant way of Hunting Deer with Deer, us'd in *India*, which is done by having some tame, and bred to hand, which when they would make Sport, they carry abroad into the Field, with a Cord on their Horns, and a Noose in it. Being thus turn'd loose, they go away to find others of their Kind, which are very numerous, and coming up to them, touch their Horns, as it were in kindness, and being well taught, put their Horns into the Noose, so that they are taken. This is very frequent, in the Countries of *Damam* and *Bazaim*, and the others they call Northern in *India*. There

Wild Cows. are also wild Cows, differing much from the common sort in Whiteness, and Strength, of whose Tails they make *Combalas*, much valu'd among both Northern, and Southern *Indians*, to drive the Flies away. Elephants are likewise Hunted, but several ways, for in the Land of the *Cafres*, or *Blacks*, being that Part of *Africk*, which is wash'd by the *Indian* Ocean, about *Mozambique*, *Mombaza*, *Melinde*, and the other Nations, and Kingdoms where we Trade, the Natives making no

Hunting of Elephants. other Advantage of the Elephants, but their Teeth, drive them into Pits cover'd over, where they kill them. In the Kingdoms of *Arracam*, and *Syam*, they erect a sort of Redout, in the thickest part of the Woods, with a round Spot enclos'd by Two, or Three Hedges, one without another, all of Masts, and mighty Timbers, and having gather'd a great multitude of People, they beat the Wood, making a hideous Noise of Shouts, and Instruments,

struments, and the Elephants frighted at it, run into that Place at Two little Doors, which have Draw-bridges to them; when a Number is got in, they shut the Doors, and there by Beating, Hunger, Threats, and good Words, tame them by degrees, so that they come out very gentle, and fit for Service. In the Island of *Ceylon*, they take them by Love, and it is no Wonder that Men should be so ensnar'd, since it happens to the Beasts; for they send a tame Female, which they generally call *Alcah*, into the Woods, with a *Cornaca*, being an *Indian* that knows how to talk to, and govern an Elephant, conveniently ty'd under the Females Belly, who being come among the other Elephants, tells her what she is to do, and how she is to provoke them, and when he finds they are in Lust, he bids her return home, and they follow her very gently, till they are in a Place where they are afterwards tam'd. The Elephants lie down to sleep on the Ground, like all other Creatures, and have no difficulty in rising. Being so large, they travel very fast, without going out of their Pace. There are great Numbers of them throughout all the East, and it is observ'd, that those of other Countries pay a Respect to those of *Ceylon*. The story of their honouring the Moon, is a meer Fable, as is that of their Washing themselves when she is new, and their way of Copulation, for the Male, and Female generate like other Beasts, all whom they far excel in Sense, and Instinct. Only the Male Elephants have those great Teeth, we call Ivory, and the *Spaniards Marfil*, from the *Arabick*, and *Persian Alfil*, a Tooth. The female Elephants have not those great Teeth;

but

but in the Year 1590, when *John Correa Brito* was Governor of the Fortress of *Columbo*, in *Ceylon*, a female Elephant bred Two of those Teeth, at *Seitavaca*, the Court of *Raju*, the last Heathen King of that Island, which he looked upon as a great Blessing, and the like was never known in all the East. The Kings in those Parts make much Account of these Creatures for their Service in Peace, and War; and there are some that keep great numbers of them, as *Gelaladin*, the Great *Mogol*, who had 2000; *Bramah*, King of *Pegu*, when in his Prosperity, the like number, or more, and some of them so highly valu'd, that they wash'd their Feet in Silver Basons. A white Elephant the King of *Siam* had, among the rest, was the Occasion of his Ruin, as is affirm'd, having caus'd bloody Wars, thus much concerning the Elephants.

Rhinocerots, and their Horns

It is a meer Fable, some tell that the Rhinoceros, whom the *Portugueses* call *Bada*, overcomes the Elephant, for I have several times seen Rhinocerots run away at the very sight of an Elephant. These Creatures are sometimes Hunted, and taken in the East, their Horn being of singular Virtue against Poison, and some Distempers; especially the Horn of those they take in *Bengale*, *Orracam*, and *Siam*, for those of *Africk*, tho' larger, are not counted so good. There are great numbers of

Tigers, how taken.

Tigers, throughout all the East, many of which are taken several ways, whereof I will relate one, because it is very remarkable. On the Coast of *Manar*, near the Island of *Ceylon*, they are taken by Men fighting with them Hand to Hand, after this manner. A Man Arms his left Arm, as far as the Elbow, with a Gauntlet of Plates, full of Points, very Substantial,

stantial, having another on his right Arm, and a sharp Poniard in his Hand; then holding out the left Arm for the Beast to seize, when he springs, he stabs him so fast in the Belly, that the Tiger drops down dead; and some Men are so dexterous at it, that they are in little danger; yet it has, and does still cost many others their Lives, because these, and all others throughout the East, are extraordinary large and fierce. The Mountain *Nayres*, who are the Heathen Gentiles of *Malabar* in *India*, value themselves very much upon killing of Tigers, with whose Skins they cover their Bucklers, by way of Trophy. There are infinite Numbers of them in *Bengale*, which is Part of *India* beyond the *Ganges*, where the Natives call them *Baga*, and they are so daring, as to swim that rapid River *Ganges*, half way over in the Night, and snatching Men out of Boats, return back with them to Land. *Bengale* abounds in Cattle, and Game above any Country in the World, there being greater Herds of Deer, Cows, Buffaloes, Swine, and such like Creatures, than there are Flocks of Sheep among us; and yet the Tigers venture so hard to catch a Man, as has been said. I endeavour'd to discover the Reason of it, and could find none but this. The Tiger, tho' wonderful fierce, is no swift Creature, but heavy and slow, in comparison of other Animals, and this is a certain Truth, known to me by long ocular Experience; notwithstanding some cry them up as prodigiously swift, and fleet. Thus any Beast that is aware, can easily make its Escape, and consequently, they are for the most Part hungry, and seek out for Men, who are not so nimble, or cautious.

Some fancy it is because Man's Flesh and Blood is sweeter to them; but that is a vulgar Notion, and this I deliver as the true Cause. There are also Tigers at *Malaca*, and in the neighbouring Parts, but these are not so dreadful as the others, yet us'd to come up to the Houses, and carry away the People out of them, so that being numerous and frequent, the Inhabitants liv'd very uneasy, till a Holy Bishop commanded them not to come within Two Leagues about the City, and from that Day they never were within the Bounds assign'd them. This I was assur'd of in that City by antient creditable Persons.

Fisheries. Fishing being a Sort of Sport or Game, it will not be amiss to speak of some ways, it is us'd in the East, which are worth observing. There is no Fishery in *Persia*, but what is inconsiderable, along the Gulph of *Persia*, and some up the Inland on the *Caspian* Sea. On the River *Send*, or *Indus*, where the extreme Poverty of the Fishermen does not permit them to keep Boats, they use an odd Method, swimming, with their Belly and Breast, on the Mouth of a great Earthen Pot, and thus striking out with their Feet, they swim and fish, putting what they catch into the Pot, till the Current drives them ashore. There they take the Pot upon their Back, and return to their first Post, whence they launch out again into the Water, and so repeat it as often as they think fit. In this same River the *Indians* use to take great Numbers of Water Fowl, by means of a Pot full of Holes they put their Heads into; which the Historian *Gonzalo Fernandez de Oviedo*, in his History of *America*, tells us was us'd by the Natives of *Santo Domingo*, and reckons it

Comical way of fishing.

Water Fowl how taken.

wonder-

wonderful. In the Streight of *Sincapura*, and *Romanya*, which is between *Malaca*, and *Jor*, to the Southward, the *Seletes* being a People born, bred, and living on the Sea, in very little Boats, sometimes maintaining themselves by fishing, and sometimes by robbing, sell the Fish, as it is swimming in the Water, and having agreed upon the Price, they strike, and deliver it to the Buyer, being so dexterous, that they never miss it. The same is said to be done at *Canton* in *China*. When these *Seletes* marry off a Daughter, they give her in Portion, one of their little Boats, with two Oars, and the Bride, and Bridegroom, being put into it, are committed to the Tide, which they suffer to carry them ashore, and that Part they stick upon is their Habitation, when on Land; provided it be not already possess'd by others; for if it is, they put out again, till they come to a Place that is clear. In *Japan*, besides the common Sorts of Fisheries, which are many, and plentiful, especially for Tunny Fish, and Pilchards, there is one very curious, perform'd by Sea Crows, which being turn'd into the Sea, with their Throats ty'd up, that they may not swallow the Fish, are so well taught, that they bring what they take into the Boat. I believe what I am going to say, will be look'd upon as inconsiderable; but I will relate it to show the Providence of Nature. In the Bay of *Mascate*, a Town of *Arabia*, and *Portuguese* Fortress, within the *Persian* Gulph, in 23 Degrees and a half of North Latitude, that is, just under the Tropick of *Cancer*, there is vast Plenty of Fish, much whereof is carry'd in Pickle to all Parts of *India*, and there being such Abundance, it is so easy to take, that

Seletes *bred upon the Sea, how they fish.*

Marriages

Fishing in Japan.

very often, when the Cats are hungry, they come down to the Shore, and standing close to the Water, put their Tail into it, on which some small Fish fasten, and as soon as the Cat feels them, he jerks his Tail out upon the Land, and feeds on them. This seems very strange, but will not be so surprizing, if we consider, the extraordinary ways many Creatures have to supply their Wants. This will still appear the more credible, by what hapned to me in that very Bay, in the year 1587, when coming thither with Ships of War, I accidentally took notice, that the Galley Slaves were fishing between the Oars, and seeing them put their Hands into the Water, and take out Fishes, without any other Instrument, I was amaz'd, enquir'd into the Reason of it, and found, that having a Bit of Fish ty'd to their Thumbs, on the inside, when the Fishes come to bite, they laid hold of them with their Hands, and took them up; and for the more Certainty, I did the same, and catch'd several.

Cats taking Fish.

Fish taken by Hand.

There are also in the East, Sea Horses, Sea Cows, Sea Swine, and one they call the Woman Fish, from the great resemblance of it's Vessel of Generation with a Womans, and this last chiefly on the Coast of *Melinde*, where the native *Moors* have often made use of it, in beastly manner, and would then carry it to sell in the Market; which their *Cazices* looking upon as abominable, they oblige the Fishermen not to sell any Woman Fish till it has been first brought before them, where they are to Swear solemnly, on the *Musaph*, which is the Book of their Law, that they have not had Copulation with it. If rather than be forsworn they confess they have, all

Woman Fish brutally us'd by Moors.

the

the Penalty is, that they must not sell it; but if they Swear, they are then at Liberty to dispose of it. This is a well known Truth, and I was fully satisfy'd of it, whilst I continu'd on that Coast. Of it's Bones they generally make Beads, Rings, and other such things, being said to be of singular Virtue for stopping any bloody Flux; but of this, and many other things, cry'd up by the multitude in the *East Indies* as Miraculous, I curiously made tryal for many Years, without finding any effect, tho' at the same time I own there are in the East many Simples of wonderful Virtue, and strange Qualities. There are in several Parts, great numbers of dreadful *Crocodils*, or *Alligators*; as in *Africk*, in the Rivers of *Cuama*, and many others; in the *Ganges*, at *Bengale*; in the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Tanasarim*; and more of a larger size at *Malaca*, in which River they devour Men most days; for the Natives making much use of that River, and continually going into it, either to wash them, or for some other end, the Crocodils come up softly, and taking hold of their Legs drag them away, past hope of Relief, for they sink under Water, and are never seen again. Some of them are taken now and then, but considering their vast Numbers, that signifies nothing. When *Don John de Gama*, Brother to the Count *de Vidigueyra*, was Governor of *Malaca*, there was a Native of the Country in it, who going some times to the Bank of the River of St. *Jerome*, which washes the City Walls, utter'd some Words, which drew the Crocodiles thither, then he pronounc'd some others, and taking one or two of them, threw a Rope about their Necks, and so led them about the

It's Bones stop the bloody Flux.

Crocodiles.

Story of charming them.

City, being come to the Governors House, he commanded them to make their Obeysance, which they did; then he conducted them back to the Shore, where he dismiss'd them, and they went away very gently. This he did several times, till at last, one Day having perhaps been deficient in his Charm, when he was near the River, one of the Crocodils being dismiss'd, struck him with his Tail on the Head, whereof he dropt down dead. That there is a Possibility of such charming is taught us by the Royal Prophet, *Psal.* 58. besides that we see it daily practis'd in *India*, where the Gentiles commonly carry very large and hideous Snakes charm'd, about the Streets, and into the Houses, making them dance to a Pipe, and wind them about their Necks, with many other such Motions, handling them without receiving any Hurt; and tho' some attribute this to their having no Teeth, which they say, are taken out when they are little, yet Experience shows the contrary, for it has been sometimes known, that when they were provok'd, or not so fully circumscrib'd by the Charm, as they ought to be, they have done much Mischief among the Standers by. Having spoken of the Crocodils, there occurs to me an Accident of one, worthy to be known, which being most certainly true, I will insert, for the Satisfaction of the Reader. When *Francis Silva de Meneses* was Governor of *Malaca*, he sent *Don Francis Tello de Menezes*, Governor of the *Philippine* Islands, Presents, and among other Things was a small young Elephant, with his *Cornaca*, being the *Indian* that manag'd him. This Elephant feeding about in the Island of *Manila*, was thirsty, and went away

And Snakes.

away to the River of *Paranaque*, which was hard by, to drink. Going into the Water, a Crocodile came, and laid hold on one of his Fore Feet, so fast, that for all the Elephant struggl'd, he could not break loose; till being inrag'd, he thrust his Trunk under Water, and with it drew the Crocodile a shore, where he found enough to do with him; but at last, setting one Foot upon his Belly, and pulling his Legs, one after another, with his Trunk, he quarter'd him. I was my self in *June* 1600, at the very Place, on the River *Paranaque*, where this had happened, but a few Days before. I was told of another Fight between a Tiger and a Crocodile, in the Rivers of *Cuama*, as a certain Truth; but that they both perish'd.

A Fight between a Crocodile, and an Elephant.

I will not say so much of Birds and Fowl, for fear of tiring the Reader. In the Kingdom of *Champa*, lying between *Cambaya* and *Cochinchina*, on the Southern *Indian* Sea, all along its Coast, there is a Sort of Birds, not unlike Swallows, which at a certain time of the Year are in Lust, and whilst that lasts have a Slaver, or glutinous Moisture flowing from their Beaks, wherewith provident Nature directing them, they build wonderful artificial Nests about the Clifts, and Rocks; laying one Slaver upon another, till when dry'd, it becomes a perfect Nest, in the Shape of a large Spoon, only the Edges higher rais'd. The Lust ending, and the Nest being finish'd, almost at the same time, they lay their Eggs, and hatch their young in them. There are such Numbers of these Nests, built after this manner, that they every Year gather many *Picos*, or *Quintals*, that is, Hundred Weight of them, which are carry'd as a good

Indian Birds Nests to eat.

Commodity to *China*, and there sold for 50 *Taheis*, or more a *Quintal*, or Hundred Weight, and that is near an Hundred Ducats; and they eat them, saying, they are very good for the Stomach, and Brain; and some *Portugueses*, who have tasted of them, highly commend them. In the Year 1597, going from *Goa* to *Malaca*, we had extraordinary Calms at Sea, and I being desirous to see a small Island, lying opposite to us, call'd *Pulo Jarra*, that is, *Jarra* Island, went ashore, and among other Things I saw, and took notice of in it, were these Birds, and their Nests, of which I carry'd a good Quantity aboard, and to *Malaca*, where I gave them to the *Chineses*, who valu'd them very much. Nor do I think that less strange of the *Gallinuelas*, or little Hens, at the *Moluccos*, whose Eggs being put into a Box, or other close Place, in a few Days hatch of themselves, without any Help, and if Care is not taken, when they open the Place, they fly away. I could speak of a Thousand Things, no less remarkable, were it not that I must return to *Baharon Gur*, from whom we have long stray'd.

Eggs hatch themselves.

He, attended as was said above, struck into the Woods, sporting as he went, and taking the contrary to that way which went to *Karason*, where the Enemy was. He had left one *Narsy*, a Kinsman of his, whom some *Persian* Historians reckon among the Kings, to govern in his Absence; by whose Consent and Approbation, the Prime Men of the Kingdom, believing that *Baharon* was fled, sent Embassadors to *Hha Khon Chiny*, to propose an Accommodation, that so they might at any Rate be deliver'd from the Mischiefs they dreaded. *Hha Khon* did not reject the Offer,

Offer, but gave Ear to it, and being assur'd how Affairs stood, and that *Baharon* was fled, concluded himself safe, so that the first Heat abating, he and his Forces became the less watchful. *Baharon* being gone far from the City, travell'd hastily through *Aderbaion* and *Armenia*, where picking only 2000 Horse out of the Garrisons, that were known to be Men of Resolution, he set forward with those, and such as attended him before, and mov'd with incredible Celerity, through by ways, and as privately as possible towards the Enemy. Being come pretty near, he sent Three Spies, as many several ways, to take a particular Account of the Enemies Posture, and Numbers, and return with it as they did, informing him, that the Enemy lay in supine Negligence, and Security, wholly indulging themselves in Vice, Wine, and Sleep. *Baharon*, without losing any time, divided his small Company, which might amount to about 4000 Men, but those good ones, into Four Parties, and waiting for a very dark Night, attack'd the Enemies Camp in Four several Places, with Kettle Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding, and this so furiously, that they being wholly surpriz'd, never offer'd to make Head; but betook themselves to flight, and were entirely defeated. *Baharon* made directly to *Hha Khon*'s Tent, where he was arming himself in hast, and cut off his Head before he could be ready. Then pursuing those that fled, chas'd them as far as the River *Jehun*, with a mighty Slaughter. Some *Persian* Historians vary a little in their Relation of this Victory; but this we have deliver'd, is accounted the Truth. *Baharon* having thus put an End to the War with *Hha Khon*

Baharon *under colour of hunting, surprises, and routs the Enemy.*

Khon Chiny, King of the *Tartars*, and setled Affairs in those Parts, return'd into *Persia*, loaded with Honour and Treasure, to the great Admiration of his People, who receiv'd him with universal Applause.

Returns to Persia.

Goes into India.

He was very desirous to see some Part of *India*, towards which he took his Way, with a small Number of Followers, leaving the Government again to *Narsy*, who is now also reckn'd King of *Persia*, and another time after. *Baharon* in *India* pretended to be *Wazir*, or *Vizier* to the King of *Persia*, and to have left him in Discontent, so that he was receiv'd into the Service of the greatest King there, perform'd many considerable Actions in his Service, and obtain'd signal Victories over his Enemies, for which the King did not only raise him in Dignity, but gave him his only Daughter to Wife. *Baharon* being marry'd, thought there was no longer occasion to conceal himself, and thereupon discover'd who he was to his Father in Law, who was not well pleas'd, apprehending some Innovation; for *Baharon* being generally belov'd for his excellent Qualities, before he was known, he fear'd that Affection might then increase, to his own Prejudice. But *Baharon* had other Thoughts, and to dispel his Jealousy, return'd into his own Kingdom, offering him some Lands belonging to the Crown of *Persia*, that border'd on his. After some Days Rest, he sent one of his Generals with a potent Army, to make an Incursion into the Lands of *Rumestan*, which is the *Roman* Empire, where many Places submitted to him, without any Opposition. *Baharon* himself with another Army, march'd into *Arabia*, and besides other Provinces, sub-

Returns, and invades Rumestan

du'd

du'd the Kingdom of *Hamon*, being the Country of the *Amanites*, which still retains the same Name. It is to be observ'd that there is Difference betwixt *Hyeman*, and *Hamon*, tho' they are both Kingdoms in *Arabia*, neighbouring on that of *Saba*, in the same Region, the Dominion of that Queen, that went to *Jerusalem*, only to see *Solomon*; for this is an adjacent Country, and the way from it short, and frequented; whereas that of *Abyssinia*, whence some would bring that Queen, is very remote from *Arabia*. *His Conquests in Arabia.*

Since I have mention'd *Arabia*, I think fit to declare, that it produces no Gold nor Silver, nor any valuable Metal; neither has it Spice or Aromatical Drugs, except Frankincense, which the *Persians* call *Kondoruch*, and the *Arabs*, *Loban*. From this Word came our Name for the Gum *Benjamin*, by them call'd *Loban Jaoy*, that is, Frankincense of *Jaoa*, and we corruptly *Benjamin*. It is found in several Parts of *Pegu*, there is much and very good in the Kingdom of *Olanion*, and so in *Siam*, and *Cambaya*, whither the *Javaneses* bring great Quantities, and likewise in *Sunda*, and in *Sumatra* it is very white, and valuable; and it might be gather'd in the Woods of *Malaca*, if look'd after, for there is enough of it. But the Frankincense is found only in *Arabia*, and *Dofar* is the Place that produces the best. Much Amber is also carry'd down the Red Sea to *India*, and all the Eastern Parts. Physicians call this *Karabe*, a Name taken from the *Arabick*, which is *Karoback*, compos'd of *Kaf*, a Straw, and *Robah*, to draw, a very proper Compound, on Account of that Quality in the Amber. On the Coast of *Melinde* is found a Sort of Gum

Arabia *produces no Metals.*

Benjamin.

Amber.

Gum very like to it, call'd *Sandaroz*. *Arabia* produces some Myrrh; tho' the greatest Quantity is brought from the other Side of the Red Sea, in *Ethiopia*, in *Africk*; and there is some of it on the Coast of *Melinde*, where the common Name of it is *Bolo*, and among the *Guzuratts* of *Cambaya*, *Regata Bolo*. The *Arabs* call it *Morro*, which is no proper Name, but taken from its Quality, and signifying bitter, because it is so in such a Degree, and thence the *Latins* adapted it to their Language. The *Persians* call it a *Morrobad*, that is, Myrrh against the Wind. Tho' a great Part of *Arabia* be barren, all the rest is fertil and plentiful, and every where abounds in that famous Medicine, our Physicians call *Schenu Anthos*, and vulgarly *Squinend*, or Camels Meat, because the Camels feed on it, and the *Spaniards* give it the Name of *Paja Mecca* Straw, as growing about *Mecca* in *Arabia*. This Region is well known to be almost square, the Sea washing Three Sides of it; on the West the Red Sea, dividing it from *Africk*; on the South, the *Indian* Ocean; and on the East the Gulph of *Persia*, or of *Ormuz*, parting it from *Persia*; and the fourth Side which is on the North, is shut in with Rivers, making it almost an Island. It seldom rains in *Arabia*, towards the Sea Coast, which is all extraordinary craggy, but not without Ports, as some have writ. Up the Inland, it rains in the proper Seasons. On that side next to *Persia*, in Summer there reigns a Wind of a very strange Quality, by the Natives call'd *Surim*, and is very near the South West, being so hot and dry, that it scorches up all it comes at, shrivels the Skin, parches the Face and Hands,

Myrrh.

Arabia *its Shape, and Boundaries.*

Strange Wind.

in

in such Sort, that a Scurf like Bran comes off them, and in short where-ever it touches the Body, feels like a Flame of Fire; and yet when it blows hardest, the Water is cooler than at any other time; and if a Man keeps in a close House, warm clad, tho' it be in Summer, and the Sun then intollerable hot, yet he feels it not, but is rather cool; and notwithstanding these unaccountable Effects of this Wind, it so softens the Strings of Lutes, or the like, that they can never be tun'd, whilst it lasts. The *Arabs* next the Sea are a very poor miserable People, most of them living on dry Fish, Dates, and Lime Juice, and therefore very many of them are troubled with the Leprosy. *Arabia* produces all Sorts of Fruit in Perfection, and an incredible Quantity of Dates; but above all great Numbers of noble Horses, whereof whole Ship Loads are carry'd over inro *India*, from *Ormuz*, and *Mascate*. The best either of *Arabia*, or *Persia*, are those of *Lasah*, a noted Province near the Island *Barhen*, or *Baharem*, and one of those the *Turk* is possess'd of in that Region, of which this may suffice, to return to *Baharon*. Arabian *Horses.*

He, after performing many memorable Exploits, in his Conquest, one Night, pursuing the Enemy he had vanquish'd, ran unexpectedly into a Bog, where he was lost, and never seen again. His People were ignorant of it, by reason of the Night; but being told of it in the Morning, search'd about carefully, without finding him. This was the End of *Baharon* when he had reign'd 23 Years, leaving a Son call'd *Yazd Gerd*. Baharon's *Death.*

CHAP.

Chap. XXX.

Of Yazd Gerd, *the Twenty Sixth King of* Persia.

Yazd Gerd. *a just Prince.*

Upon the Death of *Baharon Gur*, his Son *Yazd Gerd* succeeded in the Throne of *Persia*, who following his Father's Example, appointed his Kinsman *Narsy* supreme Governor of the Kingdom, and on this Account some reckon him the third Time as King. *Yazd Gerd* was so upright in the Administration of Justice, that no Motive could divert him from it, which gain'd him the entire Love and Affection of his Subjects. In the Fourteenth Year of his Reign, he rais'd Forces, in Order to make War on the King of *Rumestan*, but they came not to Blows, matters being accommodated between them. *Yazd Gerd* had Two Sons, the eldest call'd *Pheruz*, the younger *Hormoz*, this most belov'd by his Father, who designing to leave him his Successor, remov'd *Pheruz* from about his Person, sending him to govern the Province of *Nimrus*, to the End that being absent, he might not obstruct his Brother's Succession, and the People might be the better affected to the latter. This King dy'd after a Reign of 18 Years, leaving the Crown to his younger Son *Hormoz*; and had the Sirname of *Sepulduxt*, that is, Lover of the Soldiers.

Prefers his younger Son.

CHAP.

Chap. XXXI.

Of Hormoz, *the Twenty Seventh King of* Persia.

Hormoz the younger Son succeeded his Father *Yazd Gerd*, with the general Approbation of all Men; but they had soon Cause to repent, for being naturally wicked, he had dissembled, till possess'd of the Throne, and his Temper prevailing, he soon behav'd himself so as converted all that Love into Hatred, and Aversion. *Pheruz* the elder Brother, whom the Father had unjustly depriv'd of his Right, was inform'd of it, and laying hold of that Opportunity, made use of his Friends that had Power, many of whom assisted him, and among them was the King of *Abtelah*, to whom *Pheruz* agreed to resign the Lands of *Termed*, which are above *Karason*, between his and *Nimrus*, upon Condition he furnish'd him with Thirty Thousand Horse, with these and what other Forces he could raise, *Pheruz* enter'd *Persia*, and was met by his Brother *Hormoz*, at the Head of a numerous Army, whom he routed, took, and some Days after, put to Death. *Pheruz* reign'd but one Year, and had the Sirname of *Farzand*, that is, Son.

Hormuz *the younger Son succeeds.*

CHAP.

Chap. XXXII.

Of Pheruz, *the Twenty Eighth King of* Persia.

Pheruz *executes his Brother.*

Pheruz being possess'd of the Kingdom of *Persia*, apply'd himself to the Government, and suspecting, that his Brother *Hormoz* conspir'd against him, with Three of his Favourites, struck off all their Heads. The First Year of the Reign of *Pheruz* is cry'd up as most fortunate, as the next Seven are lamented for being most miserable, and destructive, occasion'd by a dreadful Dearth, which lasted so long, that all *Persia* was under a desolating Famine, for all the Springs were dry'd up, and the same is reported of the famous River *Jehun*, and of the *Degilah*, or *Tigris*, great Numbers of People perish'd, and the Fields were cover'd with Birds, and Beasts, that dy'd for Want of Water. *Pheruz* was much concern'd at this Calamity, and did all he could to redress it, but the Mischief was so great, that all his Care and Generosity could not put a stop to it. Considering how little all his Endeavours avail'd, he gather'd great Multitudes of People, with whom he went about the Fields, doiug Penance, and begging Mercy of God, which they continu'd for many Days, till it rain'd, the Land being moistned began to bear, and the Evil ceas'd.

Seven Years Famine.

Penance to obtain Rain.

Some Provinces complain'd to *Pheruz*, that the King of *Abtelah* molested them with Incursions.

Incursions. This was he, to whom *Pheruz* had restor'd the Lands of *Termed*, for the Succour of Thirty Thousand Men he sent him to recover *Persia*. *Athio* and *Tornamira*, write of this King of *Abtelah*, calling him of the *Eutalytas*, in whose Pits they say, *Pheruz* dy'd, giving him the Name of *Peruzas*, which is not to be thought strange, because of the Affinity there is between the *P* and *F* in the *Persian*, and *Arabick* Writing, and even in the Pronunciation. Now those they call *Eytalytas*, the *Persians* name *Abtelah*; which signifies Water of Gold, being a Nation to the Northward of *Persia*, *Pheruz* being inform'd of these Incursions, prepar'd to make War on him. *Gox Nawaz*, so the King of *Abtelah* was call'd, and signifies a skilful Musician, hearing of it, was concern'd and troubled, knowing he was inferior to the *Persians* in Power, and to the Bravery of *Pheruz*. A *Wazir* or *Vizier* of his finding him in this Perplexity, offer'd to rescue him from that Danger, if he would promise when he was dead, to be kind to his Wife and Children, for his good Service. The King promis'd, the *Wazir* took his leave, and causing his own Nose, Hands and Feet to be cut off, was left by his own Order in a Place, *Pheruz* must of Necessity pass by. There he was found by that King's Army, which was then marching, and carry'd into his Presence. *Pheruz* wondering to see him in that Condition, ask'd who he was, and how he came to be so mangled. He answer'd in doleful manner, that he had been *Wazir* to *Gox Nawaz* King of *Abtelah*, whom he had advis'd to forbear making War on *Persia*, because it would not succeed; and

Abtelah what Nation.

Great Loyalty of a Subject.

that the King was so far from giving Ear to his Advice, that for his Boldness in speaking the Truth, he had order'd him to be so butcher'd and expos'd in the Woods, where having neither Hands nor Feet to help himself, he must be devour'd by the wild Beasts. *Pheruz* astonish'd at that Account, which he believ'd to be true, comforted him, with the Hopes of speedy Revenge, for that and other Cruelties the King of *Abtelah* had been guilty of. *Pheruz* would have gone on the common way; but the *Wazir* pretending to be desirous of Revenge, told him, if he would march by his Direction, he would be very speedily with his Enemy, and surprize them. *Pheruz* order'd the Army to follow him, and he led them so well, that most of them perish'd through Hunger and Thirst, *Pheruz* with those few that surviv'd, falling into the Hands of *Gox Nawaz*, who using Mercy, set them at Liberty upon certain Conditions, one whereof was, that *Pheruz* should be oblig'd not to make War on him again, either in Person, or by his Generals. He granted every thing to obtain his Liberty, and return'd into *Persia*, where he immediately began to raise Men to renew the War. His People tho' they us'd their Endeavours, could not dissuade him. The Country of *Sistom* was at this time govern'd by *Sufarah*, a Kinsman of *Pheruz*, whom several *Persian* Historians reckon among the Kings of *Persia*, and do it twice, tho' he was the same Man, once in this Place, and again afterwards. *Pheruz* sent for this Man, whom he left to govern the Kingdom, and take care of Two Sons he had, the one call'd *Belax*, and the other *Kobad*,

Pheruz *taken, and releas'd.*

bad, with Instructions how to behave himself, and then set forwards himself, taking along with him an only Daughter he had, of singular Beauty, and excellently qualify'd. Being come near to *Abtelah*, *Gox Nawaz* sent to require he would observe what had been stipulated between them, which *Pheruz* would not hearken to. *Gox Nawaz* had dug many large Pits full of Water in the way, so artificially cover'd, that no Man would imagine there had been any such thing; and finding *Pheruz* positive to carry on the War, retir'd as if he fled, drawing *Pheruz*'s Forces, which pursu'd towards the Place where the Pits were, into which *Pheruz* himself, and most of his Men fell, and there perish'd; such as escap'd that End being made Prisoners, and among them *Pheruz*'s beautiful Daughter. *Sufarah* who as has been said, was left to govern *Persia*, having Intelligence of his Disaster, gather'd a considerable Army, and marching towards *Abtelah*, oblig'd that King to accept of Peace, which was concluded, upon Condition, that all the Prisoners and Plunder should be restor'd, as also *Pheruz*'s Daughter, with whom *Gox Nawaz* parted much against his Will, as being in Love with her. *Sufarah* return'd to *Persia*, where he enthron'd *Belax*, eldest Son to *Pheruz*, and *Kobad* the younger, who aspir'd to the Crown, being offended, went away to serve the King of *Turkestam*. *Pheruz* reign'd Twenty Six Years.

Invades Abtelah.

Is lost with his Army.

Chap. XXXIII.

of Belax, *the Twenty Ninth King of* Persia.

Kobad *Brother to* Belax *goes away to* Turkestam.

Belax the Elder Son of *Pheruz*, being as was said proclaim'd King of *Persia*, his younger Brother *Kobad* was disappointed, and went away to *Turkestam*, attended by *Bzarmeher* the Son of *Sufarah*, his Bosom Friend. This *Bzarmeher* was marry'd, and had his Family at *Nixabur*, wherefore he desir'd *Kobad* to take that Road, because he could there entertain and divert him, which was accordingly done. *Bzarmeher* among the rest had a very beautiful Daughter, call'd *Zarmeher*, with whom *Kobad* was much taken. Her Father perceiving, he offer'd her to him, which was accepted, and they were marry'd. She conceiv'd, and was afterwards deliver'd of a Son, who bore the Name of *Anuxiron*, or *Nauxirvon*, for it is pronounc'd both ways. Some time after the Wedding, *Kobad* leaving his Wife in her Fathers House, went on to *Turkestam*, where he put himself into the Service of *Hha Khon Chiny*, who then reign'd there, and continu'd in it Four Years. Those being expir'd, *Hha Khon* to reward his Service, gave him a good Army, with which he march'd towards *Persia*, against his Brother King *Belax*, who then govern'd to the Satisfaction of all his Subjects. In his way, *Kobad* call'd at *Nixabur*, where his Wife *Zarmeher* resided, with whom he stay'd some Days, very well pleas'd with her, and with his Son, whom by reason of his Absence he had

Marries and has a Son.

had not seen before. When he was about setting out from *Nixabur*, Advice was brought him, that his Brother *Belax* had dy'd suddenly, after reigning Five Years. *King* Belax *dies.*

Nixabur is a Province subject to the Crown of *Persia*, lying between *Karason*, *Uzbek*, and *Tatar*, a large Country, and full of great Deserts and barren Sands, which are confidently reported to be in continual Motion, like boiling Water. The *Persian* Histories inform us, that *Teymur lang*, by us call'd *Tamerlan*, of whom I shall speak elsewhere, caus'd 400000 Persons to be slaughter'd in this Province, in one Day, which is not to be wonder'd at, considering what is said of his Cruelty. In this Kingdom of *Nixabur*, are found those Blew Stones, that are worn in Rings, by us call'd *Turky* Stones, and with good Reason, because *Nixabur* borders on *Turkestam*. Having mention'd Stones, it will not be amiss in this Place, briefly to deliver what occurs to me concerning them. No Province of *Persia*, produces any precious Stones, tho' some have writ the contrary, unless we give that Name to these *Turky* Stones, which the *Persians* put some Value upon, but small; or else to the *Bezoars*, of which the excellentest and best are found in *Persia*. The *Persians* call any Stone *Sangh*, and the *Arabs*, *Ager*; but the *Bezoar* Stone the *Persians* by way of Preference name *Pazahar*, which signifies an Antidote, or more exactly a Defence, or a Restorative against Poyson; from *Zahar*, the general Name for all Poyson, and *Pa* a Defence, or Restorative; and the *Arabick* wanting the Letter *P*, they substitute *F* or *B* in its Place, and instead of *Pazahar*, say *Bazahar*, which we with some Corrup- Nixabur *Province.* *Moving Sands.* Tamerlan's *Cruelty.* Turky *Stones.* Bezoar *Stones the best.*

tion pronounce *Bezoar.* This is the true meaning of the Word, which is not deriv'd from its being sold in the *Bazar* or Market, for they never were sold there. In the Province of *Parz* or *Persia*, there is a well known Territory, call'd *Sthabanon*, from a City in it of the same Name, standing Three Days Journey from the City *Lara*, or *Lar*. Its Fields abound in a Sort of Herb, very like to *Zafron*, here abundance of Sheep graze, and in their Bellies these Stones are found, which being better, and of more Excellency than all others are so highly valu'd, that the King of *Persia* keeps Officers there to secure all the Stones for his Use, which are above a certain Weight. The same was practis'd by the King of *Pegu* in his Dominions, in Relation to precious Stones. It easily appears when those Sheep, which differ but little from ours have any Stone in them, because according as they have one or more, great or small, they are proportionably sick, or well, heavy, or active. That Pasture is the efficient Cause of those Stones; for the Sheep, if remov'd from thence, breed none in other Parts. It is remarkable, that all the Inhabitants of this Province of *Sthabanon*, are bald headed, which the *Persians* call *Kachel.* This being observ'd by a Servant of the King of *Persia*, *Scha Abas*, he begg'd of his Master, as a Reward of all his Service, that every *Kachel*, that is, bald Pate in the Kingdom, should be oblig'd to pay him a *Scherafim*, being about a Ducat. *Scha Abas* look'd upon his Request as ridiculous, and as such granted it, but the Petitioner who was no Fool, took such Care in collecting of it, that he soon became rich; and the King

Sthabanon *City, and Territory.*

Comical Tax on bald Pates.

King being inform'd of the Mystery, which before he understood not, was much amaz'd, but could not recall what was done.

Besides these *Bezoar* Stones of *Persia*, there are others in *India*, and those of the Island *de las Vacas*, or of Cows, near *Manar*, between *Ceylon*, and the Coast of *Coromandel*, are the second best. These breed in Goats, and Thirteen of them have been found in one of those Beasts, and not small ones. In this Island it was sufficiently made out, that the Pasture was the Matter of those Stones; for a dreadful Inundation of the Sea Water hapning in the Year 1585, all along that Coast, this Island of Cows was quite overflown, and being full of Sea Water, the Pasture was spoil'd. The Goats being then carry'd to other Ports, bred no Stones; but some Years after the Land recover'd, the Salt being spent, and produc'd good Pasture, and the Goats being carry'd again into the Island, bred Stones as before. The Third in Goodness are the Bezoars of the South, I mean of *Malaca*, *Pam*, *Patene*, *Borneo*, *Maniarmacem*, and other Ports, where there are great Numbers of them. But the best, as has been said, are those of *Persia*, which I have seen work wonderful Effects in Cases of Poison. The Bezoar Stones are sometimes counterfeited, but it is easy to know them, which may be done two ways; the one, taking into ones Hand a little Lime work'd up with Water, and sprinkling the Stone with it; if the Lime turns yellow, without wasting the Stone, it is not false. A better and surer way is, to weigh the Stone, and put it into a Porringer full of Water, there let it lie six or seven Hours, then

Bezoar Stones the second best.

The Pasture breeds them.

Third Sort.

Counterfeit Bezoar how known.

then take it out, and weigh it; if it continues entire, and weighs no more than before, it is good and right, but if it breaks, dissolves, or weighs more, it is a Counterfeit. The Bezoar Stone is successfully us'd against all Sorts of Poison, whether inward, or outward, and in short against all Distempers. The *Persians* take it by way of Prevention, from the 20th of *March* forward, which they call *Neu Rus*, that is, New Day, because they reckon that the beginning of the Solar Year. At *Mexico* in *America*, by the Natives call'd *Tenus titlan*, signifying the City of *Tunas*, being the Fruit born by the Tree the Cochineel breeds on, I saw Bezoar Stones enough, which were they as good as they are great, would be of an inestimable Value; but their Virtue being little or none, they are scarce worth any thing. The largest Bezoar Stone I ever saw in *Persia*, that was perfectly good, and I have seen many, weigh'd 7 Meticales and a half, which amounts to Two Ounces and a half, little over or under.

Bezoar of Mexico not good.

From the Top of a Mountain, in the same Province of *Sthabanon*, and the Clefts of a Rock, issues a Sort of Liquor, which the King of *Persia* appoints Persons of Reputation to secure, and the whole Quantity gather'd in a Year amounts to about Thirty *Meticales*, little more or less, which is about Five Ounces. The *Persians* call it *Momnahy Khony*, that is, precious Mummy produc'd by the Earth, which is wholly preserv'd for the King; and they say, this is an almost miraculous Antidote against all Sorts of Poison, and for healing up all inward Ruptures, and even the Fractures of Limbs.

A precious Balsam.

The

The King of *Persia* makes Presents of very small Quantities of it, yet highly valu'd to the Princes he is in Amity with. Therefore the *Persians* say their Kings enjoy Health, by means of this *Momnahy Kony*, and the *Turks* with their *Terra sigillata*.

Other Antidotes.

The Eastern *Mahometans* make use of another Antidote, by them call'd *Pazar Khony*, signifying the Antidote coming from the Earth, being a Sort of Bitumen, found at *Moxulpatan* in *India*, very wholsome, but not like the last. There are many other Stones breeding in the Craws of Creatures, and of singular Virtues; as that taken from the Ape, very like the Bezoar; that which comes from Deer, brought from *Solor*, as large as a Tennis Ball, crusty and scaly without, spungy and soft within, having a little bitter; but beyond them all is the Porcupines Stone, bred in the Maw of that Creature, which is of such Virtue and Excellency, that none but those who have had the Experience, can give entire Credit to it. Of this I am an Eye Witness, having seen the Effects of it in several Places, at sundry times, and particularly at the City of *Cochim*, in the Years 1590, and 1591, where the Governor that then was, spent Two Porcupines Stones he had, in the Service of the poor, and needy, doing Wonders against a Disease more dangerous and violent than the Plague, which reign'd Two whole Years, and carry'd off People in Four or Five Hours. This Distemper was a *Cholerica Passio*, by the *Indians* call'd *Moxxy*, and by the *Portugueses Mordexim*, being a Sort of Colick. The Water this Stone has been infus'd in, is good in

Porcupines Stones.

all

all Diseases, and may be given with Safety, except to Women with Child, to whom it may be prejudicial, by reason of its excessive Bitterness. These Stones are found in *Syaka*, a Kingdom very near that of *Malaca*, and are sold like the Bezoars of that Country, by the Weight they call *Mazes*, each *Maz* being an 8th Part and a Half of an Ounce, a Grain over or under. To be satisfy'd, whether the Creatures these Stones breed in, answer'd the Name that is given them, I caus'd one to be brought me from *Syaka*, when I was at *Malaca*, and found it was a perfect Porcupine, no way differing from the common Sort. There is another Sort of Stone in the East, greenish without, but white when pounded, call'd of the Islands, or of *Cananor*, which is also Medicinal.

Another Medicinal Stone.

Tho' the finding of precious Stones be so generally known, especially in *India*; I will briefly mention how and where some of them are had, that I may not be thought tedious. The Diamants of *Bisnaga* and *Narsinga*, are dug out of the Rocks, and those we have from *Malaca* are taken out of the Water. *Lave* is a Kingdom and River of the same Name, subject to the King of *Maniar Masen*, where in the Woods grows the true *Rota*, being a Sort of Stalks, like Vine Branches of great Value, generally from 50 to 100 Fadom in Length, allowing Ten Spans to a Fadom. This Kingdom is on the South Coast of the great Island of *Borneo*, whence comes the true and pure Camphir, call'd *Kapur* and *Kaphur*, throughout all the East, *Arabia*, and *Persia*. It is scrap'd from the Heart of the Trunk of the Tree, it grows on like the

Diamants.

Rota.

Camphir of Borneo.

the Rozin on the Pine Tree, with a Sort of Iron Claws, and is thrown into clear Water, which being often chang'd, it fines by Degrees, till perfectly pure; and such is that a *Sumatra*, but that of *China* is foul, and of little Value, compar'd with this. It is generally reckned cold, I know not upon what Grounds, there being so much to be alledg'd against it. But let us leave this, which belongs not to us, and return to the River *Lave*, whose Stream is extraordinary rapid, and the Natives along its Banks very poor, and miserable. These People when the River is much swollen, and impetuous, on Account of the Floods falling from the Mountains, cast themselves from a certain Place into the Water, and diving down to the bottom, with each of them a *Schareta*, that is, half a Coco Shell, which when they come to the Ground in the middle of the River they fill, and clap close to their Breast, that the Water may not carry it away, then they come up, and for the most Part get to Land half a League below the Place where they leap'd in, where they find the Kings Officers, who ply all along the Shore, and they must not take the *Schareta*, which as I said is like a small wooden Bowl from their Breast, till one of those Officers is by, who sees what there is in it, and sometimes they find several good Diamants, and other times more. All that they take is for the King, and the Fishers have some small matter for their Pains, but they now and then make their Advantage unobserv'd. Thus all these Diamants go to the King, and from him to the Merchants, who carry them to *Patane*, *Pam*, *Sunda*,

Fishing for Diamants.

da, and other Parts, and some few to *Malaca*, whither they us'd all to be sent formerly; but since the Dealers all refus'd to trade there, by reason of the many Wrongs the Governors have done them. This is the Method of fishing for Diamants at *Lave*, to which Place Reason shows they are brought down by the Floods, from the Mountains that produce them.

Rubies and Saphires. The Rubies by the *Persians* and *Arabs*, call'd *Yacut*, come from the Kingdoms of *Kevelam* and *Kablam*, being the same we have from *Pegu*, and the finest; from which some Kingdoms they also bring Saphires. The Kingdom of *Siam* also affords Rubies, but neither so many, nor so good; and those of *China* are the worst of all, as being soft, and of a pale Colour. I forbear to speak of Spinets, Garnets, Amethists, Cornelians, Agates, Milk, and Blood Stones, and Cats Eyes, the best of which are in *Ceylon*, because there are none of these in *Persia*. Nor *Coco Stone* is there any of the Coco Stone, which comes from *Jaoa*, there being but one in a Coco, but not in every one. It is small and round, not unlike a common Fishes Eye in Shape and Bigness, smooth, of a good Luster, and extraordinary hard. It is said to have some Virtue, and is worn in Rings, like a Pearl. The Hardness of this Stone puts me in mind of the Ignorance of those, who contrary to good Sense, positively maintain the invincible Firmness of the Diamant, whereas it *Diamants will break.* breaks like any other Stone, still granting that it is harder than any of them; and yet, tho' it be never so hard and strong, I shall not think it so safe from breaking be-

tween

tween the Hammer and the Anvil, as under a Knife or such like Instrument dipp'd in Goats Blood. I remember there is a Sort of Herb along the Coast of *Coromandel*, as also at *Malaca*, and it grows about the Streets, being small and little regarded; if the small tender Roots of it be chew'd, so that the Teeth remain full of its Juice and Moisture, and than any Stone, tho' never so hard, be taken into the Mouth, and chew'd, it will dissolve into Dust so easily, as neither to hurt the Teeth, nor give the least Trouble, which I have often try'd my self, and seen done by others; a Quality wherein we ought to admire the Works of our Creator, who has given it such Efficacy. No less wonderful is another in the Island of *Ceylon*, which was presented to a Governor of *Columbo's* Wife, being much like an Ear of Wheat, but black and bearded. This had such Virtue for facilitating the Birth, that if it was not immediately taken away from the Thigh, as soon as the Child was brought forth, it would draw the very Bowels after it, several Experiments whereof were made, and I my self am Witness to what hapned to the Owner herself with it. She being with Child, this Plant was restor'd to her, by some Person it had been lent to, and she put it into a Box, which a Slave thrust under her Mistresses Bed, who soon miscarry'd, and there follow'd such a Flux of Blood, that there was no stopping it, and she was at Deaths Door, whereupon it was thought fit to give her the Blessed Sacrament, and something being wanted out of the Box, they open'd and found the Herb or Plant, which

Herb dissolving Stones.

Another to facilitate the Birth.

which made them recollect, whether the Force of it might be such as to affect the sick Woman at that Distance; they carry'd it away to another House, immediately the Flux of Blood ceas'd, and she perfectly recover'd. This hapned at *Goa*, and I was present. I have not mention'd the Names of these Plants, because the first has none, and they who had the other knew not the Name of it, which I could not learn, tho' I endeavour'd it afterwards, when I was in *Ceylon*. I pass by another, which thrown into a Vessel of Water consolidates it, as Milk is by Runnet, and others of wonderful Quality found in the East, because these Things are foreign from the matter in Hand.

Lapis Judaicus.

To return to the Stones in *Persia* and *Cambaya*, is found that our Physicians call *Lapis Judaicus*, and the *Persians* and *Arabs*, *Ager Alyud*, that is, Stone of *Juda*, or of the *Jew*; as also *Zeytun Ben Israel*, the Olive of the Son of *Israel*; because it is very like an Olive. *Persia* also produces *Ager Armery*, that is, the *Armenus Lapis* of our Physicians, otherwise call'd *Lapis Lazuli*. *Ager* as has been said before in *Arabick*, signifies a Stone, and thence came the Name of the River in *Spain* call'd *Guadalagera*, which should be *Wedal Ager*, that is, the Stony River. In the Gulph of *Persia*, near the Island *Gerun*, or *Ormuz*, there are Quarries under Water, whence they take much Stone; us'd by the Natives for building, because it is very soft, and they call it *Sangh May*, that is, Fish Stone because it grows in the Sea, and is soft, but this is most

Quarry in the Sea, that grows.

most observable, that it grows as fast as taken away. The same is found in the Sea of *Malaca*, where the *Portugueses* us'd it, not so much for building, as for making of Lime, which they say is excellent. Before I conclude with this Chapter, I will mention Three or Four Things worth observing, that occur to me. The first of an Ape I saw, that had a Bezoar Stone found in his Thigh, which being broken to see the Center or Foundation of it, for they have all something that they grow about, as a Straw, Herb, bit of Stick, and sometimes a Date Stone, the Center of this was found to be the Head of an Arrow. Nor was it unlike to this that hapned at *Ormuz*, where intending to make Tryal of a *Schamama* of Amber, being a Ball not made by Art, but form'd by Nature, pricking it with a hot Needle, it split in two, and in the midst of it, I found a small Beak, and some Feathers, with some bits of small Shells, which did not only surprize me, but many others who were well acquainted with such Things. I forgot, when I spoke above of the Swines Stone to mention, that a Citizen of *Cochim* desiring to borrow one, of the Governor I there spoke of, a Woman Slave taking it out of the Vessel, where he kept it in Infusion, as soon as she had it in her hand, it fell into small bits, tho' she did not handle it roughly, nor was the Stone so soft as to be dissolv'd by the Water. Upon Enquiry the Cause of it appear'd to be, that the Slave had then her Monthly Courses on her; such is the Force of that Venom, and no Wonder, for at *Goa* in a Neighbours Garden,

Head of an Arrow in a Bezoar Stone

Feathers and Beak in Amber.

I saw

I saw a most stately Tree wither away and die, in a few Days, only because some Linnen that had been infected with that Filth, was hung on it to dry; and it was not the Weather that made it wither, for there is but one Tree in all *India*, which looses its Leaves in the rainy Season, which as well as its Fruit is call'd *Ambare*. Let us now proceed to *Kobad*, who has been long laid aside.

Chap. XXXIV.

Of Kobad *the Thirtieth King of* Persia.

WE said before, that the News of *Belax*'s Death, was brought to his Brother *Kobad* to *Nixabur*, whilst he stay'd at his Father in Laws House, diverting himself with his Wife *Zarmeher*, and his Son *Anuxiron*; and being at the same time invited to receive the Crown, because his Brother had left no Issue, he set out speedily with his Forces for *Persia*, and was there honourably receiv'd. *Sufarah*, as has been said, still govern'd the Kingdom, and was generally respected and belov'd by all Men, for his good Qualities; but *Kobad* was not well pleas'd to see him in such Authority, and being offended at it, sent for one *Schapur*, a bold and renowned Commander, who liv'd remote from Court, whom he acquainted with his Design, giving him Orders to kill *Sufarah*. *Schapur* a few Days after, went to visit him, and picking a quarrel in Discourse, slew him.

Sufarah *murder'd.*

In the tenth Year of the Reign of *Kobad*, one *Mezdahk* came into *Persia*, from the County of *Sthahar*, and began to propagate a new Sect, adding fresh Follies to the ancient. He assum'd the Title of a Prophet, pretending that the Fire spoke to him, and discover'd high Mysteries, imposing the Belief of it on the vulgar Sort, by means of some jugling Tricks. He would have all Things in common, Goods, Women, Children, and the Rest; prohibited killing any thing that had Life, and many other Absurdities. Some, and those no small Number, tho' they were sensible of the Falshood of his Doctrine, follow'd him, for the sake of a Lewd Life, and among them was *Kobad*, the King, who highly commended him, and his Followers, honouring and respecting him, as a holy Man. The Great, and Wise Men of the Nation considering the King's Danger, address'd him, desiring he would desist, and either banish, or put *Mezdahk* to death. After several Remonstrances, to which he never would give Ear, they unanimously depos'd, and secur'd him in Prison; enthroning *Jamash*, a near Kinsman of his, who is by some reckon'd among the Kings of *Persia*. *Kobad* being secur'd, the *Persians* design'd to seize, and kill *Mezdahk*, but could not, by Reason of the Multitude that follow'd him, and the great Care he took of his Person; however, he fail'd not of his Deserts, as we shall soon see. *Kobad* had a most beautiful Sister, with whom he fell in Love, and was marry'd to her, by Dispensation from *Mezdahk*, who was not nice in point of Conscience. She seeing her Brother and Husband secur'd, and prevail'd upon by this double Tye of Kindred, contriv'd how to rescue him. The Method

Mezdahk *broaches a new Sect.*

Kobad *embraces it.*

Is depos'd, and secur'd

she pitch'd upon, was to dress herself in the richest Apparel and Jewels she had, which added much Lustre to her Beauty, and thus went to the Prison in which *Kobad* was detain'd, where, what with Gifts, and what with unlawful Promises, she prevail'd upon the Guards to permit her to lye there that Night. Her Bed was brought, which in the Morning she roll'd up, with *Kobad* in it, and so caus'd it to be carried to her House, she staying behind to amuse the Guard, whilst he made his Escape, as he did with such Privacy and Expedition, that they never miss'd him, till it was too late. Being got out of the Dominions of *Persia*, he made to those of *Abtelah*, designing to procure Forces of that King, to recover his Crown. That King gave him a favourable Reception, and tho' not immediatly, yet some Years after, furnish'd him with 30000 Horse, with which Force, and others he gather'd, *Kobad* enter'd *Persia*, at that Time in an Uproar, it being hotly controverted, whether he should be receiv'd peaceably, or as an Enemy. It was at last concluded to lay aside their Arms, and submit, and the first that put himself into his Hands was *Jamasp*, to whom the Government had been committed, when he was secur'd. *Kobad* rewarded his Submission, by Pardoning, and Fogetting all past Offences. The Rest of his Life he spent in Reforming the Government. He was addicted to Building; founded the Cities of *Bardah*, *Guania*, and others of less Note, and died a Natural Death, when he had Reign'd 43 Years.

Makes his Escape.

Is restor'd.

His Death.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Kesere Anuxiron, *the* 31st *King of* Persia.

KESERE *Anuxiron*, or *Nauxirvan*, for it is writ both ways, Son to *Kobad*, by his Wife *Zarmeker*, succeeded him in the Throne; and being a virtuous Prince, was much belov'd by his own Subjects, and Strangers. After Redressing all Abuses, which he seriously apply'd himself to, the first thing he did, was to condemn *Mezdahk*, and all his Followers to Death, executing it with such Rigor, that they were soon utterly extirpated, tho' there was an almost infinite Multitude of them. *Persia* being deliver'd from those pernicious People, he contriv'd to have his Dominions govern'd with more Ease to the King, dividing them all into four *Wazir*, or *Vizierships*, that is, Governments, each of which he put into the Hands of able and trusty Persons, ally'd to him in Blood. The first of these Governments contain'd the Countries of *Karazon*, *Sagistan*, *Kermon*, and *Maurenahar*; the 2d, those of *Hispahon*, or *Ispahan*, *Kom*, *Aderbaion*, and *Armenia*; the 3d, *Pars*, or *Persia*, properly so call'd, and *Ahwa*; and the 4th, *Hyerak* beyond *Babylon*, and the Lands of *Rumestan*, that is, *Greece*.

Mezdahk and his Sect extirpated.

Governments of Persia.

Having thus setled his Affairs, he rais'd Forces, and subdu'd the Countries of *Tackorstar*, *Zabulstam*, *Kabulstam*, *Juganian*, and *Abtelah*. Whilst he was busy about these Conquests, *Kha Khon Chiny*, King of *Tatar*, or *Tartary*, invaded his Dominions, with a mighty Army, and possess'd himself of *Barschax*, *Ferana*, *Kaix*, *Nesaf*, *Samarkand*, and *Bokara*. The two last

Kesere's Conquests, and Losses.

last Countries nam'd, having given Birth to two famous Men, it will be proper, in this Place to give some short Account of both the Provinces, and Persons.

Tamerlan born at Samorzand.

Samarkand, a most noble City, in the Country of *Maurenahar*, built according to the *Persians*, by *Alexander* the Great, Son to *Philip* of *Macedon*, was the Native Country of the renowned *Teymur Langh*, whom we commonly call *Tamerlan*. He was nobly descended, and no Carrier, nor Shepherd, nor Robber, nor of any such Original, as is pretended; but a Soldier by Profession, and of the Blood Royal of *Chinguisshkan*, King of the *Tartars*, of whom something shall be said hereafter. Tho' his Person was nothing graceful, as being lame of an Arm, and a Leg, and blind of one Eye, yet by his Valour he came to Lord it over the greatest Part of the East. To those that submitted he shew'd Mercy, and exercis'd the utmost Cruelty on such as oppos'd him. His proper Name was *Teymur*, and he had the additional Nick-name of *Langh*, which signifies, Lame, and we corruptly call him *Tamerlan*. He was also call'd *Teymur Khan*, that is, Lord, or King *Teymur*; and the *Persians* frequently give him the Title of *Sahaybkharon*, importing as much as Lord, or Disposer of Fortune. The *Persians* have a very curious Book, in no vulgar Stile, of the Life and Actions of *Teymur*. He had several Sons, who at his Death divided his Dominions, till Time overthrew that Monarchy. The Great *Mogol*, one of the mightiest Monarchs in the World, according to the Notion of the *Persians*, who say there are only five Kings in being, those of *Turky*, *Persia*, *Tartary*, *China*, and the *Mogol*, whose Dominion extends from the River *Ganges* to the King-

Kingdom of *Makron*, on the Gulph of *Persia*, comprehending many very large Kingdoms and Provinces, most of them wealthy, and civiliz'd. He is a *Mahometan*, but of a different Sort from all the Rest, as following no particular Sect, but pretending to make a New one. He causes himself to be worship'd by his Subjects, as something Divine, has always certain Clerks about him, whose whole Business is to write down all he says and does; resides one part of the Year at *Lahor*, a great and populous City, and the other at *Agra*, not inferior to the former, and both Capitals of two noble Kingdoms, up the Inland of *India*; and five or six Kings, his Subjects generally attend him at Court. He constantly keeps a sort of Fair, thrice in a Year, within his own Palace, to which none but Women are admitted, amounting to above 2000, all of them of Quality, and many Wives to the greatest Men, with a strong Guard of *Eunuchs*, and he, for his Diversion, plays the Broker of all that is there brought and sold, being Things of very considerable Value, and has a certain Allowance *per Cent* for Brokerage. Then at the End of the Fair, which lasts eight Days, he presents her he likes best with all his Gettings. The *Mogol* gave a very rich String of Beads to the Son of a Favorite, and his Foster Brother, who was a great General, call'd *Azys Kokah*, well known in *India*, in my Time, for his extraordinary Valour in the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Cambaya*, and *Sinde*; call'd by another Name *Nababo*, which is a Title of Honour and Dignity. The *Mogol*, as has been said, had given his Son the String of Beads, who presented it as a precious Jewel, to a Lady he was in Love with. She going to the Fair,

The Mogol

Note. *This was when the Author writ, but is since alter'd.*

Fair of Women.

carried it with her, where that Prince saw, and knew it, and therefore disgrac'd the Youth, judging him unworthy of his Esteem, who so little valu'd his Favours. There lyes no Objection against calling these Beads; for the *Mahometans* and *Gentiles* use them after their Manner. *Galaladin Akbar* [*this was the* Mogol reigning *at the Time when the Author writ*] keeps abundance of Women, brought from all Parts of his Dominions. The beautifullest of them live in a separate Apartment, guarded by *Eunuchs*, and no Man is to pass along the Street it joyns to, on Pain of Death. The King, when he thinks fit, walks along the Galleries of that Apartment, and they being lodg'd in private Chambers, like Cels, when he passes by, come to their Doors, to make the *Sumbaya*, that is, to do him Reverence. He views them in his Way, and throws his Handkercheif to her he likes best, which she keeps, to return him at Night, this being his Method of chusing her he has a Mind to. This Monarch's Wealth, and Treasure is inestimable, and his Power very great; for he generally has above 200000 Horse in the Field, and almost an equal number of Servants, and Hangers on follow the Army, besides the constant Garrisons in several Parts of his Dominions, and the Foot are never reckon'd, as being innumerable. He had three Sons, among whom he divided his Dominions, two of whom are living. The Eldest, call'd *Xequh Patscha*, who made War on his Father, tho' they are since agreed; and the Youngest, whose Name is *Sabel Xa Patscha*; *Pary Patscha*, the second of them died a natural Death, in the Year 1602. The *Mogols*, being true *Tartars*, and descended of them, are a warlike haughty People, think them-

The Mogol's Seraglio.

His Wealth and Power.

Mogols, who they are.

themselves the bravest Men in the World, and generally fight on Horseback, causing themselves to be bound to their Horses when they engage, for the more Safety. Their Weapons are a Lance, and a *Cofo*, that is a Shield, or Buckler, *Turkish* Bows and Arrows, Muskets, Cannon, Coats of Mail, Cymiters, and the like. They are addicted to Gluttony, fond of Wine, and very sensual. As soon as the married Men perceive their Wives are with Child, they have no more to do with them, looking upon it as abominable, and therefore upbraid the *Portugueses* with it, as a Reproach, using this Work *Bethchoch*, which signifies, one that lies with his own Daughter. They are fair of Complexion, with Red in their Faces. I must forbear to say more of them, that I may return to the History.

Avicen *born at* Bokara *in* Uzbek.

But I must first speak of the other Man, born in the City of *Bokara*, in the Province of *Uzbek*, and that was the famous Physician, *Avicen*. His proper Name was *Boaly*, and so the *Persians*, who highly value his Writings, call him; but his whole Title is, *Scheque Reis Boaly Sina*, or *Eben Sina*, signifying, the Lord *Boaly*, Son to *Sina*; and from this last Expression *Eben Sina*, I am of Opinion, we have by Corruption made the Name of *Avicen*. This great Man's Life is so well known that it will be needless to repeat it. He was a Noble Man; but not Prince of *Uzbek*, nor born at *Cordova*, nor a *Spaniard*, and writ much more than we have of his, particularly a Volume containing 20 Books of Musick, which the *Persians* call *Musiquy Boaly*, that is, *Boaly*'s Musick, which is extraordinary ingenious and artificial, and he compos'd it, to shew his Ability, on Occasion of the Lamen-

tation he heard in a Mosque, for a dead Man. He chose rather to write all his Works in *Arabick* than in his Mother *Persian* Tongue, because the *Arabick* was more universal, and elegant. The *Persians* tell wonderful Stories of his Wit, which they extol, as more than human; but they blame him, for having an ill Opinion of their *Mahometan* Sect. I cannot but admire at those, who call all Physicians *Barbarians*, that are not *Greeks*, or *Latins*, as being ignorant of the Extent of the World, and what it contains, what they know of it being much less than what they are Strangers to. There have been and still are in *Persia*, *Arabia*, and *India*, many Physicians, so excellent in their Art, that they are fit to be Professors in any Country. If I have been any thing tedious in this Particular, the Reader may excuse me, for we must not always write of Wars and Conquests, and if he delights in them, he shall have enough in the second Part: I must therefore observe, that the *Arabs*, *Persians*, and Eastern Gentiles, especially those of *India*, in the Lands of *Decan*, *Cuncan*, *Balagate*, and *Multan*, that is, in the Country of *Lahor*, have the Knowledge of, and practice Physick, in the same Manner as the *Greecks* and *Latins*, or with very little Difference, dividing it into three Sects, which are the *Empirick*, the *Methodick*, and the *Rational*; and in most other Countries, tho' never so barbarous, they have Physicians, more or less skillful, as I shall soon show. The *Persians* and *Arabs* call one that is a Physician and Philosopher, *Alym*, and an Empirick, *Tabib*; adding the Title from the Country where they studied, as *Akim Mesery*, a Physician of *Grand Cairo*; *Akim Schirazy*, a Physician

Physicians in the East

sician of *Schyras*, as we say, a Doctor of *Padua*, *Paris*, or *Salamanca*; and since they follow *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Avicen*, and others, it is needless to speak of their Method of Curing, only that they seldom let Blood. The *Persians* are so much addicted to the Use of Physick, that besides all the publick Apothecaries Shops, which are as many as the Physicians, for every Doctor has his own Apothecary, every private Man that is able, has his private Shop at home, so plentifully furnish'd, and with such excellent Drugs, that it were to be wish'd our Apothecaries were so well stor'd. They there call them by the Name of *Attar*. And whereas we find it written in *Alfonso de Albuquerque's* Commentaries, that *Coaia Attar* defended the Island of *Ormuz* against him, the Reader is to take Notice, that it should be *Atah*, which was his proper Name. The *Persians* have another more honourable Name for Physicians, which is *Mulak*, and signifies Master, or Teacher, either of their Religion, or of any speculative Science; and I have known Physicians, Astrologers, and Mathematicians so call'd, as *Mulak Jacab*, *Mulak Kodbadia*, *Mulak Ezahk*, and many more. This Word *Mulak* is *Arabick*, and the same as *Muley* us'd by the People of *Barbary*, tho' they have there made it to denote higher Honour and Dignity. I said this Title was only given to Masters of Sciences; because Masters in Arts are call'd *Osta*, or *Ostah*. The *Persians* have another Sort of Physicians, which are Women, whom they generally call *Dayah*, and these cure Women, and Children, a Custom so fixt, that they seldom call any other Physican to them. They make use of all our Physical Simples, *Persia* and *Arabia* being plentifully fur-

Apothecaries.

Mulak, *or* Muley, *the same.*

Women Physicians.

furnish'd with them all, besides many others we have not of our own, as the true *Amomum*, *Rhubarb*, *Spica*, *Senna*, *Costus*, *Castor*, *Turbith*, and a thousand more. In *India* there are Physicians, among whom those call'd *Pandytos*, are Learned, and able Philosophers, and I have often heard them dispute with our Divines and Physicians, about natural Things, and speak well to the Purpose, and that is the Meaning of the Word *Pandyto*. These are taught in publick Schools they have up the Country, and their Doctrine and Science is written in a Language different from the Vulgar. Another Sort are Empiricks, but both are Apothecaries, as well as Physicians, and when they go to visit a Patient carry along with them a little Bag, and a Glass with the common Medicines, and leave the sick Person behind what he is to take. They have some Medecines of wonderful Effect, in several Cases. In *Molaca*, *Pam*, *Peru*, *Patane*, *Sumatra*, *Sunda*, *Java*, *Borneo*, and all those Southern Countries and Islands, the Women practice Physick, and are call'd *Babu*, signifying a Physician. Their Method is as barbarous as their way of living, for they reduce all Distempers to two Sorts, distinguish'd by these Names, *Capiala*, being every kind of Fever, and *Takana*, signifying, a Disease caus'd by the Air, and whereas in the *Malayan* Language, all Medicines are call'd *Uba*, they presently have Recourse to *Uba Tacana*, and *Uba Capiala*; besides a thousand several Sorceries, Ceremonies, and Inventions, which provoke Laughter, and sometimes cost dear. The *Chineses* have Physicians, and tho' I have seen some of them Methodical, the greater number are Empiricks; and some of them follow the

Indian *Physicians.*

Practice

Practice of *Albucaziz*, altogether by Fire, bating that instead of Iron, they cauterize with burning dry'd Herbs. It is Time we leave this Digression, and return to *Kesere Anuxiron*.

Hormoz, *Son to* Anuxiron *forces the* Tartars *to return home.*

He being inform'd of the Irruption made by *Hha Khon Chiny*, sent his Son *Hormoz* against him, with all the Forces that could be gather'd, who marching as expeditiously as was possible, incamp'd at a small Distance from him, whence he harrass'd him in such manner, by Stratagems, Alarms, and Skirmishes, that, after much Damage receiv'd, he drew off in a Consternation, quitting all he had gain'd, and *Hormoz* return'd to *Persia*, well satisfy'd with the Honour of this Success, which was not small. The War with *Hha Khon*, King of *Tartar*, being ended, Advice was brought, that *Kaled Ben Julas Guasanii*, the King of *Rumestan's* General, had invaded the Lands of *Manzar*, King of *Arabia*, his Subject, and after making great Havock and Slaughter, in which were some Kindred of *Manzar*, was going off with a considerable Booty. *Kesere Anuxiron* sent an Embassador to complain of this Wrong to the King of *Rumestan*, demanding Satisfaction, and that *Kaled* should be punish'd; but the Emperor made no Account of his Embassy. Hereupon *Kesere Anuxiron* march'd with his Forces against the Empire, and entering *Jazirat*, which is *Mesopotamia*, possess'd himself of *Dara*, *Mediney*, *Raha*, and *Kanseria*; then penetrating into *Syria*, took *Halep*, or *Aleppo*, *Antioch*, and other Places. In fine, he oblig'd the King of *Rumestan* to sue for Peace, which was concluded, upon Condition, that he should pay *Anuxiron* a heavy yearly Tribute, and he quitted *Xam*, *Jazirat*, *Keyaz*, *Hyamon*, *Thacf*, *Bargre*, and *Homan*, all Lands

Anuxiron *invades the Empire*

of

of the Empire, he had possess'd himself of during this Expedition.

Has a Christian Wife.

Anuxiron had some Years since marry'd a most beautiful Christian Lady of *Gurgistan*. The same was lately done, by *Xa Abbas*, now reigning in *Persia* [*that is, when the Author writ,*] who took to Wife one of the same Race, by whom he has Sons and Daughters. All the Difference between them being, that *Kesere Anuxiron* was a Gentile, and *Xa Abas* a *Mahometan*, of the Sect of the *Xyahys*. By that Christian Woman, whom *Anuxiron* took much Pains to pervert, tho' she continu'd stedfast in her Faith, he had a Son, call'd *Nuxzad*. The Mother carefully bred him up, from his Cradle, in the Evangelical Doctrine, from which his Father could never remove him, either by Threats, or fair Means, and being provok'd at his Constancy, caus'd him to be close confin'd, and very ill us'd, all which had no Effect on his Resolution. At this Time some Commotions hapned in the Lands of *Scham*, which is *Syria*, which *Anuxiron* was oblig'd to go in Person to quell. Being there, with his Army he fell so dangerously ill, that it was reported, and believ'd in *Persia*, he would never recover. *Nuxzad* hearing of it, in his Confinement, found Means to escape, and gathering all the Christians there were in the Kingdom, being no small number, besides abundance of other Soldiers, having possess'd himself of all his Father's Treasures, generously distributed them among his Forces; putting new Governours and Garrisons into the strong Holds of the Kingdom, and turning out those his Father had left. *Anuxiron* having soon Intelligence of these Troubles, order'd *Rambarzim*, his General in *Hyerabk* to march, with the greatest Force he could

Her Son Nuxzad bred a Christian.

Revolts against his Father.

could make against *Nuxzad*, and endeavour to Rout him, and take special Care, he should not be kill'd, but only taken, if possible, and secur'd in such honourable Manner, as became his Person. *Rambarzim* accordingly march'd against *Nuxzad*, who had made one *Schamos Rumy* his General. They came to a Battel, and Victory seem'd to incline to *Nuxzad*, which *Rambarzim* observing, he press'd on among his Men, fighting like a private Soldier, whereat his Army, taking fresh Courage, gave such a Charge, that *Nuxzad's* Forces were broken, and put to Flight. At this Time an Arrow hit *Nuxzad* on the Breast, and pierc'd him through, notwithstanding his Rich Armour, of which Wound he died in a few Days. *Rambarzim* was very much concern'd; but there being no Remedy, caus'd him to be buried in a pompous Manner after the Christian Fashion, he having begg'd it as his last Request of his Mother, protesting that he died for, and in the Faith of CHRIST. *Kesere Anuxiron* recover'd of his Sickness, and having pacify'd the Commotions in *Xam*, return'd to *Persia*, where all the late Disorders being compos'd, he recruited his Army, and made a great Irruption into *India*, as far as *Selandive*, with whose King he concluded a Peace, on Condition he should pay him an Acknowledgment.

Is kill'd, and dies a Christian.

Anuxiron *Invades* India.

Selandive, as I said before, is the Island of *Ceylon*, so call'd by the *Persians* and *Arabs*, whether it be the *Trapobana* of the Ancients, or no, may be controverted by those it belongs to. All things relating to this Island, are very well known, so that there is nothing new to say of it. There are some noted Ports in it, and *Gale* is one of the Chiefest, whence the Natives

Selandive, *is* Ceylon.

Gale *Port.*

tives are call'd *Chingalas*; because when the *Chineses* Traded from *China* throughout the Southern Sea, that of *India*, and as far as *Ormuz* in the Gulph of *Persia*, the King then Reigning in *China*, perswaded himself, that being so potent, he might possess himself of all the Countries his Subjects sail'd to. To this Purpose he fitted out a mighty Navy, which in a great Storm was shatter'd and dispers'd into several Parts, and some Ships arriv'd at *Gale*, where the *Chineses* manag'd the Natives so well, that besides admitting them to settle there, they inter-married, and the Off-spring of them were call'd *Chingalas*, which Name afterwards extended to all the Inhabitants of the Island, and they still retain it. Here is also the Port of *Chylao*, which in their Language signifies, a Fishery, because there was one of Pearls, being the greatest and most celebrated in the Universe; which I shall give an Account of, when I speak of *Barhen* or *Baharem*. In this same Island is the Port of *Columbo*, a Town and Fortress [*formerly*] belonging to the *Portugueses*, bravely defended by them against the Kings of that Island, as were many others mention'd in the Histories of *India*. *Ceylon* produces neither Gold, Silver, nor any other precious Metal, nor Stones of Value, except Cats-Eyes, which are the finest in the World; and some Rubies, and it is much doubted, whether these be found in the Island, or brought from abroad; but it has Ivory, the great Cardamum, much *Areka*, which is the *Fusel* of *Avicen*, and what renders it most famous, is the vast Quantity of excellent Cinnamon growing in it, which far surpasses all that grows in other Parts, and there is very much Difference even between that which grows

Chineses *settle there, thence the* Chingalas

Chylao *Port, and* Columbo.

Product of Ceylon.

grows in the very Island; for that is best, which they gather in the Woods of *Columbo*, and *Seytavaca*, formerly the Habitation of the Native Kings, since conquer'd by the *Portugueses* [and *taken from them by the* Dutch, *who still keep it*,] and that brought from *Candea*, another Kingdom of the Island, is of less Value. Next follows that which the *Portugueses* call *Canela do Mato*, that is, Wood, or Wild Cinnamon, the best of which is that growing in the Kingdom of *Coulam*, and that of *Cochin* not so good. There is also *Cinnamon* in the Island of *Timor*, whence the White *Sandal* or *Sanders* is brought, and in *Cochinchina*, whence we have the *Eagle Wood*, or *Lignum Aloes*; as also in the Island *Mindanao*, near the *Moluccos*, which affords no Gold, as *Couto* falsly informs us, and has nothing but *Weapons*, as the *Spaniards* found at the Expence of so many Lives, under the Governour *Stephen Rodriguez de Figueiroa*, who died there, that they thought fit to abandon it. I have seen and had *Cinnamon* from all those Parts, brought on my Account, when I was at *Malaca*; and that of *Mindanao* I afterwards saw in the *Philippine* Islands. All these Sorts are inferior to that of *Ceylon*, and perhaps the Defect may be in not gathering, and improving it rightly, for the Tree is every where the same, being like the Laurel, in Leaf, and Berry. The *Persians* and *Arabs* call that of *Ceylon*, *Dar Chiny Seylany*, that is, *Wood* of the *Chineses* at *Ceylon*; because the *Chineses* carried it from *Ceylon* to *Ormuz*, or *Keys*, and *Persia*, when they mannag'd that Trade. The wild *Cinnamon* they call *Kerfah*, and the *China* Root, *Chub Chiny*. For the better Understanding of what Doctor *Garcia Dorta* has written somewhat confusedly concerning *Cinnamon*, I must observe

Cinnamon.

Cinnamon Tree.

observe that the *Malayans*, call Liquorice, and Cinnamon by the same Name, which is, *Kayo Maniz*, signifying, Sweet Wood, from *Kayo*, Wood, and *Maniz*, Sweet, and to avoid Mistakes, they call the Cinnamon, *Kayo Maniz Selam*, or sweet Wood of *Ceylon*, because brought from thence, and the Liquorice, *Kayo Maniz Chin*, sweet Wood of *China*, as coming from that Country to *Malaca*; and because *Hamama*, which signifies *Pes Columbæ*, or Pigeons Foot, and is the *Amomum*, was a Medicin so highly valu'd for its Virtue, therefore considering the Fragrancy, Sweetness, and Excellency of Cinnamon, by way of Commendation, they call'd it *Chin Hamama*, that is *Chinese Hamama*, whence the *Latins* made *Cinamomum*, and this explains what Doctor *Dorta* said of the Cinnamon. Before we leave the Woods where the Cinnamon grows in *Ceylon*, I will mention the Custom of a certain People living in them, which is worth being known. These Barbarians are call'd *Pachas*, dwelling in the Woods and Thickets, naked, and feeding on the Fruit of them; but their main Sustenance is Venison, whereof there is great Plenty in the Island, and they kill abundance with their Bows and Arrows. Then they put a great deal of Honey into the hollowest Trunks of the oldest worm-eaten Trees they can find, and fill them quite up with that Flesh, which they let lye there, till a Time of Need, and then use it, being preserv'd in the Honey from Corruption, and then they take it out and eat it without any other Dressing; which I thought fit to mention, as a very strange Sustenance. This will seem a tolerable Sustenance enough, to such as shall reflect on that of the Inhabitants of the Island

Cinamomum *whence deriv'd.*

Venison preserv'd in Honey.

Raw Fish eaten.

Island of *Nicobar*, who eat the Fish raw, as it is taken out of the Water, without any other Cookery, or Seasoning; and the *Arabs* living by the Sea-side, as was hinted before, generally feed on raw dried Fish, with the Juice of Limons, and Tamarinds, and Dates. This is not so bad as devouring Human Flesh, as the *Javaneses* did, little above an hundred Years since, before they embrac'd *Mahometanism*; and the Blacks call'd *Zimbas*, still do it; not sparing their own People, as was seen 10 or 12 Years since, when 70 or 80000 of them marching in a Body, through the Inland of *Africk*, to find out the Country of *India*, or of the *Pannos*, as they said, as soon as any of their Company fell sick, they kill'd, divided, and eat them. These People ended their Progress at *Melinde* and *Monbaza*, being destroy'd by the *Portugueses*.

Odd Customs of Blacks.

To this Purpose I remember a very pleasant Practice of certain Blacks, Natives of those Parts, who following the Exercise of Arms, cannot be Knighted after their Manner, till they have presented the King with one or more privy Members of their Enemies, slain by them in War, as a Token of their Valour, which done, they assign them Lands, and Cows. Of this I am an Eye-Witness, and they are call'd *Moceguejos*. This is something like what *Saul* requir'd of *David* his Son-in-Law, that to receive his Wife, he should bring him the Fore-Skins of the *Philistines*. The People of *Pegu*, in their Time of Declining, whilst I was yet in *India*, were reduc'd to such Famine, as to keep publick Shambles of Man's Flesh, killing one another as every one was strongest. To conclude with the *Chingalas*, they are naturally inclin'd to the Exercise of Arms,

Chingalas *Warlike.*

Arms, in which they have, and still do perform incredible Feats, some of which I have seen. They work curiously in Ivory, and Chrystal, of which last the Island affords some Quantity, and make very neat Firelocks. Thus much may suffice of them, and their Island, that I may return into *Persia*, to

Anuxiron's *Dominions.*

Anuxiron, whose Sovereignty extended over the Lands of *Maurenahar*, *Karason*, *Darbend*, *Abezran*, *Hyama*, *Tabarstam*, *Gerion*, Part of *India*, *Kermon*, *Parz* or *Persia*, *Aderbaion*, *Hyerakhen*, *Jazirat*, *Homan*, as far as *Hyaman* in *Arabia*, and many others towards *Magareb*, in *Rumestan*, that is, in *Greece*, or the Provinces of the Empire of *Constantinople*. In this King's Time were brought out of *India*, into *Persia*, two very famous Books of Philosophy, the one call'd *Kelilah*, and the other *Wademana*, and the Game of *Chess*, which the *Indians* sent to the *Persians* to represent the Uncertainty and Mutability of this Life, which is a continual Warfare, and that therefore, being in perpetual Strife, every Man ought to be directed by Prudence and Knowledge. To this, *Mirkond* says, the *Persians* answer'd, sending them in Return the Game of Tables, and declaring, that tho' Wisdom and Prudence were requisite for the well-ordering of Life, yet there must be some Assistance of Fortune, as they might perceive by that Game. Both *Indians* and *Persians* use Chess and Tables very much, and many of them understand those Games to Perfection. Tho' I know how many several Opinions there are concerning the first Invention of Chess, I should think it no Presumption to say, it was first found out in those Parts; for besides other Reasons I have for it, one is, that in most Places where the same is us'd, they

Books of Philosophy, and Chess, brought out of India into Persia

they retain the same Names the *Persians* give the several Pieces, or at least not much alter'd, calling the King *Scha*, and the Queen *Wazir*, being the next Person to the Sovereign; the Bishop *Fil*, that is, Elephant; the Knight, *Alp* or *Faraz*, that is, a Horse; the Pawn, *Peada*, signifying, a Foot-Soldier; what we call Check, they name *Scha*, which is, as it were giving notice to the King, and for Check Mate, they say *Schamase*, importing in their Language, *the King is Dead.* Now, whereas some affirm, that the Game of Chess by the *Persians* call'd *Schatraak*, that is the King's Game, or Diversion, was invented at *Babylon*, it is very reasonable to believe, that we had it from the *Persians*, *Babylon* having been often, and for a long Time subject to *Persia*, and so near to it.

Kesere Anuxiron was Learned, and a Favourer of such Persons; he had many Sons, but none equal to *Hormoz*, whom he therefore enthron'd before his Death, which hapned when he had reign'd 48 Years, strictly charging him to preserve Peace and Unity, and be kind to his Subjects. *Mirkond* dilates very much upon this King's Virtues, his Greatness of Mind, and the Prosperity of *Persia* under him, which I omit for Brevity. *Anuxiron* had the additional Title of *Adel*, on Account of his extraordinary Integrity, in the Administration of Justice, a Virtue peculiar to him, for in the *Persian* Tongue, Justice, and a just Man are both call'd *Adel.* It will not be improper in this Place to observe, that as we in our Parts, besides their proper Name, and the common Title of Kings, sometimes give our Monarchs a distinctive Appellation, expressing some Virtue or Vice, that prevails in them, as the Wise,

Kesere Anuxiron *dyes, his Character.*

the Chaste, the Great, the Cruel, the Just, of Glorious Memory, and the like, so the same is practis'd not only among the Kings of *Persia*, but of other Eastern Parts. The *Persians* call a King *Scha*, or *Patscha*, as also *Sahayb*, which, as has been said, signifies Sovereign; and whereas it is mention'd in the Histories of *India*, speaking of the Taking of *Goa*, that the Prince of it was call'd *Sabaidalcan*, it ought to be *Sahayb Aden Kan*, signifying Sovereign, and King of Justice. They also use another very haughty Name, which is *Kodakon*, denoting something of Divinity, for in the *Persian*, *Kodak*, is God. Thus the King of *Phya* assum'd a Name, signifying the living God; and tho' the *Persians* call their Kings by any of the aforesaid Names, adding any Epithets that sute them, as has been mention'd of some of them; when in their Histories they speak of foreign Kings, they generally give them the same Titles they have in their own Countries, as *Xar* to the King of *Gurgeston*, as his own Subjects do. The *Arabs* call the King *Sultan* or *Malek*, the Latter whereof also signifies an *Angel*. Sometimes they call him *Xeque*, which being the Word for an Ancient Man, is more generally apply'd to the Head, or Chief of a Town or Hord, as we might say a Ruler, or Petty King. The *Turks* use *Hhan* or *Khan* or *Khon*, or *Begk*, which we pronounce *Beg*, and this last Title is generally given to Commanders, and Persons in great Honour and Dignity, as *Don* is among us. The People of *Tatar*, whom we call *Tartars*, call their King *Kha Khon* and *Khan*. The *Persians* and *Arabs* call the Emperor of *Constantinople*, or of the *Romans*, *Khon Kor Rumy*, or *Kayser Runni*, which is the same as *Roman Cæsar*. The Eastern Gentiles use *Rao*

Titles of Kings in the East.

or

or *Raio*, for the common Name of King; and the *Mahometans*, besides their proper Names, have other Appellatives left them by their Forefathers, and continu'd as if they were their own, like the *Pharaohs*, and the *Ptolomeys*. Such is that of the King of *Decan*, where *Chaul* a City belonging to the *Portugueses* stands, whom we vulgarly call *Niza Maluco*, instead of *Nezah al Moluco*, signifying the Spear, that is, the Defence of the Kingdom. They also call him *Malek*, that is King, and the *Portugueses* corruptly *Melik*. This Word puts me in mind of the Etymology of the Herb Physicians call *Melilot*, and the Vulgar *Kings Crown*, which seems to be deriv'd from its *Arabick* Name, *Equelilal Malek*, being the same thing. The King of *Cunhan* or *Balagate* in *India*, where the City of *Goa* stands, is call'd *Adel Khan* or *Adel Scha*, importing King, or Lord of Justice, and the *Portugueses* corruptly name him *Dialcan* or *Hidalcan*. The proper Name of the Monarch, whom we call the Great *Mogol* is *Gelaladin*, and his Appellative *Akbar*. *Kebar* in *Arabick* is Great, and the A set before it, is a negative Prepositon, both which join'd together import Matchless, being the same Expression the *Arabs* use for God, saying, *Alah Kebar Akebar*, which is, *Great matchless God*, and so *Gelaledin* is call'd *Akbar*. In that Part of *Africk* by the *Portugueses* call'd *Cafraria*, or the Land of the *Cafres*, they have two common Names for their Princes; the first of them is *Munne*, very like that they have in *Congo* and *Angola*, where they call their Prince or Lord *Manni*; the other is *Mongana*, and I remember that, when in those Parts, I knew one *Mongana Bolay Agy*, who was of the Blood Royal, and therefore stil'd *Mongana*; *Bolay* was his

proper Name, and *Agi* imports sanctify'd. Because this is a ridiculous Blindness and comical Story, or indeed rather to be pity'd and lamented, I will relate it. All the *Mahometans* believe, and look upon it as an undoubted Truth, that such of them as go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, and are there at the solemn Festival, kept in *September*; whatsoever they be, are sanctify'd, and safe, and need do no more to go to Heaven, and therefore they give all such the Name of *Agy*, many of whom I have known, and among them, one that was Porter to King *Ferragus Scha*. His Name was *Amir Hamed Agy*, who liv'd very contented on Account of his Pilgrimage, looking upon his Salvation as most certain. I us'd to ask him, If he thought so why he labour'd, and took any more Pains, in going to the *Mosque*, performing the *Sala* and *Kamaz*, which is their Prayers, and Fasting their *Ramadan*. He answer'd, *He had no need of doing it for himself, but did it for others, who had not merited so much, or obtain'd that Mercy.* Such is the Darkness, and Stupidity those Wretches live in. The Reader I hope will pardon this Digression, and we will proceed to treat of *Hormoz*, who after the Death of his Father *Kesere Anuxiron* ascended the Throne of *Persia*.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Hormoz *or* Hormisda, *the* 32*th King of* Persia.

Hormoz's Tyranny.

HORMOZ, the Son *Kesere Anuxiron*, by a Daughter of the King of *Tatar* or *Tartary*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom of

of *Persia*. He was before accounted a good Prince, but chang'd his Behaviour with his Fortune, becoming Cruel, Vicious and Tyrannical, and being such, begun to grow jealous, and that he might have none to fear, put to Death all the great Men in his Dominions, and depriv'd all Judges of their Employments, thinking it indecent that there should be any other Judge besides himself. It is positively affirm'd, that during the first twelve Years of his Government, he slew 13000 Men of Note in his Dominions, besides a great Number not reckon'd, and many voluntarily banish'd themselves, to be out of the Reach of that Plague. The Emperor of *Constantinople*, understanding how Affairs stood in *Persia*, would not let slip that Opportunity of recovering the Lands that had belong'd to the Empire, but arm'd and unexpectedly invaded the Territories of *Nacibea*, which according to the *Persian* Tradition is *Ninive*, by them, and the *Arabs* now call'd *Mosul* in *Diarkek* or *Karamite*, which they look upon as undoubted, affirming it was thither that *Pehhanber* went to Preach, so the *Persians* call a Prophet, and the *Arabs Naby*, who being cast into the Sea, was swallow'd by a great Fish. If this be so, *Ninive* was never quite destroy'd, for that City still florishes and is very thriving. The Emperor being come into the Territory of *Nacibon*, sent to acquaint *Hormoz*, that in case the Lands belonging to the Empire, were restor'd to him, he would return, without doing any Harm. The Answer not being satisfactory, he proceeded farther ravaging all *Armenia* and *Aderbajon*; and sending two of his Generals call'd *Abas Awal*, and *Homeu Azarek*, with a sufficient Force against *Babylon*, and its Territory, which they

Emperor of Constantinople *invades* Persia.

Xabaxa *the* Tartar *invades* Persia.

utterly ruin'd and destroi'd. *Schabaxa*, Unkle to *Hormoz*, as being his Mothers Brother, was King of *Tatar* or *Tartary*, who seeing the Distress his Nephew was in, rais'd an Army of 400000 Men, not to assist him, but to conquer his Dominions, passing the River *Jehun*, and subduing *Karason*. *Hormoz* was then sensible of his Folly, and felt the Want of so many great Men he had caus'd to be slain. In this Confusion, he assembled his Council, where it was resolv'd, that the Emperor of *Rumestan* should have the Lands he demanded restor'd him; and that Side being secur'd, they should convert their Arms against the *Tartar*. This was accordingly done, and they sent for one *Baharon Chuby*, a *Persian* Commander, then Governour on the Frontiers of *Armenia*, and the bravest Man then known. He being come to Court, prepar'd without losing Time, to march against *Schabaxa Hha Khon Chiny*, and tho' offer'd a numerous Army, would not take along with him above 12000 experienc'd Soldiers, all of them between 30 and 40 Years of Age. *Baharon Chuby* was much censur'd, for presuming to march against so potent an Enemy, with so small a Force; but he behav'd himself so well, that soon after News was brought of a great Slaughter he had made of the *Tartars*, with the Death of their King. They rallying set up his Son, who continu'd the War, with no better Success; for after several small Actions, he was overthrown, and taken. *Baharon Chuby* having thus destroy'd the *Tartars*, took 250 Camels loaded with Money, Gold and Silver, besides much more valuable Booty, which he sent by his Son to King *Hormoz*; by whom these and all his other good Services were ill rewarded, for the

Peace with the Greek *Emperor.*

Tartars *routed by* Baharon.

Ma-

Malice of *Baharon's* Enemies prevailing, he caus'd him to be secur'd at his Return. *Baharon* was highly provok'd at this Ingratitude, and finding Means to escape, resolv'd to be reveng'd, perswading *Khozrao Parves*, eldest Son to *Hormoz*, since he was of Right, Heir to the Crown, to enter upon the Possession immediately. *Khozrao* gave Ear to him, coining Money in his own Name, with his Arms, and calling himself King of *Persia*. Two Uncles by his Mothers Side supported him, the one call'd *Bandukye*, the other *Bostam*. *Hormoz*, being inform'd of these Practices, thought to have disappointed them, by securing their Persons, but they knowing it, prevented it by Flight. *Khozrao Parvez* went away into *Armenia*, and thence to *Aderbaion*; the King's two Brothers in-Law were taken, but breaking the Prison, gather'd all the Strength they could, fell suddenly upon *Hormoz*, took him, and put out his Eyes. *Khozrao Parvez* hearing what had happen'd, return'd into *Persia*, and after causing himself to be receiv'd as King, begg'd Pardon of his Father, who granted it, on Condition he should punish those who had put out his Eyes, which he promis'd, but did not perform, till well settled on the Throne.

He is imprison'd, and escapes

Hormoz deposed, and his Eyes put out.

In the mean while, *Baharon Chuby* having rais'd a considerable Army, began to range through *Persia*, with a Design to make himself Master of it. *Khozrao Parvez* met him, was overthrown, and fled to *Constantinople*, attended by his two Uncles, who advis'd him to lessen the number of his Enemies, cutting off his Father, that he might have less to fear. *Khozroa Parves* giving no Ear to their Advice, and they fearing there was no Safety for them whilst *Hormoz* liv'd, made an Excuse to withdraw

Khozrao defeated by Baharon.

Hormoz *strangled.*

draw themselves from *Parvez*, and going where *Hormoz* was, strangled him with a Bow-string, and thus ended *Hormoz*. *Khozroa Parvez*, who, as has been said, fled to *Rumestan*, after being defeated by *Baharon Chuby*, manag'd his Business so well there, that the Emperor not only gave him his Daughter to Wife, but 100000 Men, under the Conduct of his Son, whom the *Persians* call *Benathus*, for the Recovery of his Dominions; and in Return *Khozrao Parvez* presented him with a large Piece of our Saviour's Cross, his Father *Hormoz* had. With those Forces *Khozrao* set forward, and was joyn'd by his Uncle *Bandukye*. *Baharon Chuby*, who by some is reckon'd among the Kings of *Persia*, met him, and three of his Prime Officers came forward, challenging any other three. *Parvez* arm'd himself, and went out against them alone, much against his Brother-in-Law's Will. They fought Man to Man, and *Khozrao* behav'd himself so bravely, that he overcame them all one after another, which *Baharon Chuby's* Men admiring, they forsook him, and went over, and he thus abandon'd, quitted *Persia*, and fled into *Turkestam*, where he serv'd *Aba Khon Chiny*, and was afterwards kill'd.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Khosrao Parvez, *or* Cosroes, *the* 33*th* *King of* Persia.

Kosrao *executed his Fathers Murderers.*

KHOSRAO *Parvez* having surmounted all his Misfortunes, and being peaceably seated on the Throne of *Persia*, remember'd the Promise he had made his Father, and securing his Unkles *Bostam* and *Bandukye*, who had

had murder'd him, caus'd them to be executed in a dreadful Manner. In the 14*th* Year of his Reign, the *Greeks* rebelling against their Emperor, kill'd him and his Son *Benathus*, who as was said had accompany'd *Khosrao* into *Persia*, another Brother of his narrowly Escaping to *Khozrao*, who receiv'd and entertain'd him very honourably, and raising a numerous Army put him at the Head of it, with able Generals, to recover his Empire. They march'd through *Syria* and *Palestine*, towards *Constantinople*, ravaging the Country, taking and destroying infinite numbers of People. The *Greeks*, after the Murder of their Emperor, had enthron'd one *Ariol*, that is, *Heraclius*, a Man of singular Wisdom and Valour, who hearing of the Approach of the *Persians*, rais'd Forces, march'd, and fought them, killing 10000 in the first Battel, the Rest flying till they return'd into *Persia*. About the 30*th* Year of *Khozrao's* Reign, the wicked Impostor *Mahomet* appear'd in *Arabia*, assuming the Title of a Prophet, and under that usurp'd Denomination, writ to several Princes and great Men in those Parts, beseeching and requiring them in the Name of God, to receive and embrace his false Doctrine. Among the Rest he writ to, *Khozrao Parvez* was one, but so far from giving any Ear to his *Enthusiasms*, that he spoke the worst that could be of him.

Rebellion of Greeks.

Defeat of Persians.

The Original of that infernal Wretch *Mahomet* being so well known, it will be needless to spend much Time in speaking of it; however, considering how much they differ, who pretend to write of it, I will with my usual Brevity deliver what I several times heard from the *Persians* and *Arabs*, which is, That *Mahomet* was an *Arab* without any Mixture, no

Mahomets first Rise.

no Slave, but free, and when a Boy, serv'd a Merchant, going with him to Fairs, from one Place to another. Seeing him once upon a Journey, without any Shelter against the scorching Heat of the Sun, he caus'd a stately Tree to sprout up, on a sudden to shade him, which we may suppose was the Work of the Devil. His Master having seen this Wonder, and others they tell held him in great Esteem for the future. His Reputation still increasing, the Master hapned to dye, and he marry'd his Mistress. She was rich and of good Parentage, which much enhanc'd the Opinion conceiv'd of his Sanctity. Upon these Motives, and his own Natural Subtilty he grounded his wild Sect, falling one Day unexpectedly with those of his Faction, upon the Idols the *Arabs* ador'd, which he cast down and beat in Pieces, teaching the People to adore one onely God of Heaven; yet mixing with it all the Venom contain'd in his *Alcoran*; sometimes using Force, and sometimes Art, which they call Knowledge and Revelations, thus to bring about the Mischiefs, he and his Followers have brought upon the World; God in his just and inscrutable Judgments permitting it. This is what the *Persians* and *Arabs* generally say of his first Rise.

Khozrao's *Dream.*

To return to our History, *Khozrao Parvez* being in the City of *Madakem*, one Night dreamt, that the said City was wall'd round, and had 11 Towers about it, all which decay'd, and fell to the Ground, one after another, till the City was left open. He awak'd out of his Dream in much Fear and Confusion, call'd his Astrologers, and Soothsayers, desiring they would expound his Dream. One among the rest told him, That the 11 Towers were

were so many Kings or Governours of *Persia*, that were to succeed him, after whom that Monarchy of *Persia* would fall. This put *Khozrao* upon contriving Means, to prevent that Ruin, which he could not; but among other Extravagancies, believing that might be occasion'd by Discord betwixt his Sons, he caus'd them all to be apprehended, ordering that none of them should be permitted to talk, or converse with any Body, not so much as with their own Wives and Children. *Xarear*, one of them, besides his other Wives, had one he singularly lov'd for her extraordinary Beauty, her Name *Xerin*, which in the *Persian* Tongue properly signifies Sweet, tho' it is vulgarly taken for any thing that is excellent, and accordingly they say, *Doney Xerin*, a perfect fine Pearl, whence the *Portugueses* call fine Pearls, *Aljofar Xerino*. There is a Book in the *Persian* Tongue, in most ingenious Verse, full of noble Flights, and call'd *Khozrao Xerin*, highly valu'd by the *Persians*, as it well deserves, and the whole Subject of it is another Lady call'd *Xerin*, and the mighty things done for her Sake by two Lovers; the one of them a Prince, whose Name was *Khozrao*, but not this we now write of, the other one *Ferat*, a Person of a lower Rank. *Xarear* thinking on his *Xerin*, was much afflicted that he could not see her, and Love being full of Invention and Contrivance, he found one to ease his Pain. He counterfeited Sickness, wanted to be Blooded, *Xerin* came disguis'd like a Surgeon, was admitted into the Prison, and from that Interview she prov'd with Child, and was deliver'd of a Son, who was call'd *Yazdgerd*, and bred up in his Grandfather *Khozrao Parvez's* Court, till the Age of 5 Years, without his Knowledge. Being then told

told of it, he would have kill'd him, and was very positive in his Resolution; yet the Mother said so much, and shed such abundance of Tears, that she prevail'd, he should not be murder'd there, but expos'd in the Woods to wild Beasts. This is to be observ'd, and carried in Mind, for the better Understanding of what shall soon be said at the End of this first Part. Old Age, and Fear of losing his Crown made *Khozrao Parvez* suspicious, timorous, cruel, covetous, haughty and hateful to his Subjects, of whom he order'd many to be slaughter'd, without any other Reason or Provocation, but his own Fancy; among whom was *Keaman*, Grand-son to *Manzar*, who had done him considerable Service. *Khozrao Parvez* had reign'd 38 Years, when the *Persians*, no longer able to endure his Tyranny, unanimously depos'd, and deliver'd him up into the Custody of a trusty Commander, enthroning his Son *Kobad Schirughe* in his Stead. This happened in the 9*th* Year of the *Mahometan Era*, call'd *Hegira*, which was much about 631 of CHRIST. *Khosrao Parvez* is the same we call *Cosdroes* and *Areol*, above mention'd, as King of *Rumestam*, is the Emperor *Heraclius*.

Yazdgerd *expos'd to wild Beasts.*

A. Ch. 631.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Kobad Schirughe, *or* Siroes, *the* 34*th King of* Persia.

Kobad *murders his Father and Brothers.*

THE *Persians*, thinking to mend themselves, having depos'd *Khozrao Parvez*, and enthron'd his Son *Kobad Schirughe*, soon repented; for as soon as he found himself fixt, the

the first thing he contriv'd, among other Enormities, was to murder his Father, then a Prisoner, and yet as bad as he had been, and so much hated by all Men, there was none that would embrue his Hands in his Blood. However some time after, one *Merche Ormoz*, Son to one *Mordomscha*, whom *Parvez* had order'd to be slain, undertook the Deed. This Man entering the Prison, where *Khozrao Parvez* lay, without any other Ceremony accosted him with these Words: *It is Just to kill him that kill'd my Father*, and so struck off his Head; then returning to the King, well pleas'd with the Action, and telling him what he had said and done; *Kobad* repeated the same Words, *It is Just that I kill him who kill'd my Father*, and caus'd him to be put to Death. *Kobad* being thus deliver'd from the Burden of a Father, which he thought lay heavy upon him, thought fit also to rid himself of his Brothers, and accordingly gave Orders to his *Wazirs* or *Viziers*, and Governours, who executed them so punctually, that of 15 Brethren he had, none escap'd, but two Sisters were sav'd on Account of their Sex. This was follow'd by so great a Famine, and Pestilence, as reduc'd *Persia* to Extremity: These Miseries and Calamities encourag'd *Kobad's* two Sisters, the eldest call'd *Turondoct*, and the younger *Azarmydoct*, to reprove him severely, alledging, That God scuorg'd them so heavily, and yet threatned worse for his Sins and Enormities, and particularly for the base Murder of his Father and Brothers; and therefore bid him repent, and mend his Life, and to fear God, and be asham'd of his Impiety. These and such other Expressions deliver'd by *Khobad Xiruyhe's* Sisters, made such an Impression, and were so much

A Traitor condemns himself.

much resented by him, that he fell sick with mere Anguish of Mind, and soon dy'd, having reign'd but eight Months, leaving only one Son an Infant, call'd *Ardxir Schirughe*, who succeeded him in the Throne.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Ardxir Schirughe, *the* 35*th King of* Persia.

Ardxir *murder'd by* Xarear.

ARDXIR *Schirughe* was but seven Years of Age, when he succeeded his Father *Kobad*. One *Scharear*, a Kinsman of his, otherwise call'd *Gher Khan*, at that Time Governour of the Province of *Agem*, hearing that an Infant was proclaim'd, and thinking that a proper Opportunity, gather'd all the best Forces he could, and coming to Court, upon very slight Pretences, murder'd the Child, and many others that attempted to defend him, and usurp'd the Kingdom, with the Assistance of the Soldiers he brought with him. *Ardschir Schirughe* enjoy'd the Title of King 50 Days.

CHAP. XL.

Of Scharear, *or* Siahriar, *Usurper of* Persia, *reckned the* 36*th King*.

Xarear *kill'd.*

SCHAREAR having destroy'd *Ardschir*, as has been said, possess'd himself of *Persia*, in spight of all that oppos'd him, and tho' he us'd all possible Means to gain the good Will of the great Men of the Nation, he could never

ver prevail. There were three Brothers then at Court, Men of Birth, and Soldiers of Valour, who were much concern'd, and could not bear, that a Tyrant of such small Power, should keep them under. Upon this Motive they conspir'd to kill him, as they did, waiting one Day till he was taking Horse, at the Gate, where they laid hold, threw down, and stabb'd him in several Places; being assisted by the Multitude, who long'd to be rid of him. This hapned when he had reign'd a Year, tho' some say but 40 Days.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Joon, *the* 37*th King of* Persia.

Joon *dyes.*

THE *Persians* being deliver'd from the Tyranny of *Scharear*, bestow'd the Crown on *Joon Schir*, of the Family of the former Kings; his Name signifying a beautiful Lion, or a Lion-like Youth: He was Nephew to *Bakaron Chuby*, who made War on *Khozrao Parvez*, and gave Hopes he might have prov'd a generous Prince, had not Death cut him off, when he had reign'd but one Year.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Turon Doct, *Queen of* Persia, *the* 38*th in the Royal Descent.*

Turon Dokt *rules well, and dyes.*

TURON *Doct*, eldest Daughter to *Khozrao Parvez*, succeeded *Joon Schir*. *Turon* is the proper Name of a Woman, and *Doct* in

the *Persian*, signifies a Maiden, or Virgin, as *Dokter* does a Sister. This was a wise and prudent Queen, pacify'd her Kingdom, making Examples of several turbulent Persons that disturb'd it, restor'd Justice, rebuilt many publick Structures ruin'd by Time, made one of the three Brothers that had kill'd *Scharear* Prime *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, maintain'd Peace, and Amity with the King of the *Rumes*, or Emperor of *Constantinople*; and at the Time the *Persians* were highly pleas'd with her, she was snatch'd away by Death, having reign'd but 16 Months.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Jasancedah, *the 39th Monarch of* Persia.

Jasancedah *depos'd.*

UPON the Death of *Turon Dokt* the *Persians* conferr'd the Kingdom on *Jasancedah*, of the Blood Royal, about whose Election there was much Strife; and being at last admitted, when they came to put the *Tage*, or as we may call it, the Crown on his Head, he said, It was very heavy, and did not fit him. Some affirm, he said it in Reference to the Weight of the Government, others, that it was out of mere Ignorance; However it was, the *Persians*, who were dissatisfy'd with him, made this a Motive to dispossess him, which they did in a shamful Manner, when he had reign'd but 6 Days.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Azarmy Dokt, *Queen of* Persia, *and the 40th Sovereign.*

Jasancedah being depos'd, the Government was committed to *Azarmy Dokt*, younger Daughter to *Khozrao Parvez*, and Sister to *Turon Dokt*, a most beautifull and understanding Lady. *Ferrog Hormoz*, a famous Commander had govern'd the Province of *Karason*, ever since the Reign of *Khozrao Parvez*; he hearing the Fame of *Azarmy Dokt*, and invited by the Disposition of the Affairs of the Kingdom, left a Son he had in his Place, and went away to Court, to make Love to the New Queen, which he did with so much Importunity and Presumption, that she to save her Honour, was oblig'd to order him to be put to Death, which was accordingly executed. The News of his End, being carry'd into *Karason*, the Son he had left there in his Stead, was so inrag'd, that he march'd into *Persia* with a numerous Army, and surprising the Court, put the Queen to a cruel Death, notwithstanding the many Intreaties made, and Tears shed for her. She govern'd but six Months.

Ferrog *put to Death for courting the Queen.*

His Son murders her.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Kesere, *the 41th King of* Persia.

KESERE, whose Father *Jasancedah*, we said before, had been depos'd for Incapacity, was proclaim'd King, after the Murder of *Azarmy Dokt*. He proving no wiser than

Kesere *murder'd.*

than his Father, nor his Government, or Life any better, by his Indiscretion, gave his Subjects Occasion to murder him also in a very few Days.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of Ferrogzad, *the* 42*th King of* Persia.

IT was said in the Reign of *Kobad Schirugle*, that he murder'd his Father and 15 Brothers, which caus'd all that were a kin to him, and could escape, to fly, for Fear of their Lives, some of whom return'd into *Persia* after his Death, and among them *Ferrogzad*, Son to *Kobad*, and Grand-son to *Khozrao Parvez*, who being known, was declar'd King, and would have been a good one, as appear'd by the short Time of his Reign, which was not above a Month, at the End of which he was poison'd by a Slave of his own.

Ferrogzad *poison'd.*

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Yazdgerd, *the* 43*th and last King of* Persia, *of this Race.*

IT was mention'd in the Life of *Khozrao Parvez*, that he having cast all his own Sons into Prison, one of them, call'd *Scharear*, had there by his Wife *Scherin*, a Son call'd *Yardgerd*, who being afterwards found out by his Grand-father was expos'd to wild Beasts. He being left in a Wood, by those that had been entrusted, was found by some Shepherds, who took

took Compassion on him, and bred him up, without knowing who he was; but some time after his Birth and Descent came to be known, and he encourag'd by it, went away to Court, in such good Time, that being acknowledg'd, he was proclaim'd King of *Persia*, and govern'd 19 Years; at the End whereof, the Period of that Monarchy being now come, there came vast Multitudes of *Turks* out of *Turon*, or *Turkestan*, who entring *Kahaoand*, destroy'd all those Countries, obliging *Yazdgerd*, that went out to meet them to retire to *Karason*. There he receiv'd Advice, that the *Arabs*, *Mahomet's* Commanders, invaded his Dominions on the other Side. He march'd against, and soon came near them, but return'd to *Karason* without Fighting, where he dy'd suddenly, having been King 20 Years, and the last of the *Persians* descended from *Kayumarraz*. In him ended that *Persian* Monarchy, and was transferr'd to the *Kalifs*, Successors to *Mahomet*, who setled their Court at *Kufa*, and next at *Bagadad*, or *Bagdat*, as will appear in the Second Book of this History, which follows with the same Brevity as this First.

The END of the first Book.

THE HISTORY OF PERSIA.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

Which of the Arabs, *and at what Time they ſubdu'd* Perſia.

THE Irruption of the *Arabs* into *Perſia*, put all Things there into ſuch Confuſion and Diſorder, that a thouſand Difficulties muſt needs occur in giving an Account of them. I ſhall therefore endeavour, as far as may be, to avoid all Controverſy, not departing from my intended Brevity, and following as hitherto, *Tarik Myrkond*, and his Method, only laying down the Succeſſion of the Kings, according to my Promiſe in the Beginning of this Work, reducing into a ſmall Compaſs, what he delivers at large in

in considerable Volumes, whose Style and Authority has the first Place among the *Persian* Writers.

To follow the said Author, according to the Chronology of that Nation, *Persia* fell under the Dominion of the *Arabs* in the Year 33 of the *Hegira*, which is the *Mahometan Era*, or Computation of Time, wherein there seems to be some Difference between the *Persians* and the *Arabs*. It being a Matter of much Difficulty exactly to reconcile the different Chronologies, I shall always therein follow our Historian, placing the Year of our Lord in the Margin, upon the most remarkable Occurrences, according to the best of my Knowledge, freely submitting my Judgment to any better Opinion. *Mirkond* tells us, that *Mahamed*, whom we vulgarly call *Mahomet*, reign'd ten Years, and he dying, after much Strife, was succeeded by *Abubakar*, with the Title of *Kalefah* or *Calif*, which was first given to him, and then continu'd to all his Successors. Being to speak of the *Kalefahs* or *Califs*, and the *Califship*, it will be convenient, before we proceed any farther, to explain the Meaning of that Title, which came from those Tyrants, erecting their Sovereignty under the specious Pretence of Zeal for Religion and Sanctity, who therefore took to themselves Names, denoting their Pride and Hpocrisy, as is that of *Kalefah* or *Calif*, properly signifying what in *Latin* we call, *A Deo Datus*, given by God, or the Gift of God, which the *Turks* and *Persians* call, *Quoda verdy*, or *Ala verdy*, being the same Thing, and a Name very proper considering their Actions, for they seem to have been given by God, for a Scourge to all those Nations they have conquer'd. I know, there

A.Ch.655.

Abubakar *first* Calif.

What Calif *signifies.*

are those that give it another Interpretation, but this is the true one, taken from the *Arabick* Root, and the Matter being of no great Consequence, needs not be further controverted. To return to the Course of our History.

Homar *the* 2*d* Calif *subdues* Persia.

Abubakar held the Government two Years and a half, and he dying was succeeded by *Homar*, who held it 10 Years and a half, at the End whereof he enter'd *Persia*, and subdu'd it, in the Reign of *Yazdgerd*, the last King, as was said in the first Book. From this Time the *Califs* are reckon'd Sovereigns of *Persia*; but it is to be observ'd, that the *Califs* here spoken of are those of *Bagadad* or *Bagdat*, by the *Mahometans* reckoned *Mahomet's* true Successors. *Homar* dying, *Osman* or *Otman* succeeded in that Empire, as third *Calif*, and held st 11 Years and a half. After him follow'd *Aly*, by the *Persians* call'd *Morts Aly*, Nephew, and Son in Law to *Mahomet*, who having rul'd 4 Years and a half, was murder'd by one of his own Servans, at the City *Cufa* in *Arabia*. His Body was bury'd in the Desert, as I have observ'd in the Relation of my Journey from *India* to *Italy*. Upon his Death there ensu'd great Distractions among the *Arabs*, about the Succession to the *Califship*, some being for *Acem* or *Hacem*, Son to the deceas'd *Aly*; and others for *Marwya*, Son to *Safion*, the Son of *Harb*, of the Hord or Tribe of *Benhumyx*, and after much Contention, the *Califship* was conferr'd on *Acem*, who enjoy'd it but 6 Months, and *Mawya* succeeded; of whom we shall speak in the next Chapter, nothing remarkable having occurr'd in *Persia* during this Time.

Osman *the* 3*d*.

Aly *the* 4*th*.

Acem *the* 5*th*.

CHAP

CHAP. II.

Of Mawya *the 6th* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia.

ACEM, the Son of *Aly*, and Grand-son to *Mahomet*, being dead, the Califship devolv'd upon *Mawya*, the Son of *Safion*, the Son of *Harb*, of the Hord, or Tribe of *Eben Aumya*, in the 41 Year of the *Hegira*, who was unanimously receiv'd, and acknowledg'd by all the *Mahometans*. Tho' he undertook very considerable Wars, during his Reign, there was none worth speaking of in *Persia*. One *Abdala Zyad*, a famous Commander, had been very assisting to him in his Pretensions, to reward which Service he gave him the Sovereignty of the City *Bazora*, seated near the Conflux of the two Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, where they fall jointly into the Gulph of *Persia*, as shall be said in another Place. *Mawya* held the Califship 20 Years, and dy'd in the 61*th* of the *Hegira*, leaving his Son *Yhezid* in his Place. *An.* 662. *An.* 682.

CHAP. III.

Of Yhezid, *the 7th* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia.

YHEZID succeeded his Father *Mawya* in the Califship, and consequently in the Sovereignty of *Persia*. *Ocem*, Son to *Aly*, Grand-son to *Mahomet*, and Brother to *Acem*, made War on him, and was kill'd in the Plains Yhezid *kills* Ocem

of

of *Kalbelah*, where the City *Mexet Ocem* now stands, in which I was, being founded in that Desert, out of Devotion to his Tomb. *Abdala Zuber*, an *Arabian* Commander, pretending to revenge the Death of *Ocem*, took up Arms against *Yhezid*, and mantain'd a bloody War against him, as long as he liv'd, his whole Reign being but 3 Years. After his Death, he made a greater Progress, possessing himself of *Arabia*, *Persia*, *Aderbajon* and *Karason*, when he return'd to *Egypt*, and thence to *Mecca*, a City in *Arabia*, and a noted Port on the Red Sea, and what hapned to him, we shall say hereafter. *Mawya* succeeded his Father *Yhezid*, in the Year 64 of the *Hegira*.

Abdala Zuber *wars on him, and prospers.*

An. 685.

CHAP. IV.

Mawya,, *the* 8*th* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia, *soon depos'd.*

MAWYA, 2d Son to *Yhezid*, and Grandson to *Mawya* the first, was upon his Father's Death promoted to the Califship, and depos'd again 40 Days after, by the Multitude, on Account of his Incapacity. Great Strife ensu'd about chusing another *Calif*, there being many Pretenders to it; but at length it was carry'd by *Marwan*, then Son of *Akam Eben Humya*, near Kinsman to the depos'd *Calif*, who being at *Damascus* during those Confusions, had usurp'd that Title and Sovereignty, and being strongly supported by *Abdala Zyad*, who we said was made Lord of *Bazora*, fix'd himself on the Throne.

Mawya *the* 2*d and* Marwan *Califs.*

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Marwan, 9*th* Calif. *The* Arabs *make War on him, and destroy* Cufa ; *he marches against and overthrows them, and at his Return is murder'd by his Wife.*

Marwan, Kinsman to *Mawya*, and of his own Tribe, obtain'd the Califship at 80 Years of Age. He was not so universally acknowledg'd, but that great Forces of *Arabs* of *Mecca* oblig'd him to take the Field, who refusing to own him, were for transferring that Empire to the Descendants of *Ali*, looking on all others as Usurpers. To this Purpose, a great Multitude of them took up Arms against *Marwan*, under the Command of one *Soliman Ben Moraeb* ; and after ranging about, attack'd *Cufa*, then a famous City in *Arabia*, and chief Residence of the *Califs*, now extinct, which they destroy'd, making a terrible Slaughter of all they found of the Tribe of *Benhumya*, of which *Marwan* was ; who, being inform'd of the Enemies Design and March, mov'd towards and meeting them at *Orfa*, a City in *Mesopotamia*, so call'd at present, as also *Raha*, and formerly *Ur*, where the *Chaldeans* would have burnt the Patriarch *Abraham*, for owning and worshipping only one God, he fought and routed them, killing *Soliman* their General. *Marwan* having obtain'd this Victory, return'd home well pleas'd ; but his Wife was not so, being much griev'd at the Death of *Soliman*, and many more of her near Relations ; and to ease her self of that Trouble,

Cufa *City destroy'd.*

and

and at once revenge her many Kindred slain in the War, when they were both a Bed together at Night, and he asleep, she strangled
Ann. 686. him, when he was 81 Years of Age, and had reign'd a Year, in that of the *Hegira* 65. His Son *Abdel Malek* succeeded him.

CHAP. VI.

Abdel Malek, 10*th* Calif; *the* Schijahis *make War on him in* Persia *with various Success, and other Accidents till his Death.*

Abdel Malek, Son to the late *Marwan*, succeeded his Father. He liv'd not long in Peace, for a Commander of the *Schyahis*, who are the Followers of *Aly*, whose Name was *Moktar Eben Ebiabed Sacafy*, soon made War on him, supported by one *Ibrahim Aschtor*, who marching into *Hyerak*, possess'd themselves of it; as also of *Aderbaion*, *Diarbek* and *Awa*, Kingdoms and Provinces of *Persia* and *Mesopotamia*, all which sided with them in this Undertaking, wherein such Cruelty was us'd, that no Person whatsoever of the opposite side, whether great or small, was spar'd. *Abdel Malek* march'd against them with 70000 good fighting Men, and after some time spent in the Field, gave the Command of his Army to *Abdala Ziad*, for him to seek them out, as he did, and met *Ibrahim Aschtor*, whom he fought, and was himself defeated and kill'd, after he had been 14 Years Lord of *Bazora*. *Mokter* conferr'd the Government of the Lands of *Jazirey*, which

The Califs Army routed.

which is *Mesopotamia*, on *Ibrahim Malek*, and that of *Bazora* on *Masaeb Ben Zober*, Brother to *Abdula Zober*. This Man afterwards made War on *Mokter*, and coming to a Battle, routed and kill'd him. Some time after *Abdel Malek*, the *Calif*, march'd again with his Forces against *Maraeb Zober* in *Hyerack* or *Persia*, whom he fought and slew, recovering all those Lands, and having concluded this Expedition, return'd to *Damascus*; whence he sent *Oige*, or *Asiage Benjusset*, with an Army against *Abdala Zober*, who still held out in Rebellion at *Mecca*, whom he fought, vanquish'd and slew. His Death gave Peace to to *Abdel Malek* and his Dominions; and he, as a Reward for his many Services, gave *Ositage* the Government of the Lands of *Ayerakhen* and *Karason*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 83, *Abdel Malek* founded a large and populous City in *Mesopotamia*, which he called *Waceb*, signifying the Middle, because seated in the midst between the two Rivers near *Corna*, whereof only the Ruins now remain. *Abdel Malek* having pacified his Dominions, and having reign'd 21 Years and a Month, dy'd in the 86th of the *Hegira*, leaving four Sons, *Oelid*, *Soliman*, *Yhezid* and *Oxon*.

Mokter killed.

Mazaeb and Abdalar Zober slain.

Ann. 703.

Ann. 706.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Oelid, *the* 11*th* Calif, *extends his Empire in* Persia; *he possesses himself of all the Lands of* Maurenahar, Koaerrazm *and* Turkestam; *infests the Dominions of the* Roman *Empire*; *his and* Oiasge's *Death.*

His Conquests.

Oelid, Son to *Abdel Malek*, upon the Death of his Father was own'd as *Calif*, and exceeded him in Wealth and Power, extending his Empire considerably, under the Conduct of his Generals. One of them, call'd *Koseybah Eben Moselem*, by his Order march'd from *Karason* towards *Turquestam*, and possess'd himself of all the Lands of *Maurenahar* and *Koarrazm*. Another, whose Name was *Moseleima Ben Abdel Malek*, with a powerful Army invaded the *Roman* or *Grecian* Empire, advancing towards *Constantinople*; and having subdu'd and destroy'd many Provinces, oblig'd the Emperor to pay him a certain Tribute. *Oelid*, besides being dreadful to his Neighbours, and indefatigable in Warlike Toils and Expeditions, was much addicted to Building, and consequently erected many remarkable and noble Structures in several Places; but the most remarkable was the Mosque at *Damascus*, whose Structure and Magnificence is still admir'd by all that behold it. In this *Oelid*'s Reign, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 96, *Oiasge* dy'd at *Karason*, being the Commander we said was sent to govern those Provinces, at 45 Years of Age; and is said to have been so cruel, that he

And Structures.

Ann. 716.

he there slew in time of Peace, during his Government, above 100000 Men, besides the almost innumerable Multitude that perish'd in the Wars he made and Battles he fought. He left 30000 Slaves of several Nations, which is a Testimony of his Grandeur and Power. About the end of this same Year, the *Calif Oelid* dy'd at the same Age, when he had reign'd 9 Years and 8 Months, and was succeeded by his Brother *Solyman*.

CHAP. VIII.

Solyman, 12*th* Calif, *subdues the Provinces of* Gerion *and* Tabarstam *in* Persia.

Solyman, Son to *Abdel Malek*, and Brother to *Oelid*, was enthron'd in his Place. He wanted not Employment in *Persia*, the Provinces whereof, tho' reduc'd under the Dominion of the *Califfs*, were always inclin'd to revolt, sometimes one, and sometimes another. Among the rest there were two, which had not been conquer'd, being those of *Gerion* and *Tabarstam*, whither he sent *Yerid Eben Makalep*, an able Commander, with a sufficient Force, who made War on and subdu'd them. During the Reign of *Solyman*, by the Advice of *Jasor Barmaky*, his *Vizier*, the Value of Money was settled in *Persia*, which till then had been very uncertain, to the great Detriment of the People. *Solyman* having reign'd two Years and six Months, dy'd at *Damascus* of a violent Pleurisy, leaving one *Hamar*, his Cousin German, to succeed him.

Revolts in Persia.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Hamar, 13*th* Calif, *the Descendants of* Abas, *make War on him, and he is imprison'd.*

Hamar, or *Homar*, Son to *Abdala Azir*, the Son of *Marwan*, Cousin German to the late *Solyman*, was rais'd to the *Califship*. Some say he usurp'd it by Force, tho' oppos'd by *Solyman*'s Brothers; others that he advanc'd him before his Death. However it was, he remain'd possess'd of the Empire. He was extraordinary zealous and superstitious in his Sect. About the Year of the *Hegira* 100, the Race of *Abas*, Unkle to *Mahomet*, rebell'd against *Hamar*, and made War on him, claiming a Right to the *Califship*, and particularly one *Aly Eben Abas*; who sending Embassadors to several Princes, excited and endeavour'd to perswade them to cast off their Obedience to *Hamar*, and own him for their Sovereign, in regard to his rightful Title to that Empire. Whilst he was managing these Affairs, *Oxon*, Son to *Abdel Malek*, Brother to *Solyman*, the late *Calif*, poison'd *Hamar*, whereof he dy'd in the 4th Yerr of his Age, when he had reign'd two Years and five Months in the 101 of the *Hegira*.

Ann. 720.

Aly Eben Abas *rebels.*

Ann. 721.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Yhezid *the* 2d, *and* 14th Calif. Abu Mocelem *makes War on him in* Karason, *in favour of* Aly Ben Abas, *which lasts till his Death.*

UPON the Death of *Hamar*, the Califship was conferr'd on *Yhezid*, third Son to *Abdel Malek*. Soon after he was enthron'd, one *Abu Mocelem Karasony* declar'd in *Karason* for *Aly Ben Abas*, rebelling against *Yhezid*, and making War on him for two Years continually; at the end whereof *Yhezid* dy'd, without having done any thing memorable, when he had reign'd four Years and eight Months, and in the 105th of the *Hegira*. He was succeeded by his Brother *Oxon*, who we said poison'd *Hamar*. Ann. 724.

CHAP. XI.

Oxon, 15th Calif, *and Lord of* Persia.

OXON, Brother to the late *Yhezid*, upon his Death obtain'd the *Califship*, and quell'd some Commotions that happen'd in *Persia*, wherein he was well serv'd by two Commanders of Note called *Nacer Sayar* and *Yucef Eben Hamar el Sacafy*, both whom he appointed Governours; *Sayar* of the Lands of *Karason*, and *Yucef Eben Hamar* of *Hyerakhen*; whereupon those Kingdoms of *Persia* continu'd peaceable, and without any considera- *Peace in* Persia.

ble Disturbance, during all the Reign of Oxon, which lasted 19 Years and eight Months, and he dy'd in the 124th of the *Hegira*.

Ann. 773.

CHAP. XII.

Oelid *the* 2*d*, 16*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Persia.

OElid, the Son of *Yhezid*, was created *Calif* upon the Death of *Oxon*, and maintain'd War against the Race of *Abas*, of whom was slain one *Abdalah Ben Abaz*, a prime Pretender to the Califship, by whose Death he thought himself more securely setled in the Empire; and the more to establish himself, he caus'd two Sons of the late *Abdalah* to be sworn his Successors in the Government, hoping by that Means to appease that Family. One of the two was call'd *Ebrahem el Safa*. However all this Precaution avail'd him little, for being himself ill-natur'd, and of an unsufferable Temper, he soon became so universally odious, and particularly to the Soldiers, that he was murder'd by them, when he had reign'd 14 Months.

Oelid *murder'd.*

CHAP. XIII.

Yhezid *the* 3*d*, 17*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Persia.

YHezid, Son to *Oelid*, commonly call'd *Yhezid Nokkes*, that is, the Senseless, because he again re-assum'd all that his Predecessors

ceſſors had granted away, came to the Government at 40 Years of Age, and held it bout ſix Months, at the end whereof he dy'd at *Damaſcus*.

CHAP. XIV.

Ebrahem, 14*th* Calif, *depoſed by* Marwan, *who uſurps, ſeizes and murders him.*

UPON the Death of *Yhezid*, the Califſhip was conferr'd on *Ebrahem* his Brother, who having held it but two Months, and being diſcover'd to be a Man of no Spirit, ſeveral Perſons inſulted him, and among them *Marwan*, one of his own Tribe, who rebell'd and ſeiz'd him; and after three Months Impriſonment, order'd him to be kill'd, thruſting himſelf into the Throne.

CHAP. XV.

Marwan *the* 2*d*, 19*th* Calif, *and laſt of the Tribe of* Ben Humya; *Affairs of* Perſia *during his Reign.*

Marwan having intruded himſelf into the *Califſhip*, all things were preſently in Confuſion, and great Diſcord enſu'd among the *Mahometans*. The Province of *Karaſon* was then govern'd by *Nacer Sayar*, as was ſaid in the 11*th* Chapter, and he made War on *Malab*, who govern'd the Kingdom of *Kermon*, which

Diſcord among Mahometans

prov'd tedious and bloody. The Tribe or Family of *Abas* rose in Arms at *Mar Wo*, and the two Governours of *Karason* and *Kermon* enter'd into a Confederacy against them. Both Sides made great Preparations for this War, and coming at length to a Battel, the Partisans of *Abas* overthrew the two Viceroys, killing him of *Kermon* with above 100000 Men of the Faction of *Benhumia*; the Governour of *Karason* flying to *Sawa*, where he was kill'd. One *Abu Mocelem* had been left to command in the Province of *Karason*, and he laying hold of that Opportunity usurp'd that Country. Not so satisfy'd, but still aspiring to more, he sent *Katabey Eben Exabib* with a considerable Army to possess himself of *Hierak*, as he did; nor did he stop there, but proceeded as far as *Ousa* in *Arabia*. *Marwan* was then at *Wacet* with his Army, and advanc'd towards him. Both meeting in the Night near the River *Euphrates*, they immediatly engag'd, and so violent was the Shock given by *Marwan's* Forces, that it oblig'd *Katabey's* Troops to retire towards the River, into which *Katabey* fell, and was drowned, unperceiv'd by his own Men, who believing he was still among them, gave such a vigorous Charge upon *Marwan*, that they overthrew him. It was now near break of Day, and as soon as it clear'd up, *Katabey* was miss'd, in whose stead they presently appointed his Son *Acem* General. He without losing any Time pursu'd the Enemy, who fled to *Cufa*, and meeting there with *Safa*, of the Family of *Abas*, and one of the two whom *Oelud* the 2d had caus'd to be sworn his Successors, as was said in the 12*th* Chapter, they proclaim'd him *Calif* against his Will. *Safa* being thus possess'd of the Empire, sent another

Abu Mocelem *seizes* Karaeion *and* Hierak.

Katabey *drowned, his Son* Acem *succeeds him.*

other *Safa*, with *Abdula* and *Abdsamet*, all three of them his Unkles, with Forces against *Marwan*; who having rally'd his Troops, was again return'd near the River *Euphrates*. There they found and gave him Battel, wherein *Marwan* being routed fled to *Mecere*, that is *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*, where he was taken and kill'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 132, with fourscore more Men of Note, of the Race of *Eben Humia*, and for all those who were dead before, if they knew where they had been bury'd, they took them up and burnt their Bones, without sparing any one of all they could find of that Tribe, except one *Hamar Ben Abdala Azis*, on whom, for his extraordinary Goodness, all the adverse Party had Compassion, and spar'd him, granting him his Life and Liberty; such is the Power of Virtue even among Enemies. *Marwan* had reign'd 5 Years, when he dy'd, and in him ended the Rule of the Family of *Ben Humia*, which was transferr'd to those of *Eben Abas*, who held it many Years, as will appear.

Marwan *routed and kill'd.*

An. 751.

CHAP. XVI.

Safah 20*th* Calif, *and first of the Tribe or Race of* Eben Abas.

The Race of Abas *ascends the Throne.*

SAFA the Son of *Abdala*, the Son of *Aly*, the Son of *Abdala*, the Son of *Abas*, was the first *Calif* of this Family, and rais'd to it as was said above. When he was setled on the Throne, he appointed two of his Unkles, the one call'd *Abdula*, to govern the Dominions of *Syria*, *Egypt* and *Africk*, as Subject to him;

and the other nam'd *Daud* or *David*, for those of *Medina* and *Mecca*. He sent his own Brother *Abujafar*, to quell some Troubles there were in the Country of *Wacet*, which he did, and when return'd, sent him to *Karason*. This *Karason*, by the *Portugueses* generally call'd *Corazon* or *Corasone*, is a considerable Province, and one of the most noted in *Persia*, for Extent, Plenty and Wealth. It contains several great Cities, the Metropolis whereof is call'd *Mexad*, where *Ismael Sophy* and his Successors lye bury'd. It is encompass'd with a strong Wall, on which are three hundred Towers, about a Musquet Shot distant from each other; the Country about it very fertile and well-stor'd; the Natives are fair Complexion'd, Beautiful, and Warlike; their Manners and Customs the same as those of the other *Persians*. I have given this short Account of it, because we shall have much Occasion to speak of it in this History. The famous River *Jehun* parts this Province of *Karason* from those of *Turon* or *Turkestan* and *Usbek*, and the Country again beyond that, the *Persians* call *Maurenahar*, which signifies, beyond the River, and is to the Northward; which is requisite to be observ'd for the better Understanding of what shall be said of these Provinces. *Abusalem*, as was said above, had usurp'd the Sovereignty of the Province *Karason*, or as we now call it *Chorason*, who upon the Arrival of *Abujafar*, the *Calif's* Brother, not only submitted, and put himself into his Power, but serv'd and assisted him in all Points with great Loyalty; which well deserves to be taken notice of at that Time, and among those People, considering how faithless and unconstant they then were. *Safa* employ'd, as his Grand *Vizier*, one *Abusalemah*, a Man of singu-

Karason *Province.*

lar

lar Capacity, whom he particularly affected for his good Service; yet suspecting that he had some Designs against his Person and Crown, he caus'd him to be put to Death, and conferr'd the Dignity of *Wazir* or *Vizier*, which has been said above to be Prime Minister, on *Kaled Barmaqui*, who well deserv'd it for his Wisdom. *Safa* was *Calif* four Years and nine Months, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 136, which is of CHRIST 754. His Brother *Abujafar* succeeded him, he having so order'd it before his Death.

Safa *dyes.*

An. 754.

CHAP. XVII.

Abu-Jafar *21th* Calif, *puts to Death the Governour of* Karason, *for intending to rebel; reduces the Rebels of* Mecca *and* Bazora; *builds the City of* Bagdat *on the River* Tigris, *and dyes on the Way to* Mecca.

Abujafar upon the Death of his Brother, got Possession of the Califship, and was no sooner seated on the Throne, than Advice was brought him, that *Abusalem*, Governour of *Kerason*, who we said above had been so courteous towards him, when he visited that Province in his Brother's Days, did design to rebel. He contriv'd to get him into his Hands, and put him to Death, by which Means *Persia* was kept in some Tranquillity; but it was not so in *Arabia*, where the People of *Mecca* and *Arabia* had revolted, against whom he sent his Generals, with a sufficient Power, who subdu'd them, tho' not without much Bloodshed. In

Rebellion in Arabia *quell'd.*

the Year of the *Hegira* 147, which is of CHRIST 763, *Abujafar* set out from *Cufa*, took a Progress through several of his Kingdoms, cross'd the Country of *Mesopotamia*, and coming to the River *Tigris*, was so taken with the Situation, the Fertility of the Country, and the Conveniency of the Place to attend to all Parts of his Dominions, that he there founded a large Town, which on Account of the many and pleasant Orchards about it, they call'd *Bagadad*, from *Baga*, a *Persian* Word, signifying a Garden or Orchard; which I shall treat of more particularly in another Place.

Foundation of Bagdat.

Abujafar dyes, An. 777.

Abujafar, having been *Calif* 23 Years, dy'd on his Way to *Mecca*, in the Desert call'd *Bir Maymum*, that is, *Maymum's* Well, being the Name of the Person that caus'd it to be made; in the Year of the *Hegira* 159, and of *Christ* 777.

CHAP. XVIII.

Mahady Bila 22*th* Calif, *and what hapned in his Time.*

Mahady Bila, Son to *Abujafar*, succeeded his Father, and govern'd peaceably till the 4*th* Year of his Reign, when a Commander call'd *Akem Ben Oxem*, who had been Secretary to *Abu Masalem*, the Governour of *Karason*, put to Death by *Abujafar*, having a considerable Body of Men, attempted to usurp those Provinces. This Man had lost one Eye, his Countenance was frightful, and his Disposition Diabolical. Not content with aspiring to be a King, the Devil prevail'd with him so far, as to require to be worshipp'd as a God

A Rebel would be honour'd as a God.

God, and therefore he cover'd his Face with a Veil, saying, *that Men were not worthy to see it*; and as such Monsters never want Followers, by reason of the Libertinism and Disorders they allow of, many adher'd to this Hellish Deceiver, and either through Fear or Ignorance, he was admitted by some Provinces. *Mahady* the *Calif*, hearing this News, drew together a considerable Army, and sent it against him, under the Command of *Monsaeb*, who advanc'd into *Karason*, with all possible Expedition. *Akem's* Kindred and Adherents understanding how great a Power was marching against him, to shun the Danger and secure their own Lives, poison'd him, and hid his dead Body, where it could never be found, giving out that he was gone up into Heaven. However *Monsaeb*, when he had settled those Countries in Peace, perceiving that *Akem* was not to be found dead nor alive, took full Revenge on his Children, Kindred and Followers, burning as many of them as he could get into his Hands, which was no small Number. This hapned in the Year of the *Hegira* 163, and of CHRIST 781. Thus no other remarkable Accident hapned in *Persia* till the Year 169 of the *Hegira* and of CHRIST 786, when *Mahady Bila* dy'd, in the 43*th* Year of his Age, having been *Calif* 10 Years and one Month.

Mahady dyes, *An.* 786.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Elady Bila Muza Ben Mahady 23*d* Calif.

Elady Bila Muza, Son to *Mahady*, succeeded him, and enjoy'd that Dignity but a short Time; for tho' a graceful and sprightly Youth he reign'd but one Year and 3 Months, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 170, of CHRIST 787, much lamented, because he was a very affable and good natur'd Prince.

Elady *dies* Ann. 787.

CHAP. XX.

Araxid Bila Harun, 24*th Calif.*

Araxid Bila Harun Eben Mahady, Brother to the deceas'd *Elady*, succeeded him in the Throne, and made *Kyahya Kaled Bermaky*, a Man of great Wisdom and Conduct, his *Wazir*, or Prime *Vizier*. *Araxid* had four Sons; *Mamed Hamin*, to whom he committed all he had possess'd from *Aleppo* Westward; *Mahamun*, whom he plac'd over *Persia*, *Karason*, and all those Parts; the third, *Kacem*, whom he made Governour of the Provinces of *Aderbaion* and *Diarbeck*; but the fourth called *Mataſom*, being then in Disgrace, was left unprovided for, tho' he afterwards made his Lot good. In the Year of the *Hegira* 187, and of CHRIST 804, *Araxid* put to Death the *Beramequas*, Men of a noble Family, and his *Wazirs*, or Viziers, upon suspi-

Araxid *gives Governments to his Sons.*

cion that they designed to murder him; and put *Fazel Eben Errabya* into their Places. Three Years after the Forces of the *Roman* or *Grecian* Empire, made War on him, against whom he sent his Army, which not only expell'd them his Dominions, but broke into that Empire with such Fury, that they oblig'd the Emperor to sue for Peace, and purchase it for a great Sum of Money. When this War was ended, another broke out in *Maurenahar*, where one *Rash Eben Nacer* of *Samarkand* had assum'd the Title of King, against whom *Araxid* march d in Person; but was cut off by Death in the way, ending his Days at *Thus*, the capital City of the Kingdom, or Province of that Name; when he had reign'd 23 Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 193, which is of CHRIST 810.

Defeats the Christians.

Dies Ann. 810.

CHAP. XXI.

Mahamed Amin, 25*th* Calif; *he makes War on his Brother* Mahamun, *by whom he is defeated and killed.*

Araxid Harun had appointed his Son *Mahamed Amin* to succeed him in the Califship, who being accordingly rais'd to it, resented the Dividing of the Empire among so many, which his Father had been possessed of alone. This Thought perplexing him, his first Care was to raise a mighty Army, with which he order'd his Generals to invade *Persia*. His Brother *Mahamun*, who we said had been left by his Father possess'd of that Kingdom, being jealous of *Mahamed Amin*'s Pre-

Preparations, was upon his Guard, and perceiving the Design was against him, sent his *Wazir*, or Vizier, *Taker Ben Ocem*, to oppose his Brother, with the greatest Force he could gather. *Naker* gave the Enemy Battle, overthrew and pursu'd him to *Bagdat*, which he also enter'd by Force, and took the Calif *Mahamed Amin*, whom he carried back half way, and then put him to Death, when he had reign'd four Years and seventh Months.

CHAP. XXII.

Mahamun Ben Arun, 26*th* Calif.

Mahamun Ben Arum, Brother to the late *Amin*, was proclaim'd *Calif*, and appointed *Fazele Ben Saleh*, a Wise and Politick Man, his *Wazir*, or Vizier. This Man, during his Authority, with great Industry and Charge, caus'd all the Books of Philosophy, Mathematicks, Astrology and Physick, that could be found to be translated out of the *Greek* and *Syrian* Languages into *Arabick*. All *Persia* was in Peace, when one *Babek Corandin* rebell'd in the Province of *Aderbaion*, against whom he sent his Forces, which were defeated; and when the War had continu'd some time in those Parts, they were at last oblig'd to come to an Agreement. In the Year of the *Hegira* 205, which is of CHRIST 821, the Calif *Mahamun* sent *Taker Zulemin* to govern the Province of *Karason*, who set out immediately for his Government; but when he was there, *Mahamun* repented, being inform'd that *Taker* aspir'd higher, than to be Go-

Translations into Arabick.

Ann. 821.

Governour under another; for which Reason, to prevent further Danger, he order'd *Hamed Abichaled* to prepare to march against him. When he was upon his Departure, News was brought of *Taker*'s Death, at which the Calif was well pleas'd; yet remembring how well *Taker* had serv'd him, he conferr'd that Government on a Son of his call'd *Talake Ben Taker*. *Abdula Ben Taker*, another Son of *Taker* had gone with him to *Karason* with the Post of Captain General of the Army, who, when his Father dy'd, was march'd with an Army, to make War on the *Usbecks*, for refusing to embrace his Sect. Returning Victorious from that Expedition, he found his Father dead, and his Brother possess'd of the Government, which he highly resented; but his Brother *Talake*, with the Calif's Consent, admitted him as his Companion, with equal Power in the Government. Thus *Persia* continu'd in Peace as long as *Mahamun* liv'd, who dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 210, and of CHRIST 826, when he had reign'd 12 Years and 7 Months.

Troubles prevented in Persia.

CHAP. XXIII.

Abu Ezach Matacon, 27*th* Calif; *he builds the City* Samarrah; *Wars in* Persia, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

Abu Ezach Matacon, Son to *Harun*, whom his Father, upon some Disgust, had disinherited, his Brother *Mamun* dying, was rais'd to the Califship. He, upon his coming to the Throne, founded a City to the North-

Samarrah *built and abandon'd.*

Northward of *Bagdat*, three Miles from the River *Tigris*, which he call'd *Samarrah*, which having in a short time grown up to be very considerable, afterwards declin'd so much, that at present only the Ruins of it are to be seen. Upon the Death of *Mamun*, *Babek Coramdin* had rebell'd again in *Aderbaion*, against whom the Calif sent his Army, by which he was overthrown and taken, and the Calif caus'd his Hands and Feet to be cut off, and him to be hang'd. There were also some Commotions in the Province of *Karason*.

Rebel executed.

Sifton *Province.*

The Province of *Sifton* lies below those of *Karason* and *Kermon*, towards the *Persian* Gulph, and it has *Persia*, to which it is subject, on the one side, and the Kingdom of *Macron*, bordering upon *India* on the other. In this Province of *Sifton*, a private Man rebell'd at this time, and finding many Followers, made himself Master of a considerable Part of it by Force of Arms. This being under the Government of *Karason*, *Talake*, who commanded there, drew together his Forces, and march'd against *Amzah*, so the Rebel was call'd, whom he fought and defeated; but returning to *Karason*, he fell sick and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 213, of CHRIST 829; leaving the Government to his Son *Aly Ben Talake*, on whom several neighbour Princes under the Jurisdiction of *Persia* made War, and he was kill'd in a Fight at *Nixabur*. His Death did not put an end to the War, which rather seem'd to grow the hotter by it. *Abu Ezah Metacon* at this time made War on the *Grecian* Empire, and obtain'd some Victories, but dy'd at 48 Years of Age, in the Year of the *Hegira* 217, of CHRIST 833, when he had reign'd 8 Years. He had eight Sons and eight

Civil Wars.

Ann. 833.

eight Daughters, and 8000 Slaves, and took eight Cities, Capitals of eight Kingdoms, whose eight Kings he put to Death, and left behind him eight Millions of Gold in his Treasury. He was a great Warrior, and at the same time very affable and generous, much belov'd by all Men, and more particularly by the Soldiers.

CHAP. XXIV.

Wacek, 28*th* Calif, *and all that happen'd in* Persia *till his Death.*

Wacek succeeded his Father *Matacem* in the Califship, and did nothing remarkable during his Reign. Upon the Death of *Aly Ben Takale*, his Unkle *Abdula Ben Taker* had the Government of *Karason* conferr'd on him, during whose Administration, notwithstanding those Lands are generally extraordinary fruitful, there happen'd a dreadful and universal Famine, occasion'd by Drought, which continu'd almost three Years, so that the Country was almost dispeopled; but great Rains ensuing the Earth produc'd as before, so that the Natives return'd to their Dwellings. About this time the *Persian Mahometans* combin'd together against their Heathen Countrymen, commonly call'd *Mayusy*, being those that worship Fire, as has been said in the first Book, who are still very numerous in *Persia*, and made a mighty Slaughter among them. At this same time dy'd *Abdula Taker* in *Karason*, leaving his Son *Taker Ben Abdula* in his Place, who was confirm'd in it by the Calif *Wa-*

Dreadful Famine.

Slaughter of Pagans.

Wacek, and he dy'd two Years after, having reign'd five Years and nine Months, in the Ann. 838. Year of the *Hegira* 222, and of CHRIST 838, leaving the Empire to his Brother *Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar*.

CHAP. XXV.

Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar, 29*th* Calif.

Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar, Brother to the deceas'd Calif, ascended the Throne upon his Death. The Race of *Aly* made War on him in *Persia*, taking for their Pretence the Death of his Son *Ocem*, because he us'd all possible means to obstruct the Pilgrimage to his Tomb, which is at *Mexat Ocem*, in the Desert of *Kalbelah*, where I was in the Year of our Lord 1604; and the better to keep them away, he caus'd the River *Euphrates* to be let out in several Places, to cut off the Passage by drowning the Fields, which was easy enough to be done, by reason of the Flatness of that Desert, which I give a more particular Account of in my Travels. During the Reign of the Calif *Almoto Wakel*, dy'd *Taker Ben Abdula*, and the Government of *Karason* was conferr'd on his Son *Mahamed Ben Taker*; and he gave the Lands of *Tabarstan* to his Unkle *Solyman*, Brother to his Father, for his Support; but he enjoy'd them not long, as we shall soon see. *Almoto Wakel* call'd *Monsacer Bila*, being ambitious of Rule, the sooner to attain it, caus'd his Father to be murder'd by his Slaves, in the Year of the *Hegira* 234, and of CHRIST 850, when he had reign'd 12 Years.

Calif murder'd by his Son, Ann. 850.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Montacer Bila, 30*th* Calif.

Montacer Bila Hamed, having murder'd his Father, took upon him the Title of Calif, which he enjoy'd but six Months, at the end whereof he dy'd.

CHAP. XXVII.

Abul Abas Hamed, 31*st* Calif, *murder'd by his Slaves.*

Abul Abas Hamed, Son to *Mahamed*, the Son of *Montacer*, Cousin German to the deceas'd *Montacer*, succeeded him; and having reign'd five Years and nine Months ill approv'd of, was seiz'd by the Soldiers, and closely confin'd, where he dy'd for Hunger. *The Calif starv'd to Death.*

The Affairs of *Persia* were at this time in some Confusion; for in the Province of *Tabarstan*, which we said above was given by *Taher* to his Unkle *Solyman*, one *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy*, which signifies one of the great ones, or those that are near to God, because he was of the Family of *Aly*, rebell'd, and possess'd himself of that Country, obliging *Solyman* to take his Flight to *Bagdat*, where *Mosta Hbin*, who was then Calif, gave him a favourable Reception, and did him much Honour. *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy*, having secur'd the Province to himself by placing good Garisons, broke farther into *Persia*, and possess'd himself of those of *Deilon*, *Gueylon*, *Habar*, *Successful Rebellion.*

bar, *Zenion* and *Casbin*, which he held till the Year of the *Hegira* 271, when he lost them again, as we shall soon see. This happen'd
Ann. 860 in the Year of the *Hegira* 245, which is of CHRIST 860.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Mosta Hhin, 32*d* Calif.

THE Soldiers having, as was said above, murder'd the Calif *Abul Abas Hamed*, there ensu'd great Strife among the *Mahometans* about creating another, which after several Months ended in the Election of *Mosta Hhin*, Kinsman to the last, but somewhat remote, who enjoy'd it not long; for at the end of 16 Months he fell sick and dy'd; what was mention'd in the foregoing Chapter happning in his Time.

CHAP. XXIX.

Almater Bila, 33*d* Calif, *recovers some of the Lands that had been seiz'd by* Acem Ben Zeyd, *and is murder'd by his Soldiers.*

ALmatez *Bila* succeeded in the Califship, and rais'd Forces to reduce *Acem Ben Zeyd*, which he put under the Conduct of one *Muza Ben Buka*, who enter'd *Persia*, fought the Enemy, obtain'd a Victory, and recover'd the City *Rey Xarear*, *Casbin*, *Habar* and *Zenion*.
Rebels defeated. Duke *Alawy*, Brother to *Acem Ben Zeyd*, fled
Ann, 886. after

after his Defeat to *Tabarstam*, where he dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 272, which is of CHRIST 886. Another Brother of his, call'd *Mahamed Eben Zeyd*, remain'd in his Place, who held that Province till the Year of the *Hegira* 287, when he was kill'd by *Mahamed Ben Haron Samany*. Whilst these Things happen'd in *Persia*, the Soldiers taking a Dislike to the Calif *Almatez Bila*, murder'd him; for as he was bathing in a hot House, they broke in, and whilst he was in that violent Heat, made him drink a Pot of very cold Water, which occasion'd his speedy Death, when he had rul'd three Years and a half.

CHAP. XXX.

Motady Bila, 34*th* Calif.

UPON the Death of *Almatez*, the Califship was conferr'd on *Motady Bila*, who held it but 11 Months, at the end whereof he was murder'd by the Soldiers, and was succeeded by *Almat Hamed Bila*.

CHAP. XXXI.

Almat Hamed Bila, 35*th* Calif; *and what happen'd under him in* Persia.

ALmat *Hamed Bila*, upon the Death of *Motady*, ascended the Throne of the Califs; and to secure himself against his Kindred and Friends, for as the World went

then, the neareſt Kin were moſt to be ſuſpected, he ſent them all away with Commands to the Countries of *Hyaman* and *Medina*, in *Arabia*. In regard that we have often occaſion in this Hiſtory to mention *Medina*, it is convenient to inform the Reader, that this is not the particular Name of a Place, but ſignifies a City, or Town, and therefore they generally add another to it, to expreſs what Town they ſpeak of, as among us we ſay *Medina Celi*, *Medina Sidonia*, *Medina del Campo*; but that of *Arabia*, the *Perſians* and *Arabs*, by way of Excellency, as the Chief of all Cities, call abſolutely *Medina*, tho' ſometimes they alſo name it *Medina el Nabi*, that is, the City of the Prophet; becauſe there *Mahomet* firſt broach'd his helliſh Sect, and was himſelf there bury'd; and to this Place it is the *Mahometans* reſort, when they ſay they go to *Mecca*, tho' it be quite another Place; for *Medina* is an Inland Town, four Days Journey diſtant from *Mecca*, or *Mokah*, which is a Maritime City, ſeated on the Bank of the *Red Sea*, and the principal Mart of the *Mahometans* that ſail from thoſe Parts to the Baſtward; and becauſe that thoſe, who come from the Eaſt, Land at *Mecca*, therefore they ſay they are bound for *Mecca*, and ſo ſay thoſe who go from theſe Weſtern Parts; becauſe when their Pilgrimage is perform'd, they go on to *Mecca*, to Trade with the Ships that reſort thither with Goods for *India*, and other Eaſtern Parts. This City being on the Shore of the *Red Sea*, and the moſt conſiderable within that Gulph, therefore the *Portugueſes* call that the *Streights* of *Mecca*. Thus the Reader is inform'd concerning *Medina* and *Mecca*, which is upon this Gulph I have here

Medina, *what it is.*

here mention'd, and not on that of *Persia*, as a grave Historian of our Times has erroneously deliver'd.

To return to *Persia*, it was about this time full of Confusion and Troubles, whereof I shall mention the principal Heads, according to my usual Brevity. A new Commander appear'd there at this time, call'd *Yacub Leis*, who, with no great Number of Men, ravag'd the Country of *Sistom*, and possess'd himself of the Capital of the same Name, whence he made some Excursions into the Province of *Karason*, going on successively as far as *Harat* in *Maurenahar*, where *Mahamed Ben Taher* had a Garison, which *Yacub Leis* attack'd, and took the City. Thence he turn'd back against *Mahamed Ben Taher*, who, as has been said, was Governour of *Karason*, and hearing of his coming, left him the Country, and fled to *Nixabur*. On the other side, *Acen Ben Zeyd Alawy* carry'd on his Conquests, and made himself Master of the Lands of *Gerion*, which shut up *Mahamed Ben Taher*, who, having no other Recourse, gather'd all the Forces he was able, march'd against *Yacub Leis*, fought him, and was overthrown, leaving him a considerable Booty, with the Provinces of *Sistan* and *Karason*, and to *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy* that of *Gerion* as far as *Rey Xarcer*. Himself, attended by a few, fled back to *Nixabur*, whither *Yacub Leis* pursu'd him. *Abdula Salch*, *Wazir*, or Vizier, to *Taher*, met him on the Way alone, and ask'd him, *By what Authority he rais'd and prosecuted the War? For, if he had any from the* Calif, *no Opposition should be made, upon his producing it. Yacub Leis* drawing his Sword, answer'd, *That was his Title and Authority. Abdula Salch* re-

Yamb Leis, a Rebel.

His Success.

turn'd with this Answer to *Taher*, who, tho' he endeavour'd it, could not obtain any reasonable Terms from *Leis*. In fine, they came to another Battel, and *Taher* was taken and kill'd., being the last of the Name who held that Government, and of a nobler Disposition and greater Virtue, than any of his Predecessors. The better to show how wonderful the Affairs of *Yacub Leis* were, and the unaccountable Accidents in the Life of Man, I will give a short Account of his, without deviating from my History.

Original and Life of Yacub Leis.

In the Province of *Sistom* in *Persia*, liv'd one brought up to the Trade they call *Rug*, which with us is the same as a Brazier, whose Name was *Leis*. This Man had three Sons, *Yacub*, *Hamer* and *Aly*, of which *Yacub* was brought up to his Father's Trade, and being yet but a Boy, when he began to earn some small Wages, he spent part of it to maintain himself, and laid up the Rest to make merry at his leisure Hours among other Boys, his Friends and Acquaintance, among whom he laid out the little he had in Eating and mean Diversion. This he continu'd till grown up to Maturity, and with him his Companions, with whom from Childrens Sports and Mock Fights, he advanc'd to the Real; so that *Yacub* aspiring to something above a Brazier, and having won them by his Generosity, which is ever very powerful, they being now dispos'd to follow him, arm'd themselves the best they could, and begun to rob on the High-ways, always practising his natural Free-heartedness towards his Companions, who call'd him their Captain, and using Compassion towards the unfortunate Persons that fell into his Hands, treating them with Moderation, taking the least

least part of what they had, and distributing it among his Men, without reserving any thing to himself. At this Time, *Taher Ben Abdula*, above spoken of, was Governour of *Karason*, to whom Travellers complain'd of those Robberies; and soon after he was inform'd, that one *Salekh Ben Azar*, being joyn'd by *Yacub Leis*, who now had enter'd himself and his Men into Pay, as their Captain, had broke into the Territories of *Sistom*, and plunder'd that City. *Taher Ben Abdula* sent his Forces against them, and drove them out of *Sistom*. Soon after, *Taher* dying, and his Son *Mahamed Ben Taher* succeeding him in the Government, another Commander, call'd *Dram Ben Nacer*, follow'd by the same *Leis*, broke into the same Country, and possess'd himself of it; and *Dram* intending to carry on his Conquest, committed the Care of *Sistom* to *Yacub Leis*. *Taher* laid his Business so well, that he took *Dram Ben Nacer*, and sent him Prisoner to *Bagdat*, where the *Calif* kept him close confin'd for a long Time. *Yacub Leis* taking all Advantages, and being now free from any Subjection to *Dram*, took upon him the Sovereignty of *Sistom*, behaving himself so discreetly, that he daily gain'd the Love of his People. He fortify'd that City, and having garrison'd it, and other convenient Places throughout the Province, made some Incursions into *Karason*; which he enter'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 253, of CHRIST 868, with a numerous Army, and reduc'd it under his Dominion. Next he possess'd himself of *Kerat* and *Fuxangh*, and advanc'd to *Kermon*, and took it, driving out the Garrison plac'd in that Kingdom by the Governour of *Schiras*, whom he also besieg'd in that City, which not being tenable, he surrender'd, and there his

His Conquests.

An. 868.

Men had an extraordinary Booty, whereof he took nothing to himself but twenty Faulcons, that had belong'd to the Lord of *Schiras*, ten whereof were white, and the other ten of several Colours, and 200 *Manes* of pure Musk, being 450 Pounds, which, together with the Faulcons, he sent as a Present to the *Calif* of *Bagdat*, offering to serve him to the utmost of his Power. Having setled his Affairs there, he return'd to *Sistom*, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 257, which is of CHRIST 872, being inform'd there were Commotions at *Schiras*, he return'd thither to secure it. The *Calif*, who was not well pleas'd with *Yacub Leis* and his Proceedings, sent him Orders immediately to depart *Schiras*, and the Dominions of *Persia*, without ever presuming to return, but contenting himself with what he had already unjustly usurp'd. *Yacub Leis* was not then in a Condition to contest his Authority, but obey'd and departed *Persia*, retiring to *Balk* in *Maurenahar*, and thence to *Cabul*, between *Karason* and *Maurenahar*, which Places he subdu'd. Thence he turn'd off to *Herat*, and so to *Nixabur*, where he fought *Mahamed Ben Taher*, and overthrew him, as was said at first. Then directing his March to *Karason*, and passing by *Tabarstam*, came to *Sary*. Those Lands were in the Possession of *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy*, above mention'd, who advanc'd to meet *Leis* with a well appointed Army. They fought, and *Ben Zeyd* being routed, fled to *Delmon* or *Delimon* or *Delon*, for it has all those Names, a City in the Province of *Gueylon*. Having remov'd this Obstacle, *Yacub Leis* held on his Way to *Amal*, in Quest of *Acem Ben Zeyd*. The Winter Season was now come on, and those Countries being very cold, such mighty

An. 872.

Looses 40000 *Men.*

Snows

Snows and Storms ensu'd, as oblig'd him at that Time to discontinue the Pursuit, with the Loss of 40000 fighting Men, destroy'd by the hard Weather. The *Calif* thought this a good Opportunity to check the Power of *Leis*, and accordingly sent Expresses into all Countries that were under his Dominion, perswading his Governours to revolt; but it fell out quite contrary than the *Calif* expected; for *Mahamed Ben Wacel Tamimy*, one of the many *Arabian* Commanders there were in *Persia*, conspir'd to destroy the Garrisons the *Calif* had in the Cities and Fortresses of *Persia*, and cutting off most of them, secur'd those Places to himself. However, one *Muza Ben Bugan*, Lord of *Bazora*, *Hamas* and *Hyamama*, Provinces in *Arabia*, adjoyning to *Persia*, held for the *Calif*, and hearing of those Commotions, drew together a considerable Army, which he put under the Command of *Abderaman Ben Mosiek*, who mov'd towards *Mahamed Ben Wacel Tamimy*, whom he engag'd, but was routed and taken. *Leis* was not idle, during those Troubles, but when he perceiv'd they were at the Height, advanc'd towards *Persia*, which he invaded so opportunely and with such Vigour, that he soon master'd the whole, slaying all those that contended for it, and finding himself in a Condition to proceed, set forward for *Bagdat*. The *Calif* hearing of *Leis*'s Design, contriv'd to stop him by Letters, desiring he would rest satisfy'd, and yeilding up to him all he had already gain'd. He answer'd, *he had an earnest Desire to see him, which was the Cause of his marching to* Bagdat, *and that nothing should divert him from it.* The *Calif* understanding his Resolution, with all possible Expedition form'd a numerous Army, the Com-

Tamimy *rebels.*

Command whereof he gave to a Brother of his own, ordering him to march against *Leis*. He did so, and encamp'd close by him, but *Leis* having other Designs, decamp'd in the Dead of the Night, and march'd through By-ways, till he came again into the Road to *Bagdat*, leaving the *Calif's* Brother in a Consternation, not knowing which way to follow him. *Yacub Leis*, in the mean while advanc'd with all possible Speed, re-inforcing his Army as he went. He was got about half way, when a violent Pleurisy seiz'd him, and in a Consult of Physicians it was resolv'd he should take a Clyster, which he refus'd, saying, he had rather dye than take it. When his Distemper was at the Height, he receiv'd a Message from the *Calif*, advising him to proceed no farther. He sat up, as well as he was able, and taking a naked Sword in his right Hand, and a *Gerda* or *Apa*, which is an ordinary sort of Bread the *Persians* eat with some Onions, in his left, said to the Messengers, *Go tell the* Calif, *your Master, That if I dye of this Distemper, Death parts us; if I live, this Sword will clear the Way; but if I lose the Game, I'll lay aside all Pretensions to a Crown, and this Bread and Onions will satisfy me in any remote Place.* This said, he dismist them, and the News of his Death came to *Bagdat* as soon as they; that Distemper ending his Days in the Year of the *Hegira* 268, and of CHRIST 882, having been Sovereign of *Persia* 11 Years. He was an Excellent Commander, Brave, Judicious, Generous and Affable, and a strict Observer of Justice. His Cooks every Day dress'd 20 Sheep, five Oxen, and a great Quantity of Fowl, which was always distributed among the Poor, as soon as he had din'd, and he was himself very

Leis *dyes.*

tem-

temperate in Eating. Nothing was found in his Tent of any greater Value, than his Arms, a Carpet he lay on, and a Cushion or Pillow. He left no Issue, and therefore his Brother *Hamed Ben Leis* succeeded him; who as soon as settled, writ to the *Calif*, submitting himself, and begging to be receiv'd into Favour. The *Calif* was so well pleas'd, that he not only confirm'd to him the Possession of *Persia*, *Karason*, and the other Lands his Brother had acquir'd, but also gave him the Investiture of *Hierak*, whereof *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahan* is the Capital, appointing him at the same Time *Schena* of *Bagdat*, which is as much as Supreme Magistrate under the *Calif*; by whose Leave *Hamed Ben Leis* gave that Post to *Abdula Ben Taher*, marching away himself with his Army to *Casbin*, and thence to the City *Rey*, leaving one *Mahamed Ben Leis*, his Kinsman, Governour at *Schiras*, who, as soon as he was gone, took upon him the Sovereignty of the Kingdom. *Hamed Ben Leis* return'd, and *Mahamed* fled, leaving him the Kingdom, and a mighty Booty, of which he sent a noble Present to the *Calif*; who receiv'd Complaints from several Parts of the Tyranny and Insolence of *Hamed Ben Leis*, for which Reason he by Edict depriv'd him of all Right to the Lands he had given him, and sent *Sayd Ben Mochaleb* with an Army, who fought, and routed him. *Dram*, who we said before, had been long a Prisoner at *Bagdat*, was at this Time with *Hamed*, and they now both fled with a few Followers. *Hamed* having afterwards rally'd the Remains of his Army, made another Attempt to recover *Schiras*, which *Mousek*, Brother to the *Calif*, *Almat Hamed Bila* understanding, he presently

His Brother confirm'd by the Calif.

Is routed.

sently threw himself into *Schiras*, so that *Hamed Ben Leis* seeing no Hopes of succeeding there, turn'd back toward *Hermon*, and passing through *Sistom*, went away to *Karason*.

The Calif Almat *dyes. An.* 839.

About this Time dy'd *Almat Hamed Bila* the *Calif*, when he had been so 23 Years, in that of the *Hegira* 279, and of CHRIST 893. His Son *Matazed Bila Hamed* succeeded him.

CHAP. XXXII.

Matazed Bila Hamed, 36*th* Calif, *the Affairs of* Persia *under him.*

Matazed Bila Hamed, the new Calif, was a brave and wise Prince, but much addicted to Sensuality. *Hamed Ben Leis* being disappointed of his Design on *Schiras*, as was said above, retir'd to *Karason*, where *Rafeaky Ben Arsoma*, a Governour in those Parts, had rebell'd against the Calif, and sided with *Mahamed Ben Zeyd Alawy*; *Hamed* espousing the Calif's Quarrel, routed and slew him, and then sent his Head to the Calif, who was well pleas'd with this Service, because *Rafeaky* had made great Commotions in those Provinces; and to reward *Hamed*, conferr'd on him the Provinces of *Karason*, *Maurenahar*, *Parcy*, *Kermon* and *Sistom*, ordering his Name to be painted on the Military Ensigns, to Honour his Loyalty, and encourage others. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 284, and of CHRIST 898; and in 900, *Hamed*, as an Acknowledgment, sent the *Calif* a Present consisting of a great Sum of Money, many Vessels of Gold and Silver, a considerable Quantity of Ambergrease, Musk, and *Calumba* Sweet Wood, and many Vests of rich Brocade.

Hamer Ben Leis *great again.*

His Present to the Calif.

The

The Country of *Maurenahar* had been very long peaceable, and almost exempt from any Subjection to *Persia*, under one *Ismael Ben Hamed*; against whom *Hamed Ben Leis* march'd with his Army. *Ismael* waited his coming, near the River *Gehun*, which parts *Maurenahar* from *Karason*, where, after some time spent, and several Actions I pass over, to avoid Tediousness, *Hamed* was defeated, and taken by *Ismael*; who, besides that he was an able Commander, is said to have made War on him at the Request of the *Calif*, who supply'd him with Men and Money. *Ismael* treated his Prisoner *Hamed* very courteously, and having made him swear to be always his Friend, and never to make War on him again upon any Account, carry'd him away to *Maurenahar*, whence he sent an Account of what had happen'd to the *Calif*, who order'd him to send *Hamed* to *Bagdat*, which he he did, and there the *Calif* caus'd him to be put to Death, when he had reign'd 23 Years. He had but one Eye, and was extraordinary passionate. *Taher Leis*, a Grandson of his, by his Son *Mahamed*, succeeded him.

Is routed and taken.

His Death.

Ismael before this, in the Year of the *Hegira* 280, which was of CHRIST 894, had march'd out of *Maurenahar* into *Turkestan*, where after gaining several Victories over the *Turks*, he at last in a Battel took the King of that Country, his Father, Wife, and 10000 Men; and so great was the Booty, that every Soldier of his had for his Share 1000 Dinares of Gold, which amounts to near 15000 Ducats. After these Successes he return'd to *Samarkand*, whence he march'd with 70000 fighting Men against *Hamed Leis*, whom he overthrew, as has been said, for which Reason the Calif *Ma-*

Ismael's *Successes.*

tazed

tazed gave him to Title of King of *Maurenahar, Karason, Schiraz, Siston* and *Kermon*. *Ismael* being inform'd that *Mahamed Ben Zeyd Alawy* was preparing at *Tabarstam* to invade his Lands, writ to him, advising to desist; which the other not regarding, he sent *Mahamed Ben Aron Somony* to oppose him with a considerable Army, who routed and slew him, taking Possession of the Lands of *Gerion* and *Tabarstam*, which he govern'd under *Ismael*. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 287, of CHRIST 901; and in 903, the Calif *Matazed Bila* dy'd, having reign'd 9 Years and 9 Months; and his Son *Moktafy Bila* succeeded him.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Moktafy Bila, 37*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Persia.

IN the Reign of this Prince great Troops of *Arabs* revolted, and committing many Robberies in *Arabia*, infested the High-ways, and obstructed the Pilgrimage to *Mecca*. In *Persia*, *Taher Ben Hamed Ben Hamed Leis*, who succeeded his Grand-father in the Kingdom of *Siston*, having gather'd the greatest Power he could, invaded the Kingdom, designing to expel all the *Calif*'s Garrisons, as he actually did, and brought it under his own Dominion. Thence he proceeded to *Awas*, the Governour whereof *Calif Abdula*, crav'd Aid of *Ismael*, King of *Maurenahar*, who writ to *Taher Leis*, requiring him to desist from that Enterprize; and he, either through Fear, or Courtesy, advanc'd no farther; which prevail'd

Taker Leis subdues Persia.

vail'd with *Ismael* to interceed for him with the *Calif*, that he would confirm to him the Lands *Taher*'s Father had been possess'd of and he had subdu'd. The *Calif* comply'd with *Ismael*, and *Taher* having obtain'd this Grant, return'd to *Schiras*. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 293, of CHRIST 907, in which *Moktafy* dy'd, being spent with luxurious Living, when he had reign'd but four Years. He leaving no Issue, the Empire devolv'd to his Brother *Moktader Bila*.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Moktader Bila, 38*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Persia.

UNder this Calif, *Mahamed Ben Arun Somoni*, who, as was said before, routed and slew *Ben Zeyd Alaway*, recover'd the Provinces of *Gerion* and *Tabarstam*, and was appointed Governour of them by *Ismael*, King of *Maurenahar*, rebell'd and march'd to the City *Rey*, which he possess'd himself of by Intelligence with some of the Inhabitants. *Ismael* being inform'd of it, mov'd towards him, *Arun* fled, and he pursu'd him through *Casbin*, *Zemian* and *Tabarstam*, which he recover'd, but could not take him. He secur'd his own Dominions, and march'd again into *Turkestan*, subduing other Provinces and Kingdoms, and having taken an inestimable Booty, return'd to *Maurenahar*, where he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 295, of CHRIST 909, leaving the Kingdom to his Son *Hamed*, whom the Calif confirm'd in it, with additional Honours; because the Califs being look'd upon

Ismael's Victories and Death.

as

as Sovereigns, both in Spirituals and Temporals; they did not reckon their Title to what they possess'd as altogether good, without their Confirmation, tho' they often dispens'd with this Nicety.

Taher being possess'd of *Schiras*, and the other Lands the *Calif* had restor'd to him, and being abroad a Hunting in the Province of *Sistan*; *Saughery*, a Slave to *Leis*, his Unkle *Aly*'s Son, surpriz'd *Schiras*, and made himself Master of it. *Taher* hasted to recover that Place, but being met by *Saughery*, was routed and taken, with one of his Brothers, and sent Prisoner to *Bagdat*, when he had reign'd six Years. *Saughery*, for the more Security, secur'd *Leis*, the Son of *Aly*, under whose Pay he had rose so high; as also another Brother of his call'd *Madel*, and sent them Prisoners to *Bagdat*. This happen'd in the Year 300 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 914.

Saughery *seizes* Xiras.

Ann. 914.

Hamed, the Son of *Yacub*, great Grandson to *Leis*, found means to escape, being made Prisoner, and finding the Country of *Sistan* in Confusion, enter'd and subdu'd it in nine Months, killing many of the Disturbers, and dy'd himself soon after, leaving his Cousin German *Calif Ben Hamed* in his Place. This Man designing to go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca* and *Medina*, committed the Government of his Dominions to his Kinsman, *Taher Ben Ocem*, who, as soon as he was gone, revolted, and refus'd to admit him at his Return. *Calif* went away to *Bokara*, in *Maurenahar*, to crave the Assistance of *Mansur*, who granted his Request, and he return'd to *Sistan*, whence *Taher* was fled for Fear. *Calif* being restor'd to his Kingdom, and setled in Peace, dismiss'd the Forces *Mansur* had supply'd him with,

Calif's *Vicissitudes.*

wi'h, and *Taher* perceiving him disarm'd, enter'd *Sistom* again, and made himself Master of it. *Calef* was a second time assisted by *Mansur*, and in his March back to *Sistom*, was inform'd of *Taher*'s Death, and that his Son *Ocem* had succeeded him, who, upon his Approach, shut himself up in a strong Hold, which *Calef* so closely besieg'd, that being destitute of all Hopes of holding out, he also had Recourse to *Mansur*, who writ in his Behalf to *Calef*; and he for his Sake, permitted *Ocem* and his Followers to depart towards *Bokara*, where *Mansur* gave them Lands to live on. All those Countries were Tributary to *Mansur*; but *Calef* being settled in Peace, took little Care to pay his Acknowledgment, tho' it was demanded of him; whereupon *Mansur* sent the same *Ocem* against him, with a numerous Army. *Calef*, not daring to encounter him, withdrew into a Fortress, which was impregnable by Art and Nature. There he was besieg'd for the space of seven Years, which oblig'd *Mansur* to send another General call'd *Aboaly Ben Seniur* with more Forces to join *Ocem*; whereupon *Calef* abandon'd *Darek*, so that Fortress was call'd, and left it to *Mansur*'s Forces, and was by him afterwards restor'd to his Kingdom. He had after this many other Wars, with various Success, in one of which his Son *Taher* expell'd him the Kingdom, and thrust himself into the Throne. The Father finding no other way to remove him, feign'd himself sick, and caus'd it to be given out, *That he was dying, and desir'd to see him; pretending to discover where he had hid much Treasure, and to forgive all his Faults, since he was his Son, and he could not but love him better than any other.* The co-

vetous and unwary Son, being more credulous than he ought to have been, went to see his Father, who slew him with his own Hand, and recover'd his Kingdom. After this he again lost and recover'd it twice, and at last dy'd, leaving it to his Son *Abu Ases*.

Hamed's Government.

Hamed Ben Ismael, who, upon the Death of his Father, was setled in the Possession of the Kingdom of *Maurenahar*, by Consent of the Calif *Moktader*, took a Progress through his Dominions, and entering *Samarcand*, seiz'd his Unkle *Ezach*, who then govern'd that Province, upon suspicion that he had Thoughts of revolting; but soon after restor'd him to his Liberty and Government. *Tabarstam* rebell'd twice, and was both times reduc'd, and the Rebels punish'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 298, of CHRIST 912, he reduc'd *Sistom*, and the next Year gave the Government of *Nixabur* to his Cousin *Mansur*, Son to the above-mention'd *Ezach*. In the Year 914, as he was Hunting, News was brought him that *Tabarstam* had revolted a third time, which made him withdraw discontented into his Tent, where his Slaves murder'd him that Night in his Sleep. His Body was carry'd to *Bokara*, and there bury'd, when he had reign'd six Years and four Months. He was very brave, but passionate and positive, Qualities mis-becoming any Man, and much more in a Prince. He left a Son call'd *Nacere Ben Hamed*, ten Years of Age, whom one *Hamed Ben Hamed Leis*, then *Schena*, or Governou[r] of *Bokara*, took upon his Shoulders, and the [m]ultitude following him about the City, ca[used] the Boy to be proclaim'd King, and all [Per]sons to swear Allegiance to him. The C[hild] thus born about, wept bitterly, and as [a] *Whi*

Ann. 914

Whither they were carrying of him? And whether they design'd to murder him, as they had done his Father? But being assur'd of his Safety, was quiet. *Nacere*, as has been said, was an Infant, whence ensu'd all the Mischiefs Kingdoms are usually subject too, that have Children for their Kings. *Ezach*, Unkle to the deceas'd King, was at *Samarkand*, he hearing of his Nephew's Death, advanc'd with his Army to *Bokara*, where *Nacere* was, who was otherwise call'd *Amir Seyd*. He, tho' so young, upon good Advice, sent a Commander, whose Name was *Hamuyhe*, against him, by whom *Ezach* was twice defeated, and the last time fled to *Samarkand*, *Hamuyhe* pursuing him: *Alyas*, or *Elyas*, Son to *Ezach*, had been left Governour of that City, who hearing of the Approach of *Hamuyhe*, forsook his Father and fled. *Ezach* deliver'd himself up to *Hamuyhe*, who carry'd him to *Bokara*, where *Nacere*, or *Amir Seyd*, kept him till he dy'd, and upon his Decease his Son *Mansur*, who was Governour of *Nixabur*, made War on *Nacere*, and was join'd by *Ocem Ben Aly*, one of *Nacere*'s Generals, who was discontented. *Hamuyhe* march'd against them, but before he could engage, was inform'd that *Mansur* was dead. *Ocem Ben Aly* prosecuted the War by himself, which lasted not long; for in the first Battel fought, he was routed, taken, and carry'd away to *Bokara*. *Nacere* had sent one *Hamed Ben Sal* to govern the Province of *Karason*, who usurp'd the Sovereignty of it, and marching with Forces into those of *Gerion* and *Marwo*, possess'd himself of them. *Hamuyhe*, *Nacere*'s General, march'd against, defeated and sent him Prisoner to *Bokara*, where he dy'd in Gaol, a-

bout the Beginning of the Year of the *Hegira* 301, and of CHRIST 914. At the same time dy'd the Calif *Moktader*, having reign'd 7 Years.

An. 914.

CHAP. XXXV.

Jafar Ben Matazed, 39*th* Calif; *Affairs of* Persia, *during his Reign.*

UPON the Death of *Moktader* the Califship was bestow'd on his Brother *Jafar Ben Matazed*, who enjoy'd no more Peace than his Predecessors; for one *Leylahe Ben Naaman*, made a successful Irruption from the Country of *Tabarstam* into the neighbouring Provinces. *Nacere* sent an Army to oppose him, which was defeated in a Battel, fought at *Nuchan* in the Territory of *Tus*. *Leylahe's* victorious Soldiers laying down their Arms, fell to plundering the Enemies Camp, which *Nacere's* Men observing, they rally'd, and fell on them with such Resolution, that they recover'd the Victory and Booty, taking *Leylahe* Prisoner, whose Head they struck off.

Insurrection of Leylahe.

At the same Time, another rebell'd in the City *Rey*, which *Nacere* himself recover'd, and leaving *Siniur* to command there, with a good Garrison, march'd away himself to *Maurenahar*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 313, of CHRIST 926, one *Azfar Ben Schyruyhe* broke into the Dominions of *Persia*, for the better understanding whereof I will look back a little, with my usual Brevity. One *Abusuia*, a very poor *Persian*, but of a noble Family, as descended from the Ancient Kings of *Persia*, had three Sons, *Emadudauleh Aly*, *Acem* and *Akmet*, this last is said to have dreamt one Night, that from

Abusuia's strange Dream.

from his Privities there issu'd a Fire, which burnt a considerable part of the Country, and that the Flame afterwards dividing into three Parts, continu'd for a long Time. Being frighted with this Dream, he told it to an Astrologer, who assur'd him, he should Lord it over many Provinces, and his three Sons should succeed him. One *Makon Ben Kaly* had then possess'd himself of *Tabarstam*, *Abusnia* put himself into his Service, with his three Sons, under the Command of *Azfar Ben Schirughe*, *Mardawege Ben Zad* and his Brother *Wazmaguir*. *Azfar* rebell'd against *Makon*, maintaining War against him a whole Year, at the End whereof *Makon* dy'd, and *Azfar* possess'd himself of *Rostandade*, *Rey*, *Casbin*, *Habar*, *Zenion*, *Taromia* and *Amedon*, in the Territories whereof he made dreadful Havock. *Nacere* march'd against him with a powerful Army; and after several Encounters, they came to a Composition, in the Year of the *Hegira* 317, and of CHRIST 930, *Azfar* remaining possess'd of most part of what he had got. During *Nacere's* Absence there had been some Commotions, which were soon quell'd by his Presence, but the War did not altogether cease during his Life.

Comical Superstition of Mahometans.

Whilst these Things hapned in *Persia*, great Multitudes of *Arabs* mutiny'd in *Arabia*, who breaking into the Temple of *Mecca*, plunder'd it of immense Treasure the Superstitious Devotion of the *Moores* had laid up there, carrying away a Stone held by them all in mighty Veneration, which was there at that Time, and perhaps is still; which they remov'd to *Cufa*. The *Mahometans* tell a thousand Fables concerning this Stone, as that *Adam* brought it from the Terrestrial Paradise, when he was ex-

pell'd thence; that it afterwards fell into the Hands of *Ismael*, *Abraham's* eldest Son, and in Process of time came to be laid up at *Mecca*. They add, that whereas it was naturally extraordinary white, it turn'd very black upon being touch'd by Sinners, so that it was a sort of Touch-stone for Sins. I have mention'd this Fable, because it is ridiculous, and now return to Calif *Jafar*, who having been so 20 Years, was in that of the *Hegira* 320 and of CHRIST 933, murder'd by his Soldiers, who in his Place set up his Brother *Kaher Bila Mahamed Ben Matazed*.

An. 933.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Kaher Bila Mahamed *the* 40*th*; Razy Bila Mahamed *the* 41*th*, *and* Moktafy Bila Ebrahim, *the* 42*th*, *Califs*.

Kaher Bila Mahamed Ben Matazed, Brother to *Jafar* deceas'd, was advanc'd to the Califship, and held it but a Year and a half, when the Soldiers put out his Eyes; and advanc'd to the Throne *Razy Bila Mahamed*, Son to *Moktader*, who made one *Eben Mokal* his *Wazir* or *Vizier*, and a few Months after caus'd his right Hand to be cut off, and him to be hang'd, for having writ a Letter of little Moment in his Name, without acquainting him. Till this Time it had continu'd in use, that the *Califs* should preach themselves, explaining their Sect to the People, but this Man order'd that the *Wazirs* or *Viziers* should do it for them. *Bila Razy* reign'd four Years, and dy'd in that of the *Hegira* 326, of CHRIST 939. His Brother *Moktafy Bila Ebrahim* succeeded him, in whose Days there was a mighty Famine in *Bagdat*, and was

Famine and Pestilence.

was follow'd by a dreadful Pestilence, so that the Country was almost unpeopled. When *Moktafy* had reign'd four Years, in the 330*th* of the *Hegira* and of CHRIST 943, the Soldiers put out his Eyes, without which he liv'd 24 Years, but his Son *Mostachfy Abdela* was put in his Place.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Mostachfy Abdela, 34*th* Calif.

Mostachfy Abdela being enthron'd instead of his blinded Father, to show what hapn'd in his Time, we will return to *Nacere*, who we said above had compounded with *Azfar*; who having always had Wars to employ him, fell sick of a Pthisick, by the *Arabs* and *Persians* call'd *Zeh*, and dy'd in the 38*th* Year of his Age, which was 331 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 944, when he had reign'd 28 Years. He was affable, generous, and well belov'd, and caus'd his eldest Son *Ismael* to be sworn Sovereign, whilst he was himself yet living: but this Son dy'd before the Father, so that another younger call'd *Nueben Nacere* succeeded him: we will now leave him, to say something of *Abusuia* and his Sons, who serv'd under *Azfar*.

Nacere dyes.

He after having made his Composition with *Nacere*, as was said above, sent *Emandudaule Aly*, the elder of the three, with his other two Brothers, and some Forces to *Carge*, and march'd himself towards *Hisphaon*, the Capital of *Hierak*, then govern'd for the *Calif* by one *Mozafar Ben Yacut*, who not daring to give him Battel, abandon'd the Country, and went away to *Schiras*, where his Father *Jacut* was

Emanduadule *possesses himself of* Persia.

Governour. Being both joyn'd, they advanc'd together towards the Enemy, whom they met, fought, and routed, and he escap'd by Flight. *Emandudaule Aly* was at this Time with his two Brothers at *Loreſtam*, *Yacut* mov'd towards them, and gave the firſt Charge with his Infantry, who had all Pots full of *Naphte*, or *Bitumen*, with lighted Matches to caſt in among the Enemy, as they did; but the Wind hapning to be contrary, were ſo far from doing any Harm to their Adverſaries, that the very Men who threw them were burnt. *Yacut's* Horſes being frighted at the Flame, fled full Speed, and he follow'd them, leaving *Edmandudaule Aly* a rich Booty, with abundance of Gold and Silver, which increas'd his Power, and encourag'd his Men, with whom and his Brothers he enter'd *Perſia*, and ſubdu'd it, without much Bloodſhed. He ſettled his Reſidence at *Schiras*, the Capital, which he forbid his Army to plunder, ranſoming it with his own Money. *Emandudaule* took up his Quarters in *Jacut's* Houſe, and ſoon after began to grow uneaſy for Want of Money to pay his Army, which long in Arrears, demanded it in an inſolent Manner. This Care perplexing him, he withdrew into his Bedchamber, and threw himſelf on the Bed, where looking up towards the Ceiling he perceiv'd a hideous Snake, ſeveral times thruſt its Head out at a Hole and draw it back again. *Aly* in a Fright call'd out ordering the Ceiling, which was of Plaiſter, as they are all in *Perſia*, to be pull'd down, and the Snake to be kill'd, no ſooner had he ſpoke but it was done, and that with many other Snakes found there kill'd: but at the ſame Time was diſcover'd a mighty Treaſure *Jacut* had hid there, and which prov'd more than enough to pay the Soldiers.

Great Treaſure found.

Soon

Soon after hapned another pleasant Accident, which was this. *Emandudaule* sent for a Taylor, to cut out some Garments, and when he was come, through a Mistake, instead of calling for a Yard to measure with, ask'd for a Stick; the Taylor, who had serv'd *Yacut*, thinking it was to beat him, told him, he might save himself that Trouble, for he would confess all the Truth without it, which was, that he had seventeen Chests in his House, left him to secure by *Yacut*. *Aly* was well pleas'd with the Discovery, and the Chests being brought appear'd full of Brocades, all sorts of Silks, and other things of extraordinary Value, whereof the Taylor had his Share. *Pleasant Accident.*

Whilst these Things hapned in *Persia*, *Nue* had succeeded his deceas'd Father in the Government of *Maurenahan*, *Karason*, *Nixabur*, and other neighbouring Provinces. *Hamuyhe*, the famous General above spoken of, who had serv'd *Nacere*, seeing his Son in the Throne, immediatly departed his Dominions, fearing lest he should keep in mind some Uneasiness there had been between them before he was King, and revenge himself now he was so. *Nue* being inform'd of it, writ to him in such affectionate Manner, that *Hamuyhe* thought good to return, and *Nue* made him Governour of *Samarkand*. *Nue* made War in several Places, under the Conduct of his Generals, but always unsuccessfully. He therefore resolv'd to try his own Fortune, took the Field, and detatch'd one *Abealy* to the City *Rey*, who possess'd himself of it, in the Year of the *Hegira* 333, of *Christ* 946, and was appointed Governour of it, till many Complaints being brought against him, *Nue* sent *Ebrahem Ben Simiur* to succeed him, whom *Abealy* after several Encounters, defeat- Nue *succeeds* Nacere. *An.* 946.

ed

ed twice, and advancing to *Bokara*, enter'd, and would have burnt it to the Ground, had he not been prevail'd upon by Entreaties to desist. *Nue* afterwards recovering his Losses made most dreadful Examples of many, who had deserted him, and gone over to his Enemy.

Marda-wege *murder'd.*

Emandudaule Aly still continu'd at *Schiras*, where News was brought him, that *Mordawege*, whom he had serv'd, was murder'd by his Slaves, as he bath'd himself. Hereupon he immediatly sent away his Brother *Rokna Daule Acem* to *Hyerak* and *Rey*, who possess'd himself of them; and entering into a Confederacy with *Aboaly*, who was with Variance *Nue*, obtain'd of the *Calif* the Investiture of *Karason*, which being granted *Aboaly* went thither, and *Nue* dy'd soon after, for Grief as was reported, leaving his Son *Abdul Malek* to succeed him. As soon as *Emandudaule Aly* had dispatch'd his Brother *Roknadaule Acem*, as was said above, he also sent out the other *Mokayzedudaule Achmet* to *Kermon*, which he made himself Master of, and having secur'd it with strong Garrisons, advanc'd to *Bagdat*, enter'd it by Force, and having taken the *Calif Mostachfy Abdala*, put out his Eyes, when he had reign'd 4 Years and 4 Months, in the Year of the *Hegira* 334, of CHRIST 947, setting up *Motyah Bila Fazele Ben Moktader* in his Place.

Calif *blinded and depos'd,* Ann. 947.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Motyah Bila Fazele, 44*th* Calif.

THIS *Calif* being enthron'd, the Superstitious Stone, mention'd above to have been carry'd away by the *Arabs* from *Mecca* to

to *Cufa*, was now ranſom'd, for ten times its Weight in Gold, and reſtor'd to the Place from whence it had been taken. To this purpoſe I remember a Paſſage, which being very remarkable, and an Inſtance of true Chriſtian Zeal, I will briefly inſert in this Place. *Don Conſtantine de Braganza*, being Vice-Roy of *India* for the Crown of *Portugal*, among the other noble Actions becoming his high Birth by him perform'd in thoſe Parts, was the Subduing of the Kingdom of *Jafanapatan*, whence, beſides many other Things of Value, was brought away a Monkey's Tooth, held in mighty Veneration, and ador'd by thoſe Heathens, as having belong'd to a Monkey, into which they ſaid one of their Gods had transform'd himſelf, and done mighty Wonders in reſcuing the Wife of one of thoſe Gods, which had been ſtolen away from him, as may be ſeen in the Idolatrous Stories of *Goninda*, *Ramak* and *Quiſna*. This Monkey's Tooth being carry'd to *Goa*, the neighbouring Infidels were much concern'd to be depriv'd of a Thing they had ſo great a Value for, which made them reſolve to ſend a ſolemn Embaſſy to *Goa*, to propoſe the Ranſoming of it. They went and deliver'd their Meſſage, offering a vaſt Treaſure for the Tooth. A Council was call'd to debate about it, and many learned Men admitted, and the Reſult was, *That notwithſtanding the Sum offer'd for the Tooth was ſo conſiderable, yet they ought rather to prefer their Zeal for God's Honour, and to deprive the* Gentiles *of ſo conſiderable an Object of Idolatry and Scandal.* This being reſolv'd, they brought the Embaſſador to the open Place before the Vice-Roy's Palace, which they call *Terreiro do Viſorey*; that is, the Vice-

Zeal of Don Conſtantine de Braganza.

Vice-Roy's Court, or Square, and in the Presence of a vast multitude of People, and all the principal Persons in the City, the Tooth was shew'd them, and they ask'd, *Whether that was the very Tooth they demanded and offer'd to ransom?* They answer'd, with most respectful Awe and Submission, *It was.* Then immediately before their Faces it was cast into the Fire, prepar'd on purpose, where it was burnt; then taken out again in their Presence, put into a Mortar, and pounded to fine Dust, which they cast into the River that runs close by. Thus giving them to understand what sort of Gods they worshipp'd, and the uncorrupted Zeal of Christian Religion. I have here mention'd this, in reference to what was said of the *Arabs* ransoming their Stone.

In the Year of the *Hegira* 337, which was Ann. 949. of CHRIST 949, *Emandudaule Aly* fell sick, and perceiving his End drew near, call'd to him his Nephew *Azududaule*, Son to his Brother *Rocknadaule Acem*, appointing him his Successor, and dy'd the beginning of the following Year. About the same time *Waxmagnir* being a Hunting, a Wild Boar he had wounded turn'd upon his Horse, dismounted and kill'd him. Besides these, other Princes and famous Generals departed this Life much about the same time, among which were *Moezedudaule Achmet* at *Bagdat*; *Acem Ben Feruzan* in *Tabarstan*; *Kafur Haxidy* at *Grand Cayro*, and the Emperor of *Constantinople*; *Abowly Ben Machamed Algas* at *Bokara*, and *Seyfdaule* at *Damascus*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 345, and of CHRIST 957, there rag'd a great and universal Pestilence throughout *Karason*, *Koestam*, and the other Dominions of Per-

Death of great Men.

Pestilence and Broils.

Persia; which was follow'd by fresh Commotions and the greatest Confusions, that had ever been yet, for all Men did what Mischief they could to others, every one was afraid of his Neighbour, and no Person thought himself safe.

In the height of this Confusion, which lasted some Years, and the Year of the *Hegira* 350, which was of CHRIST 962, *Abdul Malek*, Son to *Nue*, playing at Bandy a Horseback, as is usual in *Persia*, and I have seen it several times, fell from his Horse and dy'd, when he had reign'd seven Years and six Months. His Brother *Mansur* succeeded him. *Albataquin* was *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to the late *Abdul Malek*, whilst he was living, and now with all his Might oppos'd the Enthroning of *Mansur*, whose Party nevertheless prevail'd, and *Albataquin*, attended by 3000 Horse that adher'd to him, fled to *Gazmin*. *Mansur* sent 15000 Men after him, who coming to a Battel on the Borders of *Balk*, were defeated. The same Fate attended a second Party sent after him. *Mansur* considering his good Fortune, and that he did not design him any farther harm, forbore sending after him any more, and march'd with his Forces to *Hyerack* and the City *Rey*. *Rocknadaule Acem*, who was in Possession of that Country, took the Field, and sent one of his Sons with some Forces into *Karason*, to give *Mansur* a Diversion. *Schamguir*, who was *Rocknadaule*'s General, happen'd to die at this time, and his Post was given to *Abul Ocem*, who finding both Princes inclinable, propos'd a Peace, which was concluded; upon Condition that *Rocknedaule* should pay to *Mansur* 150000 Dinars of Gold, as a Yearly Tribute, which amounts to

Ann. 962.

Mansur succeeds Abdul Malek.

to above 220000 Ducats; and as a farther Confirmation of what had been agreed, *Mansur* took to Wife *Rocknadaule*'s Niece, Daughter to his Brother. In the Year of the *Hegira* 363, of CHRIST 977, the Calif *Motyah Bila* having reign'd 29 Years and 6 Months, was seiz'd with a violent Palsy, which oblig'd him to resign the Government to his Son *Tayha Abdel Camin*, and he dy'd two Months after, as did *Mansur* two Years after, when he had reign'd 15 Years, and his Son *Nue* succeeded him.

Ann. 975.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Tayha Abdel Carim, 45th Calif.

Tayha Abdel Carim, Son to *Motyah*, succeeded his Father in the Califship, as was said above, or in the Year 367 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 979, dy'd *Rocknadaule*, leaving his Son *Azududaule*, King of *Hierak*, who extended his Dominions considerably. *Nue Ben Mansur*, who had succeeded his Father in *Maurenahar* had soon Business enough upon his Hands; for tho' *Albataquin*, who had fled from him, and whom he had Cause to fear, was dead; yet *Schabus*, the Son of *Schamguir*, his Father *Mansur*'s General, seiz'd on his Provinces of *Geriom* and *Tabarstam*.

Ann. 979.

Discord among the Daules.

Some Differences arose between *Azadudaule* and his Brother *Fakoradaule*, whom the other invaded, and he fled to *Kabus*, who receiv'd and entertain'd him with extraordinary Civility and Respect, offering to assist him with his Person, and all he was worth. *Azadudaule* offend-

offended at his Courtesy, march'd against them, and gaining a Battel, recover'd *Geriom* and *Tabarstam*. Soon after *Kabus* and *Fakora*, being assisted by *Nue Ben Mansur*, turn'd again upon *Azadudale*, and reducing *Geriom*, oblig'd him to retire into a Fortress, which they laid Siege to. Within two Months, the Besieged began to want Provisions, and therefore corrupted one of the Enemies Commanders, and sallying on a sudden, as had been concerted between them, the said Commander fled with all his Men, which others observing they did so too, and by that means the Siege was rais'd. *Nue*, who at this time was at *Nixabur* (we will here go on with him to the end of his Life, and then return to the *Daules*, to avoid Confusion) understanding the ill Success of his Confederates, order'd his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, *Abul Acem*, to raise fresh Forces, with which he set out towards *Azadudale*; but falling sick, desisted from his Enterprize at that time, and *Fakorodaule*'s Brother dying soon after, he became Lord of all his Dominions. There ensu'd mighty Troubles, which soon ended with the Death of the Ringleaders. At this time dy'd *Abul Acem*, *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to *Nue*, a very strange Account whereof was given, *viz.* That being with a she Slave, he was extreamly fond of, he dy'd suddenly, which was very surprizing to all that heard of it. He left two Sons, the one call'd *Boaly*, who succeeded him in the Government of *Karason* and *Nixabur*; the other *Faech*, whom *Nue* made *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, of *Hyerat*. These two envying one another, their Enmity grew so high, that it broke out into a War. *Boaly* march'd against *Faech*, who fled to *Marvo*, where he form'd a numerous Army,

Sudden Death of Abul Acem.

Army, with which he mov'd towards *Bokara*.

His Sons Boaley *and* Faech.

Nue was highly offended, and sent against him his two Generals *Junabak* and *Bakturun*, with a sufficient Power to curb him, as they did, and he being routed, fled to *Balk*, whence he proceeded to *Tremed*, and thence writ to *Bokrakham*, King of *Turkestan*, exciting him to make War on *Nue*. Whilst these Disorders were still afoot, *Aboaly Ben Acem* writ to *Nue*, demanding in Return for the mighty Services done by himself and his Forefathers, to him and his Predecessors, to be made supream and only Governour of the Provinces of *Karason* and *Maurenahar*. *Nue* granted it, believing he had a faithful Subject of him. *Aboaly* being once possess'd of those Lands began to play the Tyrant, and tho' several times admonish'd to behave himself with more Moderation, was so far from complying, that whilst he made his own Preparations, he writ to *Bokrakan*, King of *Turkestan*, inviting him to join in invading the Dominions of *Nue*, which they would conquer and divide between them. *Bokrakan* was easily perswaded, and they both began to break into those Provinces. *Nue* sent his General *Junaback*, who had defeated *Faech*, to oppose them, but he was routed and sent Prisoner into *Turkestan*. *Nue* found himself in Distress by this Loss, and thinking it a prudent Part, in time of need, to make use of Friends and Enemies, was reconcil'd to *Faech*, and concluding that the Kindness he had shew'd him, had secur'd him to his Interest, sent him to secure *Samarkand*. As soon as he was there, being inform'd that *Bokrakan* was advancing towards him, tho' he might have defended himself, he would not;

Nue expell'd his Kingdom.

but

but leaving all the Country to him, he went away to *Bokara*, out of mere Spight to *Nue*, who he pretended had wrong'd him. This Action quite sunk all *Nue*'s Resolutions, so that being destitute of all means to oppose the Enemy he left the Kingdoms. *Bokrakan* with all possible Speed possess'd himself of *Samarkand*, and proceeded thence to *Bokara*, where *Faech* join'd him, and was by him dismiss'd with a good Army, towards *Balk* and those Parts. *Nue* skulking about, cross'd the River *Gehun*, and made a Stand near *Hamuxet*, where abundance of his People resorted to him by several ways; which daily increasing, and with them the Hopes of Success, *Nue* writ to *Aboaly*, putting him in Mind of the Favours he had receiv'd at his Hands, and perswading him, with Promises of still greater Rewards, to return to his Service. *Aboaly* return'd a plausible Answer, at the same time contriving to kill him. *Bakrakan* now fell dangerously sick, and no Medicines availing, by the Advice of his Physicians, he return'd towards *Turkestam*, hoping his own Country Air would recover him, but the Distemper increasing, he dy'd by the way. The People of *Bokara* being inform'd of it, pursu'd his Army, making a mighty Slaughter of them, and recovering the Booty they were carrying off, which was of an immense Value. Upon this good Success, *Nue* return'd to his Dominions, where he was receiv'd with universal Joy. The King of *Turkestam*'s Death put *Aboaly* to a Nonplus, whereupon he resolv'd to put himself into *Nue*'s Hands, which his Brother *Faech* understanding, tho' his mortal Enemy, he procur'd an Interview, to disswade him from that Design, as he did, and they both resolv'd

Restor'd to it.

to make War joyntly on *Nue*; who before these Troubles had sent a famous General call'd *Sabutaquin*, to make new Conquests in *India*, whence he was now return'd victorious, with a mighty Booty and the Reputation of a wonderful Master in the Art of War. *Nue* gave him the Charge of this War, who gathering what Forces he could, advanc'd to *Gaznehen* a famous Territory in *Karason*. *Aboaly* being inform'd of the Preparations that were making against him, thought fit to provide against any Misfortune, and to that End courted the Friendship of *Fakorodaule*, which he purchas'd with many Presents of great Value. *Nue* and *Sabutaquin* set out from *Nixabur* in Quest of *Aboaly*, attended by the Governours of *Balk*, *Geriom* and *Gergestam*. *Aboaly* expected them with a good Army, which *Fakorodaule* had reinforc'd with some Veteran Troops, and *Darab Kabus* had joyn'd them with a good Body of Men. These advancing from *Hierat*, the two Armies encamp'd in Sight of one another. When they were to ingage, *Aboaly* took upon him the Command of the main Body, committing the right Wing to *Faech*, and the left to his other Brother call'd *Abul Kocem Ben Siniur*. *Nue* gave the Command of his two Wings to able Generals, and was himself in the Center, with *Amir Sabutaquin* and *Seyfadaule*. At the first Charge *Aboaly*'s two Wings broke those of *Nue*, who concluding himself lost, gave such a furious Onset with all the main Body of his Army, as oblig'd his Enemy to give Ground. This was the Posture of Affairs when *Darub Kabus* deserting *Aboaly* went over to *Nue*, which so daunted *Aboaly*'s Troops, that they were easily put to the Rout, and he with his Brother *Faech* fled to *Nixabur*. After this Victory and Dividing

Routs Aboaly, and Faech.

the

the Spoils, which were very considerable, *Nue* appointed *Mahamud*, the Son of *Amir Sabutaquin* his General, at the Request of his Father, and went away himself to *Bokara*, *Sabutakin* to *Gaznehen* and *Mahamud* to *Nixabur*; whence the two Brothers *Aboaly* and *Faech*, withdrew themselves to *Geriom*, in the Dominions of *Fakorodaule*, who receiv'd and entertain'd them with much Affection; but they by their ill Carryage so much disgusted him, that they lost his Favour. *Aboaly* perceiv'd it, and in Return for all the Favours receiv'd at his Hands would have murder'd him, and usurp'd his Kingdom. *Faech* would not consent to it, but diswaded him from entertaining any such Thoughts, advising, that since *Nixabur* was ill provided, they should make an Attempt upon it. *Mahamud* suspected their Design, and gave notice to the King and his Father, demanding some Supplies, but before they could come, the two Brothers defeated him, taking Possession of the Country, and he fled. *Sabutaquin* being inform'd of what had hapned, march'd his Forces with all possible Speed from *Sistom* to *Nixabur*. He found *Aboaly* at *Thus*, and gave him Battel, in the Heat of which *Mahamud* appear'd with the Forces he had rally'd, and falling on the Enemies Rear, they made a dreadful Slaughter of them, most of those that were left alive being taken Prisoners. The two Brothers, with much Difficulty got into *Colat*, a very strong Place, whence with some small Remains of their routed Army they got away to *Marwo*. Thence they made Application to *Nue* for Pardon, who granted it to *Aboaly*, upon Condition he should not go out of *Gerionia* without his Leave, which he accepted of, tho against *Faech*'s Will, who went away to *Ilechkan*,

They are again defeated.

kan, King of *Turkestan*, Successor to *Bokrâkan*. One *Abu Abdula*, Governour of *Koarrazm* was an Enemy to *Aboaly*. This Man surprising *Gerionia*, carry'd him away Prisoner. The Governour of *Gerionia*, who had him in Charge from *Nue*, drew out his Forces, attack'd *Kat*, where the Governour of *Koarrazm* then was, and with much Expence of Blood took him Prisoner, and recover'd *Aboaly*. Returning into his own Province, he closely confin'd the Governour of *Koarrazm*, and treated *Aboaly* very courteously, feasting him highly every Day, and upon one of them, when they had drank plentifully, *Mahamud*, the Governour of *Gerionia*, order'd the Governour of *Koarrazm* to be brought before him, and struck off his Head. This done he writ to *Nue*, begging *Aboaly*'s Pardon, who answer'd, he had long since forgiven him, and ordering he should be sent to him, because he had Matters of great Moment to communicate to him. *Mahamud* sent him, and as soon as arriv'd at *Bokara*, he was closely confin'd, where he dy'd.

Aboaly *dyes in Prison.*

His Brother *Faech*, who had fled to *Ilechkan*, persuaded him, to make War on *Nue*, who being inform'd of what was in Agitation, order'd *Sabutaquin*, with the Troops under his Command, to expect him between *Kebx* and *Necaf*, where he was joyn'd by his Son *Mahamud*, with a good Body of Men from *Nixabur*, which with another Supply sent by *Nue* form'd a potent Army. Things being in this Posture, an Accommodation was propos'd, and concluded on Condition, that *Faech* should have the Government of *Samarkand*. This ended all those Confusions in the Year 385 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 996, *Nue* enjoying Peace all the rest of his Life, which ended in the Year

An. 996.

of

of the *Hegira* 387, of CHRIST 998, when he had reign'd 22 Years, leaving a Son call'd *Abul Hares Mansur* in his Place.

Whilst these things hapned in the Provinces of *Uzbek*, *Maurenahar* and *Karason*, the lower Parts of *Persia* were not idle; for the *Daules*, of whom we shall now treat again, continuing their Broils kept it continually harrass'd. *Azududaule*, with whom we broke off above, as soon as he came to the Crown, sent his Son *Abul Favares* to *Kermon*, to reduce a Governour of his, who had there revolted from him, whom he overthrew. At this Time dy'd *Moezedudaule*, King of *Bagdat*, Brother to *Azudu*, leaving the Throne to his Son *Baktear*, and charging him before his Death, in all things relating to the Government, to be advis'd by his Unkle, and some discreet *Wazirs* or *Viziers*, he left him. He did quite the contrary, which gave Occasion to *Sabutaquin*, and after him to *Albataquin*, to invade his Territories with great numbers of *Turks*, and advancing as far as *Wacet*, they brought him to Distress. *Baktear* desir'd Aid of *Azudu*, who made great Expedition with it, and they overthrew the *Turks*, pursuing them to *Bagdat*, where they shut themselves up, and *Baktear* besieg'd them. They after performing Wonders in their Defence, being compell'd by Necessity, abandon'd the City, and went away with the *Calif* to *Tecrit*, a Town in *Diarbek*, on the Banks of the River *Tigris*. *Baktear* took the City, and calling home the *Calif*, deliver'd it up to him. *Azududaule* was much offended at it, and secur'd his Nephew, but soon after releas'd him. Having put an End to his Expedition, *Azududaule* bent his Force against *Hyerak* in *Arabia*. *Baktear* during his Absence, invaded his Dominions, making mighty

The Actions of the Daules.

Of Azududaule.

Havock. The Unkle turn'd back upon him, upon the first Notice, and *Baktear* retir'd to *Mosul*, a great City in *Diarbek*, where many believe *Ninive* stood. One *Abusaleb* was then Governour of it, who joyn'd *Baktear* with 20000 Men. The two Armies met at *Tecrit*, *Azududaule* obtain'd the Victory, *Abusaleb* fled, and *Baktear* was taken, whose Head his Unkle caus'd to be immediatly struck off, being then 36 Years of Age, and having reign'd eleven Years and some Months. *Azududaule* lik'd the Country of *Mosul*, which is very good, and staid there, subduing other Provinces from
An. 982. thence. In the Year of the *Hegira* 368, and of CHRIST 980. He order'd *Bagdat* to be rebuilt, because it had been almost ruin'd during the late Troubles. He for some Years eas'd the People of the mighty Taxes they paid, caus'd many Wells to be dug along the Roads; encourag'd the Learned Men of his Sect, Philosophers, Physicians and Poets; gave the Christians that liv'd in his Dominions Leave to build Churches, allowing them something of his own towards the Charge, in the Year of the *Hegira* 371, and of CHRIST 982 he built a noble Hospital at *Bagdat*, and endow'd it with a considerable Revenue, and anorher not inferior to it at *Schiraz*, and having perform'd many other Works becoming a good Prince, he was seiz'd with a *Sara*, which is a Frenzy, and
His Death. dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 372, of *Christ*
An. 983. 983, when he had liv'd 47 Years, and reign'd 34. He left three Sons, *Scherfadaule*, *Schamsdaule*, otherwise call'd *Abulganiar Marsabane*, and the 3*d* *Bahaodaule*. The two eldest divided the Dominions between them; but were not so satisfy'd. *Scherfadaule* kept *Persia*, and *Schamdaule Bagdat*, whom *Scherza* seiz'd at an Interview;

view; but *Scherfa* dying, in the Year of the *Hegira* 379, of CHRIST 990, his Brother *Schamfdaule* or *Abulganiar Marfabane*, who was then a Prisoner, was set at Liberty and enthron'd in his Place. This Man made his younger Brother *Boahodaule* his Associate in the Government, but some Differences arising between them they fell out, and *Schamfdaule* made War upon the other by Means of one *Boyaly Ben Hoftud Hormoz*, who persecuted him to the utmost, and when he had least Hopes of Redress, News was brought him, that the Soldiers having demanded their Pay of *Schamfdaule*, and he refusing to give it, they mutiny'd, and scaling a strong Hold, where four Sons and some Kinsmen of *Baktear*, above spoken of, were Prisones, they set them at Liberty. Then many more joyning them, they assaulted *Schiras*; *Schamfdaule*, who was in that City fled, they pursu'd and took him at *Dudmon* two *Farfanges* or Leagues from the City, whither he was brought back, and put to Death, with his Mother, after he bad reign'd nine Years and 6 Months, in the Year of the *Hegira* 380, and of CHRIST 991. *Bohaodaule* succeeded him without any Opposition.

Schamdaule's Death.

An. 991.

Fakorodaule, as has been said above, was King of *Geriom*. He being ingag'd in a War with one *Sahayd Hebad*, who had more Men and Money, obtain'd a Victory over him, and took a mighty Treasure. Having put an End to this and other Wars of no great Consequence, in the Year of the *Hegira* 378, of CHRIST 989, being in his Fortress of *Tabarak* at Dinner, he fell eagerly upon some roast Beef, and eat Grapes after it extravagantly, which gave him such a terrible Pain in the Stomach, that he expir'd in a few Hours, his Death was very little la-

Fakorodaule's Death.

An. 989.

mented by reason of his tyrannical Life; and there ensu'd such Commotions and Confusions in the City, that they could not find Leisure to bury him, till the unsufferable Stench of his Body oblig'd them to lay it under Ground. He left several Sons, the eldest of which, as yet very young, was call'd *Maindudaule*, with whom and his Mother *Sayda* we shall soon go on. We must now return to *Bahao Daule*, who being advanc'd to the Throne, took into his Service *Boaly*, that Commander, who made War on him for his Brother, and employ'd him to expel the Sons of *Baktear* out of *Persia*. The eldest of them call'd *Abu Nacere* went away towards *Kermon*, and falling unexpectedly with some Forces that attended him on *Abujafar*, who was Governour there, drove him out of that Country, and possess'd himself of it. *Bahao Daule* sent *Mouseck* against him, who fought and routed him, and as he fled, a Servant of his own met and ran him through, which Death, they say, had been long before foretold him. *Mouseck* plac'd faithful Governours in *Kermon*, and being satisfy'd with his Victory, return'd to the King, who gave him an honourable Reception; but being misrepresented by some of his Enemies, he was seiz'd that very Day, and soon after put to Death. In the first Year of his Reign *Bahao Daule* depos'd the *Calif Tayba Abdel Carim Ben Mutya*, when he had held it 17 Years and 2 Months, and in his stead set up *Kader Bila Hamed Eben Ezach Eben Mohtader*, to such a Condition was the Califship then reduc'd. After this *Boaly* dy'd at *Bagdat* in the Year of the *Hegira* 401, and *Bahao Daule* in 401, which is of CHRIST 1013, at the Age of 42 Years and 9 Months, and having reign'd 24.

Abunacere *murderd by his Servant.*

Bohao Daule's *Death.* *An.* 1013.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Kader Bila Hamed, 46*th* Calif.

Kader Bila Hamed, the Son of *Moktader*, was promoted to be *Calif*, in the Place of *Mutya*, as was said above, and tho' this Dignity was now come to such a Pass, that only the Name of it seem'd to subsist, the Power being quite lost, yet it still preserv'd a sort of Spiritual Authority and Jurisdiction, and as supreme in that Sense was in some measure respected, according to the more or less religious Disposition of the Princes that sat on the Thrones of the several Kingdoms. Thus the *Califs* continu'd for several Years longer, sometimes rising and sometimes declining, as the Times prov'd, but always much more inconsiderable than they had been.

It was said above, that *Fakare Daule*, King of *Gerion* dy'd of a Surfeit of roast Beef and Grapes. His Son *Maindu Daule* succeeded him, and tho' under Age was proclaim'd King, his Mother *Sayda*, a Woman of extraordinary Wisdom governing for him, and by her Prudence maintain'd the Kingdom in Peace and Prosperity. The Son grew up, would needs take upon him the Government, and began to bestow Commands, without the Advice or Consent of his Mother, which she resenting, retir'd to the Fortress of *Tabarak*. One *Aboaly*, who had been made *Wazir* or *Vizier* against her Liking, fearing she might occasion some Troubles, if she departed the Kingdom, caus'd Guards to be posted on the Roads, to prevent her. His Care prov'd ineffectual, for she found Means to escape, and went away to *Kuseſtam*, where one *Badre Acem Nuyhe* was Gouvernour, who being in-

Maindu Daule *King of* Gerion.

inform'd by her of what had hapned between her Son and her, rais'd a considerable Army, and they both march'd against *Maindu Daule*, who was in the City *Rey*. The King and his Minister *Aboaly* were routed and taken, and the Government fell again into the Hands of *Sayda*, who manag'd it with much Wisdom and Discretion. *Mamud Gazney* was at this Time King of *Karason* and *Maurenahar*, and had been always victorious in Warlike Expeditions quite round him. He now sent an Embassy to *Sayda*, asking her Consent, that no Money might be current in his Kingdom but his own, coin'd in his Name and bearing his Arms, signifying he should resent a Refusal. She answer'd with a manly Resolution, that were her Husband alive, she would not be very apprehensive of his Threats, because being a Man, they two might happen to meet; but that she being a Widow Woman, was fully perswaded, he was of too generous a Temper to wrong her. This appeas'd him for the present. Some time after, she was reconcil'd to her Son, but did not put him into full Possession of the Government; but sent *Scham Daule*, another Son, Governour to *Amadon*, and a third call'd *Abu Jafar* to *Ispahan*. She kept the Kingdom in Peace and Quietness till the Year of the *Hegira* 420, of CHRIST 1030, when she dy'd, and all fell into Confusion; for Sultan *Mamud Gazney* march'd to *Hierak*, being joyn'd at *Mazanderon* by *Manucher*, the Son of *Kabus*, and Grandson to *Wax Maguir*, of whom mention has been made; yet he believing the others Company might prove dangerous to his Dominions, return'd home on a sudden, departing the Camp without *Mamud*'s Leave; however fearing he might take Offence at it, he endeavour'd

His Mother Sayda *usurp'd the Throne.*

She dyes. An. 1030.

vour'd to appease him with many Gifts of great Value, Abundance of Provisions for his Army and 400000 *Dinares* in Gold, which amount to near 600000 Ducats. But in regard it is long since we left *Karason*, it will be proper for us to return thither.

Nue dying, as was said above, his Son *Abul Hares Mansur* succeeded him in his Throne, who made *Baktuzun* his General. *Ileckkan* invaded him, as he had done his Father, and being come to *Samarkand*, was there join'd by *Faech*, who was Governour there, whom he sent with a sufficient Force to *Bokara*, the Residence of *Mansur*. He abandon'd the City, and fled beyond the River *Amuye*. *Faech* enter'd the City, and having assur'd the Citizens, that he came not to wrong the King, but to serve and assist him, he return'd, and being convinc'd that what *Faech* said was real, gave him *Baktuzun*'s Post, and *Baktuzun* the Government of *Karason*. *Sabutaquin* dy'd about this time, and great Strife ensu'd between his Sons *Mamud* and *Ismael* about dividing his Lands and Inheritance, which was decided by the Sword, and *Ismael* being too weak for *Mamud* fled. Then *Mamud* march'd to *Karason*, which was his Government, and finding it possess'd by *Baktuzun*, on whom the King had conferr'd it, sent to complain of it by Letter, desiring it might be restor'd to him, who in lieu of it gave him the Government of *Balk*, *Termed* and *Herat*. This did not satisfy *Mamud*, but in his Discontent he march'd towards *Nixabur*, where the King was, who not daring to stand him, fled, without stopping, as far as *Cerkas*, which I suppose to be *Circassia*. However *Mamud*, fearing to be look'd upon as a Rebel, turn'd off without seeing

Mansur *King of* Karason.

Flies from Mamud.

seeing *Nixabur*. Upon the News hereof *Maktuzun* was come to assist King *Mansur*, whom he met returning after his Flight, and complain'd to *Faech*, that he had not been treated by him with the Honour he expected. *Faech* laying hold of this Opportunity, disclos'd his Mind, telling him what his Intentions were towards *Mansur*, against whom they both conspir'd, and put out his Eyes at an Entertainment, when he had reign'd but one Year and seven Months, and enthroning a younger Brother of his call'd *Abdel Malek*. *Mamud* hearing what had happen'd, march'd against the Traytors, who not daring to oppose him, made away with speed, *Baktusan* for *Nixabur*, the new King with *Faech* for *Bokara*, and *Abul Cazem Siniur* for *Koestam*. Thus *Mamud* remain'd possess'd of all *Karason*, against whom *Baktuzan* and *Faech* join'd their Forces again; but *Faech* dying, the Expedition came to nothing.

His Eyes put out.

Ilechkan, King of *Turon*, or *Turkestan*, hearing of these Troubles, advanc'd with his Army near *Bokara*, whence he sent to acquaint *Abdel Malek*, That he was come thither to assist him. The poor Youth giving Credit to his Words, sent the best Commanders he had to return him Thanks, whom *Ilechkan* secur'd. *Abdel Malek* in a Fright contriv'd to make his Escape, and absconded till a fair Opportunity offer'd. *Ilechkan* march'd up to the City, and took it, order'd the Roads, Gates and Walls to be guarded, and a strict Search being made for *Abdel Malek*, he was found, and sent away to *Uskand*, where he dy'd in close Confinement. His Subjects proclaim'd a younger Brother of his King, but he held it not long.

Ilechkan *takes* Abdel Malek.

This

This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 398, of CHRIST 1000. An. 1000.

Ilechkan being thus possess'd of *Bokara*, secur'd the blind King *Abul Hares Mansur*, his Brothers *Abu Ebrahem Montecer* and *Abu Yacub*, all Sons of *Nue*, and their two Unkles *Abu Zacharia* and *Abu Saleck*, with others of the Royal Family, all whom he confin'd a-part from one another, where they were attended by *Ilechkan*'s Women Slaves, each of them having one appointed to serve him. She that waited on *Abu Ebrahem Montecer* took a Kindness to him, and resolving to set him at Liberty, cover'd him one Day with her *Chandel*, which is a Cloth us'd by the Women like the Veils in *Spain*, and thus disguis'd she convey'd him out of Prison to a Friends House of hers, where he continu'd conceal'd, till the Search after him was over. Then he departed *Bokara*, and went away to *Koarrazm*, where great Numbers resorted to him, so that he sent an Army to *Bokara*, under the Command of a General call'd *Arsalon Balu*, who coming to a Battel with *Jafar Taquin*, *Ilechkan*'s General, defeated and took him, with many other Persons of Note. *Arsalon Balu* march'd on ravaging the Country, as far as *Litele Cantarcy*, where he was met by *Taquin Kan*, *Ilechkan*'s Governour of *Samarkand*, who was also routed. *Montecer* return'd to *Bokara*, where he had a good Reception. *Ilechkan* soon came against him, and *Arsalon Balu* join'd *Montecer*, both of them passing the River *Gehun*. When they came to *Nixabur*, *Amir Nacer*, the Son of *Mamud*, who was Governour there, abandon'd the Country, and fled to *Herat*, where his Father resided; who understanding what had happen'd, took the

Confines all the Royal Family.

Montacer *escapes.*

Makes War on Ilechkan.

the Field with his Forces to meet *Montecer*, who not daring to meet him, went off by the way of *Efferaken* to the Dominions of *Kabus*. This Prince sent to receive him with many Presents of great Value, which, if we may believe *Merkand*, were ten Horses, with all their Firniture of Gold, thirty of Silver, and thirty of Silk; thirty Camels loaded with rich Carpets, Brocades, and many other Things of Value; fifty Vests of rich Brocade, and a great Sum of Money, besides Gifts in particular for all his Commanders. *Kabus* had intended to succour him, and advis'd him to go away to the City *Rey*, whither he would send him a considerable Supply, under the Command of his two Sons *Darab* and *Manucher*, to secure that Place. He did so, but then changing his Mind, he went away from *Rey* to *Damion*, and *Darab* and *Manucher* return'd to their Father *Kabus*. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 391, of CHRIST

An. 1002. 1002.

At this time *Mamud* sent his Son *Amir Nacer*, with a General call'd *Altuntax* to recover *Nixabur*. *Abul Kacem* and *Arsalon Balu* oppos'd him for *Montecer*, but lost the Day.

Various Events of his. *Nacer* took *Nixabur*, *Montecer* fled towards *Iburd*, *Nacer* pursu'd him, and he turn'd back towards *Gerion*. *Kabus* being inform'd of it, and offended at his Incivility towards him, posted 2000 Men in a Pass to obstruct him entring his Dominions. *Montecer* took another way, and upon a small Disgust, put *Arsalon Balu* to Death, which render'd him very odious to all his Men. The War was prosecuted between him and *Nacer* with various Success, till at last he was entirely defeated in a Battel, and having lost most of his Men, as he

as he fled with some few Followers, fell into the Hands of the *Turkimans*, that is, the *Turks*, who live in the open Fields and Deserts with their Cattle, like the *Arabs*, as shall be elsewhere more particularly describ'd. They knowing him, as having been in Amity with his Father, entertain'd him courteously. He gather'd a good Number of them, and march'd into *Maurenahar*, where *Ilechkan* met him with a considerable Army. As they lay incamp'd near one another, the *Turkimans* one Night by Surprize fell upon *Ilechkan*'s Camp, and killing many of his Men, put the rest to Flight, and return'd to their Hords with the best Part of the Booty, about the beginning of the Year 393 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 1004. The *Turkimans* being gone back to their Families, *Montecer* cross'd the River *Gehun*, without Bridge or Boats, because it was frozen over in that cold Season. The *Turkimans*, who had assisted him, repenting that they had left him any Part of the Booty, return'd to take it away, but coming to the River by Day, found it thaw'd, so that they could not pursue, and he went off safe. One *Abu Jafer*, a mean Fellow, who from being a Highway-Man, was grown up to a Prince, had possess'd himself of *Marwo*. *Montecer* crav'd some Aid of him, which he not only refus'd, but oppos'd him. They came to Blows, and *Montecer* routed him. An. 1004.

In his way from thence to *Iburd*, he had another Encounter with *Abu Nacer*, the Governour of that Province, which prov'd very bloody and dangerous, hapning in the Night, but *Abu Nacer* was routed, and kill'd. *Montecer* finding no place of Safety beyond the River, repass'd it again, and meeting with the *Schena*,

or Governour of *Bokara*, lost the most of his Men, and with such as could follow him, he assaulted *Bokara* by Night, and took it. *Ilech Kan* hasted thither immediatly, they met in the Territory of *Samarkand*, fought, and *Ilech Kan* was overthrown, with whose Plunder *Montecer*'s Army was enrich'd. This was in the
An. 1005. Year 394 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 1005. *Ilech Kan* having recruited his Army, advanc'd again towards *Montecer*, and found him when those who had assisted him, were gone, and what was worse, one of his Generals went over to *Ilech Kan* with 4000 Men, which made him despair of being able to stand it, and he fled. Being come to the River *Gehun*, and finding no Possibility of fording it, nor any other Conveniency to cross it, he lay there all that Night, without any other Provision for himself, or Men, but the Beasts that had been kill'd in the Frost. He made several Countermarches to blind the Enemy, till he came to *Koestam*, always pursu'd and hated on Account of the Inconstancy of his Fortune. He came to *Bokara* with very few Followers, most of his Men disgusted having deserted to *Soleymon* and *Safay Ilek Kan's* Generals. The Governour of *Bokara* promis'd to assist him, but he knowing that the aforesaid *Soleymon* and *Safy* were in Pursuit of him, left the City. *Mamud*, who was then Lord of *Karason*, had committed certain Lands to the Custody of *Ebenbayg*, an *Arabian* Commander. *Montecer* enter'd his Liberty, and hid himself in a poor House. *Maruyh*, who was in Search for him, was inform'd of it, attack'd the House at
His Death. Night, with some *Arabs*, and kill'd him. Thus ended the troublesome Life of *Montecer* in the
An. 1006. Year of the *Hegira* 395, of CHRST 1006.

Maha-

Mahamud, tho his Enemy was much concern'd at his Death, and kill'd *Maruyh*, who had slain him, with exquisite Torments.

Kabus Ben Waxmaguir had been peaceably possess'd of his Lands, in the Province of *Karason*, eighteen Years. He was descended from the ancient Kings of *Persia*, and the only Man that had no share in the late Troubles; for being discreet and rich, he so manag'd his Affairs, that by Dexterity and Presents he gain'd the Affections of those whose Ambition spar'd no Man. *Amir Sabutaquin*, after defeating *Aboaly* in *Karason*, came to *Bokara*, where he contracted strict Friendship with *Kabus*, whom he was very desirous to serve and oblige. *Fakoro Daule*, as has been said, was Lord of *Gerion*, him *Sabutaquin* resolv'd to dispossess, in order to settle *Kabus* in that Government. To this purpose he borrow'd 10000 Men of *Ilech Kan*, which with his own Troops would have form'd a considerable Army, and he mov'd to expect them at *Balk*, but before they could come, Death snatch'd him away. *Fakoro Daule* dy'd also, and left his Son *Mayndu Daule* to succeed him, under the Tuition of his Mother *Sayda*, as was said before. *Abul Kacem* resided at *Kumes*, and upon the Death of *Sabutaquin* took part with *Kabus*, with whom he agreed to conquer the Lands of the deceas'd *Fakoro Daule*, and to divide them between themselves. They invaded the Country two several ways. *Kabus* advanc'd to *Nixabur*, whence he detatch'd *Sfabed Scharear*, one of his Commanders, who meeting with *Rostam Marzabah*, Uncle to *Daule*, that was marching with his Forces to defend the Frontiers of *Gerion*, fought with and routed him. By this Victory he not only got a great Booty, but reduc'd a

Kabus *descended from the Kings of* Persia.

Invades Gerion.

considerable Parts of the Province under the Obedience of *Kabus*; and they possess'd themselves of *Amal*, a Place of Consequence in the Province of *Tabarstam*. *Acen Feruzan* advancing to recover this Place, those who were in it, with *Sfabed Scharear*, gave him Battel, which he lost, and was made Prisoner, with 20 more of his Commanders. These Successes put *Kabus* in Hopes of greater, and therefore to lose no Time, march'd immediately into *Gerion*, where he was proclaim'd King, in the Year of the *Hegira* 400, of CHRIST 1011. He had afterwards some Rencounters with the Enemy, but was always so fortunate, that he reduc'd all *Gueylon*, a very large Province, where he plac'd his Son *Manucher* Governour, sending mighty Presents to *Mamud*, by that means to secure himself the better in his new acquir'd Dominions. *Kabus* valu'd himself so much upon doing impartial Justice, and was so rigorous in the Execution of it, that tho' he had been before much belov'd, he came to be hated for Cruelty, and his People resolving to endure him no longer, some rush'd into his Tent, in the Camp, whom he with much Difficulty escap'd, and made his Way to *Bostam*; whilst they, venting their Spleen on the Tent, plunder'd all they found in it, which was of a considerable Value. Next they sent for *Manucher*, the Son of *Kabus*, who was Governour of *Gueylon*, offering to enthrone him, upon Condition he should neither revenge the Wrong done to his Father, nor any way aid him against them. *Munucher* would have accepted, provided his Father consented, but requir'd his Leave first, which they would not agree to, and he preferring his Duty to his Father before the Crown, left them and went away to

Is proclaim'd King. An. 1011.

Dutifulness of his Son.

to his Father; who having Regard to the Dutifulness of his Son, would not permit him to continue in his Service as he desir'd, but sent him back, resigning up the Crown and all the Right he had to it. Thus *Manucher* was put into Possession of the Throne, with the Approbation of all Men, and *Kabus* retir'd to live in the Fortress of *Kaschek*, where the People of *Gerion*, fearing he might whilst living do them some Harm, murder'd him; *Manucher* at that Time being ignorant who the Assassines were, tho afterwards he discover'd it, and made Examples of them. *His Death.*

Manucher, the Son of *Kabus*, otherwise call'd *Malech Almaly*, being possess'd of the Lands his Father had enjoy'd in the Provinces of *Gerion* and *Gueylon*, where *Maydu Daule* had still a good Share, sent Embassadors to *Sultan Mamud*, to put himself under his Subjection, paying 50000 *Dinares* a Year, which amounts to about 70000 Ducats. *Mamud* gave him one of his Daughters to Wife, but soon after the Wedding *Manucher* dy'd, leaving his Crown to his Brother *Darab*. Manucher *Son of* Kabus *King.*

Darab the Son of *Kabus* and Brother to *Manucher*, was concern'd, as has been said, in the Troubles that hapned between *Nue* and *Boaly*, siding at first with the latter, tho' afterwards he went over to *Nue*, upon whose Death he possess'd himself of his Part of the Kingdom of *Gerion*, and went to serve his Father, who sent him to *Tabarstam* to secure his Possessions there. Some Misdemeanours in that Government being laid to his Charge, he clear'd himself before his Father, but taking Offence that he had been accus'd, he went away to *Mamud*, who receiv'd and entertain'd him honourably; yet he by his ill Behaviour lost *Mamud*'s *His Brother* Darab *succeeds him.*

Favour, and being sensible of it, stole away to *Schaschar*, King of *Gurgestam*, who at the Request of *Mamud* sent him back. At last he succeeded his Brother in the Throne, where he sat not long.

Here *Mirkond* inserts all the Exploits of *Sabutaquin* in *India*, which I omit, as not properly belonging to this History, tho' I shall briefly recount the Actions of his Son *Mamud* in those Parts; between whom and his Brother *Ismael*, upon their Father's Death, there ensu'd much Strife, which was decided by the Sword, as was said above. *Ismael* being defeated, fled, and *Mamud* having setled perpetual Amity with *Ilech Kam*, made several Invasions, as his Father had done, into *India*, where the great Victories he obtain'd, and the Booties he carry'd off, made him powerful and terrible.

Actions in Karason and Maurenahar.

However, *Ilech Kam* not regarding the Friendship that had been contracted between them, took the Opportunity of his Absence once, to invade his Country, sending his Kinsman *Jafar Taquin* with Forces to *Balk*. *Arsalon Balu* had the Government of *Herat* and all *Gaznehen*, as far as *Bagon*, which are large Provinces, under *Mamud*. The Garrisons of these Places oppos'd *Ilech Ham* and *Jafar Taquin*. At the same Time *Mamud* being inform'd of this Breach, left the War he was engag'd in with *India*, and return'd with all possible Speed to *Karason*. He advanc'd towards *Jafar Taquin*, who broke up his Siege from before *Balk* and retir'd. *Mamud* sent *Arsalon Balu* after him, but *Taquin* went away into the Province of *Maurenahar*.

Mamud *King there.*

Mocen Ben Tak, one of *Mamud's* Commanders met him in *Serkas*, but was defeated and kill'd by *Taquin*, whom *Arsalon Balu* still pursu'd, till being attack'd by the People of *Gueylon*, he was by

by them overthrown, and escap'd with a few Followers to *Marwo*, where *Mamud* expected him; who understanding which Way *Taquin* had taken, pursu'd him, marching his Army several Ways, that they might not miss of him. *Abu Abdalu*, an *Arab* and one of his Commanders met and routed him. *Taquin* having lost a Brother and several Kinsmen, and Persons of Note, that were taken Prisoners, with those few that could escape, pass'd the River *Gehun*, and joyn'd *Ileck Kam*, who was much concern'd at this Loss, and being himself unable to begin a new War, begg'd the Assistance of *Kader Kan*, King of *Ketao Kotan*, which we call *Cathay*, who complying with his Request, rais'd a numerous Army in *Ketao Kotan*, *Turkestan* and *Maurenahar*, and having joyn'd *Ileck Kan*, they pass'd the River *Gehun*. *Mamud* hearing of these mighty Preparations, went away from *Tabarstam*, where he then was, to *Balk*, and march'd thence with a noble Army of *Turks*, *Colanys*, *Gazneys* and *Avegarys* to meet his Enemies. They came to a Battel, and *Mamud*'s Forces began to give way, which he observing, almost in Despair, rush'd into the thickest of the Enemies, making a mighty Slaughter, and met with *Ileck Kan*, whom his Elephant toss'd up into the Air. Then *Mamud*'s Men took Courage again, and pressing upon their Enemies, put them to Flight. This was one of the most bloody Battels that was fought in that Age, and hapned in the Year of the *Hegira* 397, of CHRIST 1008.

He defeats Ilech Kan.

An. 1008.

This Victory enabled *Sultan Mamud* to proceed in the Performance of his Vow, which was to undertake an Expedition yearly, either in Person or by his Generals into *India*, to convert those Heathens to his Sect. Being

His Actions in India.

now at Leisure, he march'd himself, and was met by *Bal*, one of the Kings of those Parts, with a numerous Army. The Fight lasted a whole Day, and at length *Mamud* obtain'd a compleat Victory over the *Indians*, who leaving behind a rich Booty, and 40 warlike Elephants, retir'd to a Fortress, that was look'd upon as impregnable, as being seated in the midst of a spacious and deep Lake, where they had laid up all the Wealth and Treasure of their Pagods, or Idol Temples, which was inestimable. *Mamud* besieg'd them, Provisions fell short, they surrender'd, and *Mamud* entering the Place, took all the Booty, which according to *Mirkond*, was seven Millions of *Drachmas* of Gold; 700 Mans of Gold in Ingots, which is 2800 Marks, at 8 Ounces a Mark; a great Quantity of Pearls and precious Stones, and many other things of great Value, all laid up in a House where that Treasure was secur'd. *Mamud* return'd with this Booty, and what he found in other Places, to *Gaznehen*, leaving trusty Persons to secure the Provinces he had
An. 1011. conquer'd in *India*. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 400, of CHRIST 1011. The next Year he made another Expedition, penetrating as far as the Lands of the *Gaores*, which is *Guzarat*, *Mahamed Ben Sury*, General of the *Baneans*, offer'd to make good a Pass against him, but was routed, and a Son of his taken, who rather than continue in Captivity, made away with himself, taking some Poison carry'd in a Bracelet.

Dreadful Famine. There happen'd a great and general Famine at this time in the Country of *Karason*, wherein several Mothers eat their own Children, and Men and Women devour'd one another, without regard to Age, Sex, or Condition. *Mechkan*, after losing the mighty Battel above spoken

spoken of, was gone into *Maurenahar*, and understanding that his own Brother *Togan Kan*, who had been with him in that Fight, had sent to make his Excuse to *Mamud*, he march'd against him; but *Mamud* interposing, they were reconcil'd. *Mamud* having compos'd these Troubles, march'd to *Bagdat*, and laid close Siege to it. The Calif *Kader Bila* was in the City, who seeing no Possibility of making a Defence, surrender'd, and satisfying him with five Millions of *Drachmas*, every *Drachma* is a Royal Plate, or Six-pence, *Mamud* left him, and return'd to *Persia*. *Schiror Abu Nacer*, the Son of *Abu Mahamed*, was possess'd of the Lands of *Gurgestam* ever since the Days of *Nue*, the Son of *Mansur*, having had the Government deliver'd up to him, when he was come to Age, by his Father, who retir'd to lead a private Life. When *Aboaly* rebell'd against *Nue*, he invaded *Schaschar*, and drove him out of his Province, and *Amir Sabutaquin*, Father to *Sultan Mamud*, receiv'd him into his Service, and having afterwards possess'd himself of those Lands, restor'd him to them. *Abu Mahamud* afterwards serv'd *Mamud*, who rewarded him with confirming the Kingdom to him, and many other Favours. *Mamud* was about marching into *India*, and would have taken *Abu Mahamud* with him, who excus'd himself; *Mamud* took no Notice of it then, but after his Return sent *Altun Tax* and *Arsalon Balu* against him; the Father had Recourse to him, whom *Mamud* treated very honourably, and sent him away to *Bagdat*, but depriv'd his Son of the Kingdom. He withdrawing into a Fortress, was there taken, and put to the Rack, to oblige him to discover a mighty Treasure he was reported to have; then carry'd to *Mamud*, who

Mamud *takes* Bagdat.

again caus'd him to be cruelly scourg'd, and cast into Prison. He sent for the Father from *Bagdat*, and giving him the Value of all the Possessions he had in *Gurgestam*, remov'd him to *Gaznehen*, where he gave him better Lands to live on near his Person, and there continu'd till the Year of the *Hegira* 406, of
An. 1016. CHRIST 1016, when he dy'd.

Mamud having settled his Affairs at home, went again into *India*, where he gain'd mighty Victories, and took an immense Booty. At this time dy'd *Maman Koarrazin Scha*, and left his Son *Aboaly* to succeed him. This
His other Expeditions. Prince marry'd one of *Mamud*'s Sisters, by which he gain'd his Friendship, and enjoy'd Peace the short time he liv'd; but after his Death, his Dominions fell to his Brother *Maman Ben Maman*, who soon after dy'd suddenly, not without suspicion of Poison, suppos'd to have been given him by one of his Commanders, call'd *Nealataquin*. A Son of his succeeded him; but *Mamud* being concern'd at his Death, and resolv'd to revenge it, march'd his Army into *Korrazon*. *Nealataquin* attack'd him one Morning at break of Day by Surprize, with such Vigour, that the Event was long doubtful; but at length *Mamud* obtain'd the Victory. *Nealataqain* in his Flight would have cross'd a River, and quarrelling with the Owner of the Boat, because he went too slow, he knew him, and being imboldned by his Condition, with the Help of his Comrades, bound and deliver'd him to *Mamud*, who was well enough inclin'd to have pardon'd him, but for his Insolence and Disrespect to his Person, caus'd him to be hang'd, bestowing the Government of *Korazon* on *Altuntax*. *Mamud*, after this, march'd again

again into *India*, where he gain'd a notable Victory over *Gulkand*, a Heathen King, who being thus vanquish'd with the Loss of 50000 Men, rather than a beautiful Wife he was extreamly fond of, should fall into the Hands of his Enemy, he kill'd her first, and himself after: *Mamud* made other Expeditions into *India*, where he overcame the Kings *Gipal* and *Tandebal*, taking a mighty Booty, which *Mirkond* gives an Account of at large; and I forbear, to observe my usual Brevity. *Mamud* returning to *Gaznehen*, built a stately Mosque, as a Thanksgiving for his many Victories, and then entring *Persia*, possess'd himself of the Cities *Rey* and *Ispahan* in *Hyerack*, both which, as has been said, belong'd to *Main du Daule*, leaving his Son *Masud* Governour there, and having been himself two Years in a sickly Condition, dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 421, of CHRIST 1031. Two Days before his Decease, he caus'd all that was most valuable in his Treasures to be brought before him, and looking on it wept; but as he said nothing, it is not known what Motive he had; but in regard he order'd all to be carefully laid up again, it is suppos'd it was for Grief that he could no longer enjoy that Wealth. Being at the Point of Death, he sent for his youngest Son, who it is likely was of a Warlike Disposition, and desir'd he would promise, *That after his Death, he would carry himself lovingly towards his Brothers, and pay due Respect to the Eldest.* The young Man answer'd, *He needed not to be concern'd, for he would behave himself towards them, as he would have done himself towards his own.*

His Death. An. 1031.

Whilst these Things happen'd in the Provinces of *Karason*, *Maurenahar* and *Uzbek*, the Affairs

Affairs of *Persia* were in no better Condition; *Magidu Daule*, the Account of whom we will now bring to a Conclusion, being King of *Gerion*, was slothful and negligent in his Government. *Mamud*, we have just now been speaking of, would not let slip that Opportunity, but sent a General with a considerable Army against him, to whom *Magidu Daule* submitted, without striking a Stroke, and put himself into his Hands, not questioning, but that since he had no way offended *Mamud*, he would not deprive him of his Kingdom; but he was deceiv'd, for as soon as ever *Mamud* was inform'd that he and his Son *Abuzcif* were taken, he repair'd to the City *Rey*, and making Search for *Magidu*'s Treasure, found a Million of *Dinares* in Gold, which is almost a Million and half of Ducats, and the Value of five hundred thousand *Dinares* in Jewels, besides a great Quantity of Gold and Silver Plate, and other Things of much Value. *Mamud* caus'd *Magidudaule* to be brought before him, and ask'd him, *Whether he had read* Schanoma, *which is the Chronicle of the Kings?* He answer'd, *He had.* Then *Mamud* ask'd, *Whether he could play at Chess?* He said, *He could*; and *Mamud* proceeded, *Tell me then, Did you ever read in the Book, that two Kings ever reign'd together in one Kingdom? Or did you ever see at Chess two Kings upon one Checker? Maindu* answering in the Negative, *Mamud* rebuk'd him severely, sending him, his Son, and his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to *Gaznehen*. Here *Mamud* found a noble Library, which he order'd to be carry'd to *Karason*, whither he went himself, leaving his Son *Masud* at *Rey*, as has been said.

Magidu Daule unthron'd.

We gave an Account before, how *Bahao Daule* dying in the Country of *Ariam*, his Son *Sul-*

Sultan Daule succeeded him, who sent his Brother *Gebela Daule* to *Xiras*, and another call'd *Abul Favares* to *Kermon*. This last rebell'd, and gathering a mighty Army, mark'd to *Schiras*, which he possess'd himself of, with other Lands, his Brothers being then absent; but *Sultan Daule* being inform'd of it hasted thither. *Abul Favares* not daring to encounter him, retir'd to *Kermon*. *Sultan* pursu'd, and he abandon'd that Country, and went away into *Karason*, to *Hyamin Daule Hamud*, who gave him a favourable Reception, and some time after sent one *Aby Said Tahi*, and a sufficient Force with him, to invade *Hyerak*. They took *Kermon*, and proceeding thence into *Persia*, made themselves Masters of *Schiras*. *Sultan Daule* was then at *Bagdat*, and upon the Receipt of this News, gathering what Forces he could, advanc'd towards *Schiras*. *Abul Favares* fled to *Kermon*, and thence to *Amadam*, the Government of *Schams Daule*, the Son of *Fakero Daule*; and thence again to *Fakkey*, in the Dominions of *Mazabu Daule*, who treated him honourably. *Gelala Daule*, Brother to *Sultan Daule* and *Abul Favares*, was at this time in *Bazora*, and writ to the latter very affectionately, desiring he would go to him, and they should both enjoy what he had. An Accommodation was now propos'd and concluded with restoring of *Kermon* to *Abul Favares* in the Year of the *Hegira* 409, of CHRIST 1019. *Acem Ben Bakao Daule* was possess'd of some Lands in *Diarbeck*, and held private Intelligence with one of *Sultan*'s Prime Commanders, which being discover'd, could not be disappointed, without coming to Blows; yet, after several Encounters, they agreed, That *Moxaraf Daule* should continue Governour

Troubles in Persia *and* Kermon.

An. 1019.

nour of the Lands of *Hyerak* in *Arabia*, and *Sultan Daule* remain possess'd of *Awaz* and *Persia*. When they were both withdrawn to their Governments, *Sultan Daule* sent *Eben Salah*, with a good Army to invade *Moxaraf Daule*, who met him with few, but Veteran Troops, and routed him. *Eben Salah* in his Flight took up in a Fortress, where he was so closely besieg'd by *Moxaraf Daule*, that after devouring Rats, and all other loathsome Vermine, he and his Garrison were oblig'd to surrender, upon no other Terms than to have their Lives spar'd. This Victory sunk the Reputation of *Sultan Daule* very low, and *Moxaraf Daule* was so much puff'd up with it, that he took the Title of *Schachan Scha*, which is as much as King of Kings. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 411 of CHRIST

An. 1021. 1021.

The next Year *Moxaraf* joining with *Gelala Daule*, he secur'd *Eben Salah*, and put out his Eyes. At the same time *Gelala Daule* was declar'd King of *Bagdat*, and *Abuyaleb* his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, being a Pickthank, and ill natur'd, tho' naturally Warlike, was kill'd by his Soldiers, upon whose Death, by the Mediation of *Abul Ganiar*, the Son of *Sultan Daule*, there was a new Accommodation concluded between him and *Moxaraf Daule*, in the the Year of the *Hegira* 413, of CHRIST 1023; *Sultan* remaining possess'd of *Persia* and *Kermon*, and *Moxaraf* of *Hyerak* in *Arabia*. Two Years after *Sultan Daule* dy'd at *Schyraz*.

An. 1023.

Sultan Daule *dies.*

His Son *Abul Ganiar* was then at *Awas*, and had Advice sent him by *Abu Mokarram*, one of his Fathers Prime Commanders, with some Troops to attend him on the Road. But the *Turks*, or *Turkymans*, for they are the same, who

who were settled at *Schiraz* and in *Persia*, call'd in *Abul Favares*, Brother to *Sultan*, who was then in *Kermon*, who lost no time, but hasted thither with such Expedition, that he was there before his Nephew had made any Motion, and as soon as arriv'd, caus'd *Eben Mokarram* to be secur'd. *Abul Gamar* perceiving how the Affairs stood, rais'd Forces, and putting them under the Command of *Abul Kacem*, the Son of *Mokarram*, sent him to *Schyraz*, and follow'd himself, with all the Troops he could draw together. *Abul Favares* abandon'd that Province, and fled to *Kermon*. *Abul Gamia* entring *Schiraz*, there ensu'd other, no less dangerous, Commotions. Some were for making War on *Abul Favares*, others were more inclin'd to Peace. Besides, the Soldiers demanded their Pay, and some Bounty over and above of the new King. There was no Money, and the King was a Youth, and unus'd to such Exigences. To avoid Trouble and Uneasiness, he went away to *Noabandian*, where abundance of his Men dy'd, through the excessive Heat, which oblig'd him to remove from thence to *Schabo* and *Basto*. *Abul Favares*'s Followers, who had been left at *Schiras*, sent for him, and he returning, was proclaim'd King. He presently march'd his Army against his Nephew, with whom he agreed, before any Engagement, granting him the Sovereignty of the Lands of *Awaz*, and keeping *Persia* to himself. The Friends of *Abul Gantar*, who were in *Schyraz*, and other Parts of *Persia*, seeing *Abul Favares* left in Possession of it, went away to *Awaz*, and being numerous, encourag'd the Youth to have Recourse to Arms again. He advanc'd against

Abul Ganiar, *King of* Persia. An. 1026.

against his Unkle, and after several Incounters with him, *Abul Favares* proving unsuccessful abandon'd *Schyraz*, which his Nephew enter'd, and was again saluted King of *Persia*; of whom we shall soon speak again.

In the Year of the *Hegira* 416, of CHRIST 1026, *Moxarat Daule* dy'd at *Bagdat*, aged 23 Years and some Months, when he had reign'd 5 Years and 25 Days. On his Death, *Galala Daule* was call'd from *Bassora*, to succeed him; but he not coming so soon as he should have done, the Government was bestow'd on another; which he resenting, march'd against *Bagdat*. The Calif *Kader* endeavour'd to appease him with fair Words and Intreaties, which failing, they came to the Decision of the Sword. *Gelala* being at length totally routed, fled to *Bassora*, with the Loss of many Men, and a considerable Booty. The next Year a great Multitude of *Turks* came down upon *Bagdat*, which they took without any great Opposition, then plunder'd and set fire to it, which consum'd the greatest and best part of it. This done, to secure themselves against the *Curdes* and *Arabs* inhabiting that Country, they call'd *Gelala Daule* from *Bassora* to be King of *Bagdat*; and upon his Arrival, and going to *Kader*, the Calif's House, to kiss his Foot, was by him courteously receiv'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 419, of CHRIST 1029, the *Turks* and other Soldiers demanding their Pay, and none being given them, they broke into the House of *Aboaly Ben Makula*, *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to *Gelala*, which they plunder'd, carrying away all they found in it, which was of no small Value. *Gelala* coming to oppose the Mutiny, was by them confin'd to a House, whence they suffer'd him not to depart

Gelala Daule, *King of* Bagdat. An. 1029.

part, till the Calif undertook they should be paid; which he perform'd himself, selling for that Purpose all he had of any Value.

At this time, as was said above, *Mamud Gazneky* was marching towards the City *Rey*, to possess himself of it, as he did, and design'd to do by all *Persia*. *Abul Ganiar* writ to his Unkle *Gelala Daule*, telling him, *That it was the time for them to unite, and jointly oppose the Enemy, who was invading their Dominions*. *Gelala* was so far from complying, that he rais'd Forces, and enter'd *Awaz*, plundering it, and carrying away a considerable Sum of Money out of his Nephew's Treasuries. At this time there happen'd much Discord at *Bassora*, between the *Turks* and the People of *Dialema*. *Malek Aziz*, Son to *Abu Mansur*, and Grandson to *Gelala Daule*, of whom we are speaking, favour'd the *Turkish* Party, which disgusting the People of *Dialema*, they went over to *Ile*, and the War continu'd between them. *Abul Ganiar* was at *Awaz*, and taking Advantage of these Troubles, march'd his Army to *Bassora*, and took it. Thence he proceeded to *Wacet*, where all the Wealth of *Gelala Daule*'s Kindred and Followers fell into his Hands, and *Gelala* thinking to have march'd to prevent it, his Troops would not move without their Pay. He wanted Money, and upon that Exigency, would have made use of the richest Inhabitants of *Bagdat*, desiring to borrow it of them, which drew upon him the general Dislike of the People. *Abul Favares* was still in *Kermon*, and perceiving that all Things were in Confusion, rais'd Forces to invade *Persia*, but dy'd by the Way; whereupon all the great Men of *Kermon*, by unanimous Consent, call'd in *Abul Garni-*

Garnia, and conferr'd the Government on him; and thus he became King of *Persia* and *Kermon*. He immediately drew together a considerable Army, and advanc'd towards *Bagdat*. *Gelala Daule* met him, they fought obstinately; *Abul Ganiar* was defeated, and fled to *Awaz*, having lost abundance of Men. *Gelala Daule* left sufficient Garrisons at *Wacet*, and return'd to *Bagdat* in the Year of the
An. 1032. *Hegira* 422, of CHRIST 1032. At the same time dy'd the Calif *Kader*, when he had been so 41 Years and 4 Months.

CHAP. XLI.

Kahem, *or* Alkahem Beamaryla Abu Jafar Abdula, 47*th* Calif.

Kahem, or *Alkahem Beamaryla Abu Jafar Abdula*, the Son of *Kader*, succeeded his Father in the Califship, in as troublesome Times as there had been before. Holding on to our usual Method, we will return to *Karason*, where we left *Sultan Mamud Gaznebi* newly dead, and his Son *Muhamed* enthron'd in his Place. He had, among others, a Brother call'd *Masud*, to whom his Father, before his Death, as has been said, had committed the Government of *Rey* and *Ispahan*. This Man hearing of his Father's Death, and his Brother's Advancement to the Throne, drew out his Forces and march'd towards *Karason*. The People of *Isphan*, who hated him for his Cruelty, as soon as he had turn'd his Back, rebell'd, and put the Garrison to the Sword. *Masud* return'd, laid Siege to the City,

Mahamed *reigns in* Karason.

City, enter'd it, punish'd the Ringleaders of the Revolt, and leaving a double Garison, march'd again towards *Karason*; by the way writing to his Brother, that he was going only to visit, and serve him, for he had Lands sufficient to maintain him. *Mahamed* was not at all pleas'd with *Masud*'s Compliment, and sent to desire he would save himself that Trouble, and return home. *Masud* took this as a Pretence to be offended, for a less Motive would have serv'd him, and accordingly he declar'd against *Mahamed*, whom many Persons often advis'd to be reconcil'd to his Brother; but he not regarding their Advice, sent one *Issuf Sabutaquin* against him, and follow'd himself with all the Forces he could raise. He stay'd at *Tangarabat* a whole Month, to keep the *Ramadan*, which is their Time of Fasting, like our Lent. About the latter End of it, *Masud* came up unexpected and besieg'd him. Not long after, by the Treachery of his Unkle *Issuf Sabutaquin*, and one *Amir Aly*, a considerable Man, *Mahamed* was seiz'd and deliver'd up to *Masud*; who having secur'd him, punish'd the Traytors as they deserv'd, casting the Unkle, loaded with Irons, into a Dungeon, and hanging *Amir*. This done, he advanc'd to *Gaznehen*, taking his Brother *Mahamed* along with him, whose Eyes he there caus'd to be put out; thus remaining possess'd of the Kingdoms of *Karason* and *Gaznehen*, besides *Hyerak*, which his Father had given him, the Government whereof he bestow'd on *Abusalem Hamduny*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 422, of CHRIST 1032. His Unkle *Aladaule Ben Kakuya*, Brother to his Mother, whose Daughter he took to Wife, was made Governour of *Ispahan*, with Orders to be assisting, as far as he could, to *Abuzale*. *Hamed Ben Ocem Massoud* was made his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*.

Traytors well rewarded.

An. 1032.

Masud blinds and deposes Mahamed.

zier. The following Year he sent *Altuntax*, Governour of *Koarrazm* against *Aly Taquin*, who had possess'd himself of *Samarcand* and *Bokara*: *Altuntax* set out by the Way of *Hamuyhe*, reducing all Parts that had revolted. Being come to *Samarkand*, *Aly Tarquin* met him with his Army, they ingag'd, *Altuntax* was hard set by reason of an Ambush *Taquin* had laid for him; yet he obtain'd the Victory, which cost him besides the Loss of many Men, his own Life, and he perceiving it to draw to an End, caus'd his Troops to come to an Accommodation with the Enemy, to secure them from any Danger after his Death, which hapned the next Day. *Masud* was much concern'd at it, and gave his Post to his Son *Aron Ben Almatax.*

Rebellion in Persia *and* India.

In the Year of the *Hegira* 424, of CHRIST 1034, the Territories of *Gibal* and *Rey* in *Persia*, rebell'd against *Masud*, as did the Garrisons left by his Father in *India*. At this time dy'd his *Wazir* or *Vizier Hamed Rea Ocem*, a Man of great Wisdom and Conduct, whose Place was given to *Abu Nacer Hamed*, *Wazir* or *Vizier* to *Altunta*, who was in *Koarrazm*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 426, of CHRIST 1036, he march'd with his Army to *Geriom* and *Tabarstam*, which he subdu'd. During his Absence, two *Turkish* Commanders, call'd *Togorek*, or *Togozelbek*, and *Jakarbek Salinguis* had made some Commotion, but sat still upon his Return. *Masud* made ready to enter *India*, contrary to the Advice of all his Council, because the Affairs of the *Turks* were not yet thoroughly setled. They upon his Absence, began to make In-roads barefac'd, throughout all the Country from *Karason* to *Persia*, with so much Success, that they oblig'd *Alao Dau Ben Kakuya* and *Abusale*, to abandon their Gu-

vernmen

vernments with Precipitation, leaving them that Kingdom, which they possess'd themselves of, with other adjacent Parts of *Persia*. During these Troubles *Abul Ganiar* possess'd himself of *Tabarstam*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 428, of CHRIST 1038. By this Time *Masud* return'd from his *Indian* Expedition, and two Years after set out again from *Gaznehen* towards *Geriom*. By the way he was inform'd, that a Robber, who committed many Outrages on the Roads, shelter'd himself with 100 Companions in a Fortress near by. He drew them out with a Safe-conduct, but as soon as brought before him, caus'd them all to be hang'd, alledging, that such Criminals ought to be brought to condign Punishment by any Means whatsoever. As he proceeded on his March, some Towns complain'd to him, that *Nur Taquin*, Governour of *Balk*, oppress'd them with Tyranny and Extortions. He mov'd towards him with very much Difficulty, because it was Winter and froze hard, and when he had advanc'd about half way was inform'd, that one *Daud Saliuk*, a *Turkish* Commander, was marching to *Balk* with considerable Forces, to assist *Nur Taquin*. *Masud* being unwilling to leave any Enemy behind, turn'd back against *Daud*. *Nur Taquin* having notice of this Counter-march, fell upon his Rear, and killing many of his Men, took most of his Baggage. *Massud* thus roughly handled, held on his Way till he met with *Daud Saliuh*, by whom he was overthrown, aud fled to *Gaznehen*, where he put to Death many of the *Turks* that serv'd under him, because they had misbehav'd themselves in the Battel, and then sent away to *Balk* his Son *Mandud*, attended by *Abu Nacer Hamed* his *Wazir* or *Vizier*, with a considerable

siderable number of Troops. He himself taking along his blind Brother and Sons, went away to *India*. Being come to the Bank of the River *Send*, which the *Persians* call *Pang Ab*, and is the *Indus*, he and his Favourites pass'd over to rights, leaving his blind Brother, with the Treasure on this Side, under the Direction of a Commander call'd *Mustaquin*, who looking upon that as a favourable Opportunity, fell with his Men upon the Treasure, and dividing it among themselves, declar'd the blind Man King, he at first refusing, but afterwards consented for Fear of Death, wherewith they threatned him, if he did not comply. With him they pass'd the River, the rest of the Army, submitting to him, and securing *Masud*, deliver'd him up to him; of whom he took no other Revenge, than to desire he would be satisfy'd to live quietly in any Place, which *Masud* agreed to, praying it might be in the Fortress of *Kobrakebir*, which was granted him with a good Guard. At Parting *Masud* ask'd his Brother to give him some Money to spend by the Way, and he, being very covetous, order'd him 500 *Drachms*, which are but five hundred single Royals, or about 12 Pounds ten Shillings. *Masud* was much concern'd at it, but the Person who was to deliver it, gave him of his own 1500 *Dinares* in Gold, amounting to near 2000 Ducats, which was afterwards well repaid. King *Mahamed* being sensible of his Incapacity for Government, because of his Blindness, put it into the Hands of his Son *Hamed*, who by the Advice of a Son of *Issuf Taquin*, and another of *Amir Aly Kaxavand*, whose Fathers *Massud* had put to Death, for their Treachery, towards the blind Man, went away privately to *Kobra Kebir*, and murder'd him, when he

Mahamed *the Blind enthron'd again.*

His Avarice.

Masud *murder'd.*

he had reign'd ten Years, having been a brave and generous Prince. His Son *Maedud* had been left at *Balk*, where being inform'd of his Father's Misfortune, and *Mahamed*'s Return from *India*, he march'd to meet him in *Gaznehen*, with a well disciplin'd Army. They met, and fought, *Mahamed* was routed and taken, with his Son *Hamed*, the two Advisers of *Maesud*'s Murder and many more Courtiers, who were all immediatly put to Death, except one *Abderrayn* Son to the blind Man, whom *Maedud* pardon'd, because he having gone with his Brother *Abderramon*, to visit their Unkle *Masud*, when Prisoner, they found him with a *Tage* or Crown on his Head, which *Abderraman* snatch'd off and cast on the Ground, with much Passion and Contempt. *Abderrayn* blam'd him much for so doing, and taking up the *Tage* or Diadem, put it again on his Unkle's Head with Expressions full of Compassion. *Maedud* was inform'd of this Merciful Action, and was now mindful of it to requite him. *Maedud* caus'd a magnificent Structure to be erected on the Ground where he gain'd this Victory, and call'd it *Fat Habad*, signifying in the Language of *Karason*, the Place where I gain'd. The Death of *Masud* occasion'd new Commotions throughout all the Dominions of *Persia* and *India*, whence *Maedud* apprehended some Disturbance from his Brother *Maiudud*, who was there preparing for it, but dy'd suddenly by the Way, by which Means *Maurenahar* and that Part of *India* fell to *Maedud*. However the *Salinqui Turks* inhabiting *Maurenahar* and *Karason* would not own him. He sent an Army against them in the Year of the *Hegira* 435, of CHRIST 1045, which was met by *Olob Arsalom*, the Son of *Jakarbek*, with a considerable Force, who overthrew *Maodud*'s

Compassion requited.

Maodud *succeeds* Mahomed

Ar. 1045.

Troops. On the other Side, great Numbers of *Turks* breaking out of *Turkestam*, into the Lands of *Gaomacer* and *Kandachar* to plunder, were entirely routed by *Maedud*'s Garrisons, which drew together to oppose them. At this Time all the Kings in *India* that were subject to *Maedud*, revolted, and confederating together, laid Siege to *Lahor*. *Maedud* sent Relief with all possible Speed, and whilst that was marching, the Besiegers fell at Variance among themselves, so that they had Recourse to Arms: Some of them declar'd for *Maedud*, and prevail'd against the others; then joyning the Troops sent by him, soon reduc'd the Rest under his Obedience. *Maedud* marching against the *Salinqui Turks*, who had made themselves Masters of *Karason*, dy'd by the Way, of the Colick, in the Year of the *Hegira* 441, of CHRIST 1050, and tho' he left two Sons, yet his Officers and Army gave the Crown to his Brother *Aly Ben Masud*.

His Death.
Aly *succeeds.*
An. 1050.

It was said before, in the Life of *Maedud*, that when he had defeated, and kill'd his Uncle *Mahamed*, he left none alive of all that Royal Stock, but only one Son of the blind King call'd *Abd Rahym*, or *Abd Rascbid*. This Man was then in Custody, and upon the Death of *Maedud*, a *Wazir* or *Vizier* releas'd and proclaim'd him King. *Aly Ben Masud* finding all things in Confusion, and himself in no Condition to overcome all the Difficulties that presented, fled the Country. *Abd Raxid*, whose Capacity was not extraordinary, confided so much in *Togorel* or *Tokzel*, one of his Commanders, that he not only depriv'd him of his Dominions, but of his Life, as will soon appear.

Abd Rahim *out* Aly.

We left *Kahem* newly made *Calif*, soon after whose Promotion, the Soldiers in *Bagdat* mutiny'd

Confusions at Bagdat.

tiny'd again, plundering the House of *Gelala Daule's Wazir* or *Vizier*, and in Hatred to him, proclaim'd *Abulganiar* King of *Bagdat*, and sent for him; but he being better advis'd, excus'd himself; and was in the Right, for when his Answer return'd, the *Turks* had again agreed with *Gelala Daule*, yet this Reconciliation was not lasting, for they very soon after, throwing off all Respect, committed a thousand Insolences, and destroy'd the City, setting Fire to it in open Day, that they might have an Opportunity to plunder. In the Year of the *Hegira* 427, of CHRIST 1037, they openly revolted against *Gelala*, and would have expell'd him the City, had he not oppos'd them with Wisdom and Resolution. He continu'd in Peace till the next Year, when the General of the *Turks* was kill'd in a Mutiny, which made them somewhat abate of their Fury. At this Time a Peace was concluded between *Gelala* and *Abul Ganiar*; and in the Year of the *Hegira* 430, of CHRIST 1040, there fell such a Snow in *Bagdat* and the adjacent Parts, that it lay on the Ground three Spans in Depth; and the River *Degila*, which is the *Tigris*, on whose Bank the City stands, was frozen over, for the Space of twelve Days; a wonderful thing, considering the Situation of the Place, which I take to be in 34 Degrees of North Latitude. The next Year there hapned fresh Debates between the *Turks* and *Gelala Daule*, who brought them a little more under Subjection. In the Year of the *Hegira* 434, of CHRIST 1044, *Ebrahem Neali Salinqui*, a *Turkish* Commander breaking into the *Persian* Province of *Hyerak*, took *Amedon*. *Tokzelbek* did the same after him, and possess'd himself of the City *Rey*, and the following Year *Gelala Daule* dy'd, when

Prodigious Frost and Snow.

An. 1044.

Gelala *King of* Bagdat

when he had reign'd 17 Years. His Son *Abu Mansur* was then at *Wacet*, who being sent for to succeed his Father in the Throne, was so long detain'd there by Commotions, that they who had sent for him, not able to wait any longer, gave the Government to *Abul Ganiar*. *Tokzelbek* was then ranging victorious through *Persia*, for which Reason *Abul Ganiar* concluded an Allyance with him, marrying his own Son to a Daughter of *Daud Salinqui* and Niece to *Tokzelbek*. The following Year, which was of the *Hegira* 440, and of CHRIST 1049, *Abul Ganiar* dy'd in the Province of *Kermon*, four Years after *Gelala Daule*, leaving five Sons, *viz.* *Aba Mansur Fulath Sotun*, that is, Pillar of Steel, *Kozrao Feruz*, *Abu Faher*, *Abucayd Aboaly* and *Kay Kozrao*. *Sotun*, who was the eldest, went away to *Schiras* to succeed his Father, but *Kozrao Feruz* who was there, caus'd himself to be proclaim'd King, and changing his Name with his Condition, call'd himself *Malek Rhaym*. Then gathering a moderate Army, set his Brother *Abu Sayd* at the Head of it, to go meet *Fulad Sotun*, following after himself with all the Forces he could raise. When they were come near *Stahkar*, where *Sotun* was, all the *Turks* and most of the other Troops went over to him, leaving the two Brothers to themselves. *Malek Rhaym* retir'd to *Awaz*, but soon left that Place to his Brother, who still pursu'd him. Lastly he withdrew to *Wacet*, with his Brothers *Abu Taker*, and *Abu Sayd*, where the War was continu'd with various Success, till the Year of the *Hegira* 447, of CHRIST 1056, when *Malek Rhaym* being inform'd, that *Takzebek*, at the Instigation of *Abu Mansur*, had possess'd himself of *Schiraz*, and most of the Dominions of *Persia*, and perceiving all Places

And King Abul Ganior.

full

full of Division and Destruction, he made his utmost Effort, and raising all the Forces he was able, march'd and possess'd himself of *Schiraz*, and having furnish'd him with all that was necessary for Defence, return'd to *Wacet*.

The Calif Kahem flies from Bagdat.

Discord still prevail'd at *Bagdat*, where one *Besancery*, a Commander of the Standing Forces, at the Instigation of the *Calif* of *Damascus*, who was then of the Family of *Ismaelga*, conspir'd against the Calif *Kahem*, or *Alkahem Beamarila*, and press'd him so hard, that he was oblig'd him to quit the Country, and fly to the Protection of *Fokzelbeck*, with whom he had before contracted some Friendship, and who receiv'd and promis'd to support him, as he did. He march'd with him and all his Forces to *Bagdat*, which was enter'd by Force, plunder'd, and destroy'd with Fire and Sword, sparing neither the Living nor the Dead, whose Tombs were all open'd, to see whether there was any thing to steal in them. *Malek Rhaym* was then in *Bagdat*, and fled with his Friends, in hopes to escape the Fury of the Soldiers to the Calif *Kahem*'s House, who did all he could to save him, but unsuccessfully, for he fell into the Hands of *Tolzelkek*, who cast him into Prison, where he dy'd. This did not put an end to the War, which *Abu Sayd* continu'd against *Mansur*, who, after several Engagements, over-threw his Brother *Abu Sayd* in Battel, and kill'd him, securing to himself the Lands and Title of King of *Persia*. One who had been *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to his Father, held the same Post under him, whom he put to Death upon Suspicion, and gave that Place to one *Fazel Ben Acen*, or *Fazel Huye*. This Man, when well settled in his Employment, in Requital for such a Favour, receiv'd

Badgat destroy'd.

of

of *Mansur*, confin'd him in a strong Hold, where he dy'd; and *Fazel Huye* assum'd the Title of King of *Persia*. A *Salinque Turkish* Commander, call'd *Malek Maverd*, was then in the Province of *Kerman*, who, being inform'd of what had happen'd, march'd with his Army against *Fazel Huye*. He fled to another call'd *Oleb Arsalom*, whose Lands he farm'd, and growing very rich by that means, revolted from him; yet not so successfully, but that soon after both he and a Son of his call'd *Nuzon all Molk* were both taken, and secur'd in the Fortress of *Strahhor*, where they dy'd. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 448, of CHRIST 1057.

Aboaly Kay Kezrao, the Son of *Abul Ganiar*, who had succeeded his Father in the Government, voluntarily deliver'd himself up to *Oleb Arsalom*, who gave him the Lands of *Naobandian* and *Aktak* to live on, always treating him with much Honour and Civility. He liv'd 40 Years after his Brothers, and dy'd in that of the *Hegira* 487, of CHRIST 1095, when the Sovereignty and Government of the Family of the *Daules* ended in *Persia*. To speak of *Togorel* or *Tokzelbek*, and the Affairs of *Persia*, we left *Abd Raxid*, who being inform'd of the Practices of *Tokzel* against his Person, retir'd to *Gaznehen*, whither the other pursuing besieg'd him, and entring the City by Force, *Abd Raxid* withdrew into a Fortress there was in the midst of it. After some Days Siege, *Tokzel* perceiving he could not take it by Force, prevail'd by Treachery, corrupting the Governour and Garrison, and thus he got *Raxid* into his Hands, whom he immediately put to Death, with many more of his Kindred and Friends, and took to himself

End of the Race of the Daules in Persia.

self the Title of King, marrying a Sister of the Deceas'd. A few Days after, as he sat in publick to receive the Compliments of the great Men, as is the Custom in those Parts, ten of the Prime Nobility approach'd together to pay their Submission, and coming up close, drew their Swords and kill'd him. Not long after, *Charkir*, a Commander, arriv'd there from *India*, who releas'd out of Prison, where he was confin'd, *Ferrogh Zad*, the Son of *Masud*, and Brother to *Abd Raxid*, whom he set upon the Throne. *Daud Salinqui* made War on him, but *Ferrogh Zad* defeated him, and then march'd his Army into *Karason*, where he was met by the Generals of *Salinquah*, King of *Turkestam*, whom he also overthrew. At last *Olob Arsolem*, Son to that King, came against him in Person, and routed him, carrying away many of the *Gazney*'s Prisoners, who were afterwards exchang'd for *Turks*, that were Prisoners in *Gaznehen*. *Ferrogh Zad*, having reign'd 6 Years, dy'd, leaving the Crown to his Brother *Ebrahen Ben Masud*. At this same time dy'd *Kahem*, or *Alkahem*, the Calif, in the Year of the *Hegira* 467, of CHRIST 1074, when he had enjoy'd that Dignity 44 Years and 4 Months.

The Calif Kahem *dies.* An. 1074.

CHAP. XLII.

Almoktady Bila, *the* 48*th*, Almastacer Bila, *the* 49*th*, Almostarxed Bila, *the* 50*th*, Raxet Bila, *the* 51*st*, *and* Almoktasy Bila, *the* 52*d* Calif.

A. *Almoktady Bila*, Grand-son to *Kahem*, was, upon his Grand-father's Death, chosen *Calif*; in whose Days *Persia* was not free from Com-

Commotions, but since they did not amount to make any Change in the Government, we shall not lose much time upon them. In the Dominions of *Karason* and *Maurenahar*, *Ebrahem*, Brother to *Ferroghzad*, who, upon his Death, succeeded in the Throne, concluded a Peace with the *Turks*; and having settled Affairs at home, went over into *India*, where he undertook fresh Conquests, and subdu'd many Provinces, taking an inestimable Booty, whereof *Mirkond* gives a large Account. He return'd into *Persia*, and thinking to enjoy Peace, was inform'd that *Malek Scha*, King of *Turkestam*, was making mighty Warlike Preparations to invade him; but he sent Embassadors, who prevail'd with him to desist; and as a farther Bond of Amity, *Ebrahem* marry'd his Son *Masud* to a Daughter of *Malek Scha*.

Ebrahem, *King of* Karason.

After this, *Ebrahem* dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 481, which is of CHRIST 1089, leaving the Crown to his Son *Masud*. In 487, or 1095, the Calif *Almoktady Bila* dy'd suddenly, when he had rul'd 19 Years and 5 Months.

His Son Masud *succeeds him.*

An. 1089. An. 1095.

His Son *Almostacer Bila* succeeded him. The City of *Bagdat*, which was at first seated in *Mesopotamia*, on the Banks of the *Tigris*, being ruin'd by the over-flowing of that River, he remov'd it to the other side of the said River, which was more commodious, where it now stands, opposite to the former, when 25 Califs had reign'd since the first Founding of it by *Abu Jafar*, and it is worthy to be observ'd, that not one of them dy'd in it. *Almostacer Bila* enjoy'd Peace almost all the time of his Government, which was 25 Years and 6 Months, at the end whereof he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 512, which was of CHRIST 1119.

Bagdat *City removed.*

An. 1119.

His

His Son *Almoxstarced Bila Fazele* succeeded him; he prov'd a resolute Martial Man, and made War on some *Persian* Princes. *Masud Salinquin*, King of *Karason*, invading some Provinces of *Persia*, *Almoxstarced* oppos'd him, and fought several Battels, with various Event. At last the decisive Stroke was given at *Maragah*, near *Tauriz*, where the *Calif* was routed, and fled; but being afterwards taken, and deliver'd to *Masud*, he caus'd him to be put to Death, in the Year of the *Hegira* 529, of CHRIST 1136, when he had reign'd 17 Years and 2 Months. An. 1136.

Baxet Bila inherited the Califship by his Father's Death, and being resolv'd to revenge it, rais'd the greatest Force he was able, and march'd towards *Masud*, who still ravag'd all *Persia*, and had made himself Master of the greatest Part of it. They met, a Battel was fought, and *Raschat* overthrown, who fled to *Ispahan*, the Capital of *Hyerack*, in *Persia*, where he was afterwards kill'd, having govern'd but two Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 532, of CHRIST 1139. *Masud*, after routing and putting him to Death, march'd to *Bagdat*, where he was receiv'd, without any Opposition, and gave the Califship to *Almoktafy Bila*, Unkle to the Deceas'd. *Masud subdues Persia.* An. 1139.

Not long after *Masud* dy'd in *Persia*, and every one of his Generals and Governours, kept what he had been entrusted with. *Almoktafy* took the Field, and recover'd almost all that *Masud* had possess'd himself of in *Persia*, which having enjoy'd about 24 Years, without any considerable Disturbance, he dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 555, of CHRIST 1161. *Dies.* An. 1161.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Almostanger Bila Issuf, *the* 53*d*; Almostanzy Benur Elah Acen, *the* 54*th*; Nacer, *or* Nacere Ladinla, *the* 55*th*; Alhazer, *or* Altaker Bila Mahamed, *the* 56*th*; Almostancer Bila Mansur, *the* 57*th*; *and* Almostacem Bila Abdula, *the* 58*th*, *and last* Calif *of* Bagdat.

Almostanger Bila Issuf, Son to the Calif *Moktafy*, succeeded his Father. *Masur* dy'd in *Persia*, as was said above, in the Days of this *Almostanger*'s Father, leaving his eldest Son *Arsalom Scha* to succeed him in *Gaznehen*. This King, as soon as seated on the Throne, seiz'd all his Brothers, who were numerous, except one, who made his Escape, call'd *Baharon Scha*. At this time two Brothers, related to the Royal Family, held the two Governments of *Karason* and *Hyerack* in *Persia*; *Saniar* had the former of them, and *Mahamed* the latter. *Baharon* flying from his Brother, had Recourse to *Saniar*, who protected and endeavour'd to reconcile him to *Arsalon Scha*, but could not prevail. *Saniar* espousing *Baharon*'s Quarrel, rais'd Forces, and advanc'd towards *Gaznehen*. *Arsalon Scha* being inform'd of it, made his Complaint to *Mahamed*. *Saniar*'s Brother, who was Governour of *Hyerack*, who us'd some Endeavours, but could not reconcile them. The War was carry'd on, *Saniar* march'd his Army to *Bast*, where *Abufazel*, Governour of *Siston*, join'd him. *Arsalon Scha* met them, and coming to a Battel, was routed. An Aunt of his afterwards made them Friends, but *Saniar*, at the Request of *Baharon Scha*, had Recourse to Arms again, and having gain'd a second Victory over *Arsalon Scha*, enter'd *Gaznehen*,

Arsalon *succeeds* Masud.

hen, where he had a mighty Booty, and putting *Baharon Scha* into Possession of that Country, return'd to his own. As soon as he was gone, *Arsalon Scha* invaded *Gaznehen*, which *Baharon Scha* abandon'd, and flying to *Saniar*, was again restor'd by him. *Arsalon Scha*, not daring to stand him, made the best of his way; but being closely pursu'd was taken, and deliver'd to his Brother *Baharon*, who caus'd him to be immediately put to Death, in the Year of the *Hegira* 512, of CHRIST 1119, when he had reign'd 3 Years, and *Baharon* was settled on the Throne. He prov'd a good Prince, Magnificent, Generous, and well qualify'd; a great Lover of natural Sciences; a Favourer of Learned Men, and writ himself some Philosophical Tracts; yet did not Learning make him e'er the less Warlike, for he made some Invasions into *India*, and into *Persia*, where he dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 547, of CHRIST 1153, when he had reign'd 35 Years, and left the Crown to his Son *Kozrao Scha*.

Baharon Xa *kills him, and succeeds.* An. 1119.

He dies.

This new King, not thinking himself safe in these Lands, by reason of the many Tumults, remov'd from thence to *Lahor* in *India*, whence, returning again to *Gaznehen*, he found that Kingdom in the Possession of *Saniar*, King of *Karason*; and perceiving he could not prevail against him, return'd to *Lahor*, where he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 555, of CHRIST 1161, having reign'd 9 Years, and leaving the Crown to his Son *Kozrao Malek*.

His Son Kozrao *reigns.*

Dies. An. 1161.

He succeeded his Father in the City *Lahor*, Capital of the Kingdom of *Multan*, in *India*, now the Court of the *Great Mogul*; for *Persia*, and his other Kingdoms and Dominions were in other Hands, and it requir'd a more Martial and less vitious Disposition than his to retrieve them, which gain'd him the ill Will of all his People, and particularly of the Soldiers. One Sultan *Guayacadin Mahamed Guary* govern'd a Part of the Country of *Gaznehen*; this Man, after some Incursions made into *India*, laid Seige to *Lahor*, took it, and carry'd away *Kozrao Malek* to *Gaznehen*, where he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 563, of CHRIST 1169, and in him ended the Family of the *Sabutaquys*. Three Years after dy'd *Almostanger Bila Issuff*, the *Calif*, after enjoying that Dignity 11 Years, which he left to his Son. *Al-*

His Son Kozrao *last of the Race.* An. 1169.

Almostanzy Benurelak Acen, who was a good Prince, generous, and belov'd by his People, rul'd 9 Years and 8 Months, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 575, of CHRIST 1180. Nothing remarkable happen'd during his Reign.

An. 1180.

Upon his Death, the Califfhip devolv'd to his Son *Nacer*, or *Ladinla*, who held it 47 Years, in whose Days *Bagdat* throve very much. During his Reign, the *Koarrazmites* invaded the *Salinquys*, and subdu'd them; and the *Tartars*, under *Chinguys Kan*, possess'd themselves of the Lands of *Turon* and *Agem*, putting them to Fire and Sword, *Nacer* dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 622, of CHRIST 1226.

His Son *Alhazer Bila Mahamed* was made Calif in stead of his Father, and enjoy'd it only 9 Months and 13 Days, dying in the Year of the *Hegira* 623, of CHRIST 1227, leaving that Dignity to his Son.

An. 1227.

Almostacer Bila Mansur, who valu'd himself so much upon being generous, that he became prodigal, and so fell to Poverty. During his Reign, when *Persia* enjoy'd almost an universal Peace, the *Mogols* or *Tartars* made their first Incursion into it. When they had possess'd themselves of some Provinces the Calif *Almostancer* oppos'd, and oblig'd them to quit most of what they had gain'd, and having given them several other Repulses, dy'd in the 17th Year of his Government, of the *Hegira* 640, and of CHRIST 1244. His Son

An. 1224.

Almostacem Bila Abdula succeeded in the Califfhip, and was the last of the Family of *Ben Habaz*. The Tartar *Olaku Kan* invaded, routed, and kill'd him, when he had been Calif 15 Years and 7 Months, putting all the People of *Bagdat* to the Sword, as shall be mention'd in the following Chapter, and brief Account of the *Mogols* or *Tartars* that ove-ran *Persia*. In this Man ended the Califs of *Bagdat*, vulgarly call'd of *Babylon*, and sometimes of *Baldak*. There were 37 of this Family, who held that Dignity 523 Years, little over or under. I have mention'd them all, in regard that in the Chronicles of *Persia* they are reckon'd Monarchs of that Kingdom; and in what remains to be said of the rest of them, I shall observe the same Method that is follow'd by *Tavarick* and *Mirkond*, their Historians. The Calif *Almostacem* dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 655, of CHRIST 1258.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

An Account of the Mogols, *or* Tartars, *that Conquer'd* Persia.

IN the most Eastern Parts of *Asia*, not far from *Ketao Kotan*, which, as has been said, is *Cathay*, bordering on *China*, liv'd one *Buzaniar*, who by his Valour and other Virtues, made himself Master of most of those Provinces. His Successors, no less potent and active than himself, being possess'd of those Countries, and subduing others, extended their Empire over many Regions of a vast Extent; but my Design being only to treat of those who have been Soveraigns of *Persia* till our Days, I shall say no more of these than is barely requisite for my Purpose, beginning with *Chinguis Kan*, the First of them that brought the *Mogols* or *Tartars* into *Persia*, and was the Ninth Descendant from *Buzaniar*, as follows. *Chinguis Kan*, the Son of *Sukyh Badur*, that is, the Brave, the Son of *Partan Badur*, the Son of *Fil Kan*, the Son of *Tomanah Kan*, the Son of *Bukah Kan*, the Son of *Buzaniar*, who is the first above-mention'd, and Eighth Grandfather of *Chinguis Kan*, with whom we are now to proceed.

Chinguis Kan, *King of* Tartary.

Chinguis Kan, the Son of *Sukyh Badur*, was born in the Year of the *Hegira* 546, of CHRIST 1152. When he was thirteen Years of Age his Father died, and being left so Young there follow'd much Contention among those People, about his Succession and Protectorship, and grew to such a Height, that they could not be quell'd till the Year of the *Hegira* 599, of CHRIST 1204. when *Chinguis Kan* over-coming

all Difficulties, in spight of all those that oppos'd it, made himself King, and absolute Monarch of all that his Father and Ancestors had been possess'd of. His Name before was *Tamachin*, and three Years after he found himself fix'd on the Throne, which was in the *Ann.* 1207. Year of the *Hegira* 602, of CHRIST 1207, he order'd himself to be call'd *Chinguis Kan*, which is said in their Tongue to signifie, *King of Kings*. By Degrees he became extraordinary Powerful, subduing all the Hords, or Tribes of *Tartars*, as also the Kingdoms of *Ketao Ketan*, *Helan*, *Tangar*, and others; and having settled them all in Peace, in the Year of the *Hegira* 615, of CHRIST 1219, he march'd out of his own Dominions, and advanc'd with an innumerable Army against *Mahamad Koarrazm Scha* in *Maurenahar*, who after some Resistance made, perceiving how little he was able to do against so formidable an Enemy, left him his Dominions, and withdrew into *Karason*. *Chinguis Kan* enter'd *Maurenahar* in the Year of the *Hegira* 620, of CHRIST 1224, putting every living Creature he met with to the Sword. The same he did at *Balk*, and thence sent 30000 Horse in Pursuit of *Mahamud Koarrazm Scha*, who fled before him. They overtook him at *Abishon*, in the Province of *Gueylon*, and slew him, ravaging all that Country with Fire and Sword. It is positively affirm'd, that the *Mogols* or *Tartars* destroy'd Seven hundred thousand Souls in the City *Rey*, and the Country about it; and in the Provinces of *Nixabur*, a Million one hundred and fifty thousand, some say a Million and six hundred thousand Men, besides Women and Children, and proportionable in several other Provinces. When they had spent a whole Year ranging about *Persia*, and

Terrible Slaughter he makes in Maurenahar.

and making such dreadful Havock in all Parts, *Almostanzer Bila Mansur Ben Alzaker*, the *Calif* of *Bagdat*, having rais'd the greatest Power he was able, both as to Men and other warlike Preparations, march'd against them, and either for that they were divided, and their Numbers lessen'd, or because they had a Mind to be gone with their Booty, oblig'd them to depart almost all *Persia*, and they return'd to *Maurenahar*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 623, of CHRIST 1227.

Retires out of Persia. *Ann.* 1227.

Upon the Death of *Mahomed*, King of *Koarrazm*, his Son *Sultan Gelaladin* fled into *India*, whom the *Mogols* pursu'd, and overtaking him near the River *Indus*, fought and routed him, and he retir'd to the Kingdom of *Multan*, farther up in *India*. *Chinguis Kan* having shown his Men the way into *Persia*, and left some Commanders there, return'd to *Ketao Kotan*, where he died in the Year of the *Hegira* 624, of CHRIST 1228, being Seventy eight Years of Age, and having reign'd as absolute Sovereign of his Dominions Twenty five. He had Four Sons, the Eldest call'd *Tuxy Kan*, whom his Father had constituted Governor of the Kingdoms of *Dast*, *Kapechah*, *Ross*, and *Abulgar*, died Six Months before him; The Second, call'd *Chagatay Kan*, who was Governor of the Kingdoms of *Maurenahar*, *Ayger*, and *Koarrazm*, held those Dominions till the Year of the *Hegira* 638, of CHRIST 1241, when he died; The Third, whose Name was *Oktay Kan*, succeeded his Father; The Fourth, *Tuly Kan*, to whom his Father, besides some Provinces, left all his Treasures, died in the Year of the *Hegira* 628, of CHRIST 1232. So that of *Chinguis Kan*'s four Sons, only *Oktay Kan* liv'd to enjoy his Inheritance, tho' the others left

Dies. Ann. 1228.

Sons, some of which afterwards succeeded, as shall be said in its Place. *Mirkond* writes, as a certain Truth, That when *Chinguis Kan* was born, he brought out a little Blood hard grasp'd in each Hand, which was an Omen of his Cruelty.

His Son Oktay Kan *succeeds him.* *Ann.* 1230.

Oktay Kan, Third Son to *Chinguis Kan*, upon his Death, succeeded in the Throne, at the beginning of the Year of the *Hegira* 626 of CHRIST 1230. He was as good as his Father had been wicked, and among other Virtues, was singular for Generosity, a Quality well-becoming Princes, and very necessary. *Mirkond* tell us, He laid out, during the whole Course of his Life in extraordinary Gifts and Presents, 666 Purses, as the *Persians* express it, each Purse containing 1000 *Tomans* of Gold, and every *Toman* is worth Sixteen Ducats; so that the whole amounts to Ten Millions six hundred and fifty six thousand Ducats. He appointed *Gerbakhon Noyn* his *Wazir* or *Vizier*, a Martial Man and of great Wisdom, whom he immediately sent against *Gelaladin*, who we said was withdrawn to *Multan*, and coming out to oppose him, was routed and slain, the Family of *Koarrazm Scha* expiring in him. Then he bent his Force against *Persia*, and reduc'd it all under his Dominion, except *Bagdat*; and having reign'd Thirteen Years, died in the Year of the *Hegira* 639, of CHRIST 1242, of excessive drinking of Wine, leaving a very young Son, call'd *Gayuk Kan*, for which Reason his Mother held the Government Four Years, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 643, of CHRIST 1246, he took it into his own Hands.

Dies. *Ann.* 1242.

He

He approv'd himself a good Prince, being a Lover of Justice, Generous, and no Enemy to Christians, whom he very much favour'd; but was snatch'd away by Death, when he had Reign'd one Year only. *His Son* Gayuk Kan *Emperor.*

His Successor was *Manchu Kan*, his Cousin-German, Son to *Tuly Kan*, and Grandson to *Chinguis Kan*, a good Prince, brave, generous and affable. He favour'd the *Mahometans* very much, and was not unkind to the Christians, but hated the *Jews*, and persecuted them. To his Brother *Kahlay Kan* he gave the Lands of *Ketao Kan*, who much enlarg'd his Dominions. This Man founded the great City of *Kanbulek*, now the Great *Tartar*'s Court. To another Brother, call'd *Ulahku Kan*, he gave the Dominions of *Persia*. *Manchu Kan* died when he had Reign'd Thirteen Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 657, of CHRIST 1260. Manchu Kan *Emperor.* *Ann.* 1260.

Ulahku Kan succeeded his Brother, came into *Persia*, as has been said, in the Year of the *Hegira* 657, of CHRIST 1256; and to keep himself in Action, attack'd *Ismaelya*, a City of Consequence, which he took, and spar'd not the Life of any Soul within it. Next he march'd into *Hyerak*, and subdu'd it. The next Year he march'd his Army to *Bagdat*, the *Calif Almostacem* venturing a Battle with him, was Overthrown and Slain, as were his four Sons; the same Fate attended all that were found in *Bagdat*, and the Country about it, which many say amounted to a Million and six hundred thousand Souls. In the Year of the *Hegira* 658, of CHRIST 1261, he proceeded to *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, both which he took, and leaving one *Kaptu Kan* Governor in those Parts of *Syria*, return'd himself to *Persia*, and died at *Meragah*, near *Tauris*, in the Ulahku Kan *Emperor.* *Ann.* 1261.

Province of *Aderbaion*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 663, of CHRIST 1266, being the Sixth of his Reign. Before his Death, he divided his Dominions between the three Sons he had; to *Haybkay Kan*, the Eldest, he gave the Kingdoms of *Hyerak*, *Mazandaion*, and *Karason*; to the Second, call'd *Hyaxemet*, *Aron*, that is, *Armenia*, and *Aderbacon*; to *Tandon*, the Third, he left *Diarbek* and *Rabyah*, which is *Mesapotamia*. Besides all this, he gave to *Atulmok Jaryng*, one of his *Wazirs*, or Viziers, the City of *Bagdat*, to rebuild it, as he did; and to another, call'd *Mahynedin Paroaney*, some Lands in *Rumestan*. At this Time flourished in *Persia*, *Coaja Naciradin Tuffy*, a famous Astrologer, who writ a Book, Intituled, *Zich el Kong*, Of Judgments, and Figures, much celebrated among the *Persians*. Besides the Three Sons above-mention'd, *Ulahku Kan* had two others; the one call'd *Nicudar Oglan*, the other *Targahe Kan*, and tho' assign'd no Share in their Father's Dividend, yet one of them obtain'd one himself, and so did the Children of the other.

Haybkay Kan, *King of* Persia.

Haybkay Kan, Eldest Son to *Ulahku Kan*, succeeded him in the Sovereignty of *Persia*, and had War with *Bora Kan*, who march'd with an Army against him from *Chagatay*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 668, of CHRIST 1217. *Haybkay Kan*, ingag'd, defeated, and drove him back to *Maurenahar*. He Reign'd Seventeen Years, and then died at *Amadon*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 680, of CHRIST 1282.

Ann. 1282.

Hamed Kan *King*.

His Brother *Hamed Kan*, before call'd *Nicudar Oglan*, which imports, *Nicudar* the good Son, ascended the Throne next, turn'd *Mahometan*, and then chang'd his Name. He Reign'd

Reign'd but two Years and two Months, and died without performing any Thing remarkable, in the Year of the *Hegira* 687, of CHRIST 1285, when the Crown return'd to the Sons of *Habkay Kan*; the Eldest whereof,

Argon Kan, succeeded his Uncle, Reign'd Seven Years, and died in that of the *Hegira* 690, of CHRIST 1292. Argon Kan.

Five Months after the Death of *Argon Kan*, his Brother *Ganiatu Kan* was admitted to the Government. He was generous, and had other good Qualities, but sully'd them all by being extraordinary Lewd and Incestuous. He would have brought Paper-Money into *Persia*, as was us'd in the Provinces of *Ketao Kotan*, but it would not be admitted; and the chief Opposer of it was one *Badu Kan*, his own Uncle, who on this Pretence made War, and slew him in a Battle, when he had been King three Years, in that of the *Hegira* 693, of CHRIST 1295. Ganiatu Kan.

Badu Kan, the Son of *Turgahe*, the Son of *Ulahku Kan*, and Uncle to the King that was slain, as above, succeeded him in the Throne, and having ascended it by Force, was oppos'd by *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon Kan*, who march'd against him out of *Karason*, with a numerous Army, himself and they being all become *Mahometans*: They met at *Nakxoan*, where *Badu Kan* was defeated and fled, but discover'd, and taken, by a *Wazir*, or Vizier of *Gazun*, who convey'd him to *Tauris*, where he was put to Death, having Reign'd but one Year. Badu Kan.

Gazun, the Son of *Argon*, the Son of *Habkay Kan*, the Son of *Ulahku Kan*, made himself King of *Persia*, upon the Death of *Baydu*, and was a great Lover of Justice. In the Year of the *Hegira* 696, of CHRIST 1298, *Damascus*, Gazun Kan.

mascus, and some other Parts of *Syria*, revolted from him, joyning with *Bendokar* King of *Egypt*, against whom he march'd his Army; and having overthrown him, and reduc'd those Provinces to his Obedience, return'd to *Persia*, and died at *Casbin*, since the Court of those Kings, in the Year of the *Hegira* 703, of *Ann.* 1305. CHRIST 1305, when he had Reign'd Eight Years and Nine Months. His Body was buried at *Tauris*, in *Zambgazun*, a magnificent Mosque he had built in his Life-time. This is the only Monument of the Princes of this Race that is preserv'd entire to this Day.

Alyaptu King. *Alyaptu*, who afterwards, turning *Mahometan*, took the Name of *Sultan Mahamed Ben Argon*, upon the Death of his Brother *Gazun*, took upon him the Government of *Persia*, at Twenty three Years of Age. He settled his Residence at *Tauris*, was extraordinary severe in the Execution of Justice, by which Means he kept his People in Subjection, and easie. This Man first brought up the Custom of taking away the Children of Christians and *Jews*, to breed them up after his Manner, and be serv'd by them. In the Year of the *Hegira* 705, of CHRIST 1306, he founded the City *Sultania*; and the following Year possess'd himself of *Gueybon* and *Raxt*; in 712, which is 1313, he march'd to *Scham*, or *Damascus*, which had revolted again; and having recover'd it, return'd to *Persia*, and died at *Sultania* in the Year of the *Hegira* 716, of CHRIST 1317, having Reign'd Twelve Years and Nine Months.

Sultania *City built.* *Ann.* 1306.

Sultan Abusayd. *Sultan Abusayd Babeder Kan*, the Son of *Alyapsu*, inherited his Father's Kingdom at Twelve Years of Age. He chose for his *Wazir* or Vizier, one *Amir Chupon*, who had an

extra

extraordinary beautiful marry'd Daughter, with whom the King fell in Love upon Sight; demanded her of the Father, who excus'd himself, alledging she was Marry'd, and in her Husband's Power. *Abusayd* enrag'd by his violent Passion of Love, took her by Force, killing the Father, the Husband, and all those he thought would oppose him, and gave her the Title of *Kandekar*, which was the Royal Style, doating on her so violently, as to resign all the Government into her Hands, which she manag'd with much Wisdom and Discretion, whilst he, indulging his Ease, diverted himself in Reading, being very Bookish. His Person was graceful, and his Judgment sound, and he generally spent the Summers in *Sultania*, and the Winters in *Bagdat*. He reign'd Nineteen Years, and died in the Year of the *Hegira* 736, of CHRIST 1337. By his Death the Power of the *Tartars* in *Persia* was divided, every Governor taking upon him the Title of King; and so it continu'd till the coming of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, who subdu'd all, as we shall now declare.

Tyrannical Act.

Teymur Langh, which signifies *Teymur* the Lame, because he was so, as was said in our First Book, and whom we commonly call *Tamerlan*, was the Son of *Bujan Kan*, and Thirteenth Successor of *Chinguis Kan*, from whom he was Descended, and no Robber, nor Carrier, nor Herdsman, as has been already observ'd, but a Martial Man, and Brave as appears by his Actions. He was born at *Samarkand*, and addicted himself to Arms, as his Forefathers had done. His Fifth Grandfather, *Charachar Nuyon*, came out of *Tartary* with *Chinguis Kan*; and when he sent his second Son *Chagatay Kan* to govern the Kingdoms of

Tamerlan.

Mau-

Maurenahar, *Augor*, and *Koarrazm*. *Chagatay Kan* took along with him his near Kinsman *Carachar*, whom he appointed his Prime *Wazir*, or Vizier, and he and his Posterity remain'd in his Service, in Posts suitable to their Quality, till the Days of *Teymur*. *Soyorgat Mex Kan* and *Teymur Langh* were Contemporaries, the former being King of *Chagatay*, and *Teymur* his *Wazir*, or Vizier, or Generalissimo. *Soyorgat Mex Kan* died in the Year of the *Hegira* 771, of CHRIST 1370, and upon his Death, by the unanimous Consent of all the People, *Teymur Langh* was proclaim'd King. When well settled on the Throne, he march'd out of his Kingdom with an innumerable Army, and never undertook any Thing but what prov'd Successful. In the Space of Thirty six Years, which was the length of his Reign, he added to the Kingdoms he had Inherited, those of *Maurenahar*, *Turkestan*, *Koarrazm*, *Karason*, *Siston*, *Indostan*, *Hyerak*, *Parz*, *Kermon*, *Mazandaron*, *Aderbaion*, and *Kusistam*, all which, besides others, at his Death, were divided among his Sons and Commanders. It was in the Year of the *Hegira* 789, of CHRIST
Ann. 1388. 1388, on account of a Rebellion rais'd against him in *Ispahan*, the Capital of *Hyerak* in *Persia*, march'd thither, and having taken it by Force, put 70000 Men, Women and Children, to the Sword. *Tocktamex Kan*, who had been by him made King of *Kapechak*, rebelling, he sent part of his Army thither, which utterly destroy'd the Country, and *Toktamex Kan* fled to *Gurgestam*. In the Year of the *Hegira*
Ann. 1402. 803, of CHRIST 1402, he enter'd *Syria*, took and destroy'd *Aleppo* and *Damascus*; routed *Sultan Farache*, King of *Egypt*; turn'd back again to *Bagdat*, and took it, and thence proceeded

ceeded to *Kabka*, near *Tauris*, where he winter'd. The next Year he march'd towards *Angora*, to meet *Sultan Bajazet*, the Great *Turk*, whom he vanquish'd and took, subduing and wasting a great Part of his Dominions; and *Bajazet* being carried about a Prisoner in his Army, died the ensuing Year. Whilst *Teymur* was marching against *Bajazet*, one *Kara Iſſuf* assaulted *Bagdat*, and drove out *Sultan Weyſhelkong*, whom *Teymur* had appointed Governor there. He returning from *Rumestan*, sent his Grandson *Abubakar* against *Kara Iſſuf*, who recovering the City, put it again into the Hands of *Sultan Weys*, as shall be observ'd hereafter. *Teymur*, after this, went away to *Ardivil*, where he staid some Time, and gave *Xeque Safy* a great Number of Captives, whereof more in its Place. Then leaving *Persia* he march'd towards *Karason*, and thence to *Samarkand*, his Native Country, where he spent some Months in Festivals and Rejoycing, celebrating the Nuptials of many of his People. Lastly, He march'd to *Amzar*, a Country beyond *Cathay*, where he died, in the Year of the *Hegira* 807, of CHRIST 1405. *Teymur Langh*, of whose Name I gave some Account in the first Book, had four Sons; the eldest call'd *Joon Guyr*, who died a Year before his Father, leaving two Sons, *Mahamed Sultan* and *Pyr Mahamed*. This last *Teymur* appointed his Successor in the Kingdoms of *Gaznehen* and *India*, and he was afterwards kill'd by *Pir Aly*. *Teymur*'s second Son, call'd *Hamar Xeque*, being Governor of *Persia*, whilst his Father was still living, was kill'd in the Fortress of *Cormatu*, now call'd *Kormanat* in *Loreſtam*. *Mirun Xa*, the third, who succeeded in the Government of those Provinces, we said above *Ulahku*

Takes Bajazet.

His Death. Ann. 1405.

His Issue.

Kan

Kan was possess'd of in *Hierak*, *Aderbaion*, and onward, as far as *Damascus*, was kill'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 810, of CHRIST 1408, in *Aderbaion*, by *Kara Iffuf*, the *Turkoman*. *Mirzah Scharok*, *Teymur*'s fourth Son, who had always kept his Father Company, succeeded him in the Empire.

Mirzah Scharok *succeeds him.*

Mirzah Scharok, the fourth and youngest Son of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, was in *Karason* when his Father died at *Anzar*, and succeeded him in the Throne, tho' he had enough to do to reduce those who were not for owning him in *Hyron* and *Turon*. When those Troubles were over, he march'd his Army against *Kara Iffuf*, in *Aderbaion*, who advanc'd to meet him, but died in the way. He left two Sons, *Mirzah Scandar* and *Mirza Joonxa*, who oppos'd *Scharok* instead of their Father, but he defeated them, and afterwards took *Mirzah Joonxa* into his Service, and restor'd him the Kingdom of *Aderbaion*. *Scharok* built a City in *Maurenahar*, which from his own Name he call'd *Scharokya*; and in the Year of the *Hegira* 850, of CHRIST 1447, died in the City *Rey*, when he had Reign'd Forty three Years. He had Five Sons; to *Mirzah Ologh Beg* he gave the Lands of *Turkestam* and *Maurenahar*; *Ebrahim Sultan*, the Second, died before his Father, when he had govern'd *Persia* Twenty Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 838, of CHRIST 1435, leaving several noble Fabricks and Structures erected during his Government; a Year before him died the Third, call'd *Baesfangor*; the Fourth, was call'd *Mirzah Soyorgat Mexkkon*, who died before his Father, being Governor of *Gazna*, or *Gaznehen*, and *India*; the Fifth, *Mirzah Mahamed Juguy*, died also before his Father.

Dies. Ann. 1447.

His Issue.

The

The People of *Samarkand* had, when *Tamerlan* died, proclaim'd King one *Sultan Kalil*, a Kinsman of his. Against him, a Subject of his, whose Name was *Kadahdad Hosceny*, took the Field, made him Prisoner, and calling in *Xama Joon*, King of *Mogolstam*, or *Tartary*, deliver'd him into his Hands, with his Dominions. The *Tartars* being in Possession, put to Death *Kodahdad Hosceny*, a just Reward of his Treason, and gave *Kalil* another Kingdom in lieu of his own, where he liv'd contentedly. *A Traytor well Rewarded.*

Ologh Beg, who whilst his Father *Mir Scharrok* was living, govern'd the Provinces of *Turkestam* and *Maurenahar*, as soon as he heard of his Death, in the Year of the *Hegira* 851, of CHRIST 1448, he went away to *Balk*; and being there inform'd that *Mirzah Alahdaolet*, his Kinsman, took upon him the Title of King, in the City *Herat*, in *Korason*, he mov'd towards and met him at *Morgab*. They came to a Battle, and *Alahdaolet* being routed, fled to his Brother *Mirzah Babor*; with him he turn'd again upon *Ologh Beg*, who abandon'd *Herat* to them; and retiring to *Balk*, found that his Son *Mirzah Abdelatife*, whom he had left there, had Rebell'd. They ingag'd, and *Ologh Beg* lost the Battle and his Life, as did another of his Sons, call'd *Mirzah Abd-Razis*. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 853, of CHRIST 1450, when *Ologh* had Rul'd there Forty one Years, but only Two since he succeeded his Father. Ologh Beg *succeeds.*

Mirzah Abdelatife, having kill'd his Father and Brother, remain'd King, but enjoy'd it not long; for Six Months after, his own Soldiers shot him to Death with their Arrows. Abdelatife *Reigns Six Months.*

His

Abdula, a Year.

His Brother *Mirzah Abdula* succeeded him; and when he had Reign'd one Year, *Mirzah Sultan Abusayd* invaded his Dominions, defeated and kill'd him, and so possess'd himself of the Throne, in the Year of the *Hegira* 855,

Ann. 1542. of CHRIST 1452.

Abusayd succeeds.

Mirzah Sultan Abusayd, the Son of *Mahamed*, the Son of *Mirom Scha*, the Son of *Tamerlan* being King, new Wars broke out between *Mirzah Ebrahem* and *Mirzah Scha Mahamud*, of which more hereafter. *Mirzah Joon Scha* attack'd them both, they fled, and he took Possession of their Dominions. *Abusayd* march'd against him, but they agreed, without Fighting, dividing the Governments. No sooner was this Matter adjusted, than *Mirzah Saniar*, with *Mirzah Aladaolet* and his Son *Mirzah Ebrahem*, all of them private Princes, fell upon *Abusayd* at *Saraks*, who defeated them, killing *Saniar*, and putting the others to Flight. *Abusayd* was possess'd of the Kingdoms of *Badaxon*, *Gaznehen*, *Kabul*, *Sistom*, and *Koarrazm*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 872, of CHRIST 1468, *Mirzah Acembek Ben Alybek Ben Kara Otman* kill'd *Mirza Joon Scha*, upon whose Death *Abusayd* was call'd in, to take upon him the Government of *Kermon*, *Hyerak*, and *Aderbaion*. *Acembek* was jealous of him, and sent an Embassador to treat of Peace, which *Abusayd* rejected; and thereupon *Acembek* expected him at *Karabag*, being a mountainous Place near *Tauriz*, whither he was marching, and when *Abusayd* was within it, secur'd all the Passes, by that Means so distressing him for want of Provisions, that he fled himself, leaving all his Army behind him; but was taken and deliver'd up to *Mirzah Yadigar Mahamed*, who had joyn'd *Acembek*, and

and he put him to Death in the Year of the *Hegira* 837, of CHRIST 1469. *Is kill'd. Ann.* 1469.

His Son *Mirzah Sultan Hamed* succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Maurenahar*, and held it Twenty six Years, at the End whereof he died, in the Year of the *Hegira* 899, of CHRIST 1495. Hamed *King.* *His Death.* *Ann.* 1495.

Mirzah Babor, Nephew to *Hamed*, and Grandson to *Abusayd*, upon his Uncle's Death, inherited the Kingdom of *Maurenahar*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 904, *Kaybek Kan* came against him out of *Uzbek*, and drove him out of his Kingdom, where no other of the Race of *Tamerlan* Reign'd afterwards. But *Mirzah Babor* being expell'd *Maurenahar*, retir'd to *Gazneben*, and thence into *India*, where he settled; and having Reign'd Thirty eight Years in both Places, died in the Year of the *Hegira* 937, of CHRIST 1532. He left two Sons, *Homayon Mirzah*, and *Kamoran Mirzah*, who both Reign'd after their Father. *Homayon Mirzah* possess'd the largest and most wealthy Kingdoms of *India*. He had a *Wazir* or Vizier call'd *Schyr Kan*, who rebell'd, rais'd War, and oblig'd him to abandon his Dominions, and fly into *Persia*, where *Scha Thamas* then Reign'd, who furnish'd him with 12000 chosen Men, under the Command of a Prime Commander, call'd *Beyram Kan*, who taking *Homayon* along with him, restor'd him to his Kingdoms, reducing them all to their Duty, killing the Rebel *Schyr Kan*. This *Homayon* was Father to *Gelaladin Akbar*, mention'd in our first Book, from whom the present *Mogol* is descended. Babor *expell'd* Maurenahar. *Dies. Ann.* 1532.

Mirzah Hyadigar, the Son of *Mirzah Sultan Mahamed*, the Son of *Mirzah Baesfangor* or *Bayfangor*, the Son of *Mirzah Xarrok*, the Son of *Wars between* Hyadigar *and* Ocem.

of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, having, as was said above, in the Year of the *Hegira* 873, of CHRIST 1469, slain *Abusayd*, when he was joyn'd with *Acembek*, was by him furnish'd with an Army, with the which he march'd to *Strabat*. *Ocem Mirzah*, the Son of *Mansur*, the Son of *Bahekara*, the Son of *Hamar Scheque*, the Son of *Teymur*, was then King of *Karason*, who being inform'd of *Hyadigar*'s Design, advanc'd with Speed to relieve *Strabat*, and ingaging *Hyadigar*, routed him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 874, of CHRIST 1470. After this Defeat he fled to *Acembek*, who was then at *Tauriz*, and furnish'd him again with a better Army than the former, and with it he march'd back, to seek out *Ocem Mirzah*, whom he overthrew, and compell'd to quit the Kingdom, flying toward *Fariab* and *Mayman*, on the Side of *Balk*. *Hyadigar* being possess'd of the Government, so entirely indulg'd his Ease, Pleasure, and Sensuality, that *Ocem* being attended by no more than a Thousand choice Men, assaulted him by Night, took and put him to Death, reseating himself on the Throne, in the Year of the *Hegira* 875, of CHRIST 1471. In *Hyadigar* ended the Race of *Myr Scherrok*.

Ann. 1471.

Ocem, *a good King.*

Mirzah Sultan Ocem, the Son of *Mansur*, the Son of *Babe Kara*, the Son of *Hamar Scheque*, the Son of *Teymur*, or *Tamerlan*, who recover'd the Kingdom *Hyadigar* had depriv'd him of, prov'd a good King, a Lover of Peace, and Justice, and affectionate towards his People. He adorn'd his Dominions with magnificent Structures, one of the chief whereof was a famous *Madrasa*, or Hospital, for entertaining of the Poor and Pilgrims, a Work becoming so great a Prince. In his Days the

the *Usbeks* invaded *Maurenahar*, and possess'd themselves of those Lands, taking them from the Progeny of *Tamerlan*, who had held them till that Time. *Ocem* design'd to have oppos'd them, advanc'd towards them, and died by the way at *Wadekis*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 911, of CHRIST 1506, when he had Reign'd Thirty eight Years and four Months over all *Karason*, and at the Age of Seventy, Twenty whereof he had been sick of a Palsie, and not able to Ride. He had Fourteen Sons, Ten of whom succeeded him together. *His Death. Ann.* 1506.

Bahady, or *Pedy Amazon*, and *Muzafar Mirzah*, Brothers, and Sons to the late *Ocem*, Reign'd both together at *Herat*, after their Father's Death, were invaded by *Schaybeck*, the *Usbek*; and they finding themselves too weak to oppose him, fled, and left him the Country. *Bahady Azamon* went away to *Kandar*, and thence to *Truxys*, whence he return'd with what Forces he could gather, against the *Usbek*, but was overthrown, and fled into *Persia* to *Scha Ismael*, who then Reign'd there, and gave him a favourable Reception, with the Lands of *Zambe Gazon*, about *Tauriz*, for his Support, besides Ten *Xorafines* in Gold every Day for his Table. The Gold *Schorafy* of *Persia* is worth Eight *Larines*, and every *Larine* about Two Royals Plate, little over or under. *Bahady* continu'd at *Tauriz* Seven Years, till that of the *Hegira* 920, of CHRIST 1515, when *Sultan Selim*, the Great *Turk*, taking that City, carried him away to *Constantinople*, where he died, in the Year of the *Hegira* 923, which was of CHRIST 1518. Bahady *expell'd his Kingdom.* *Ann.* 1515.

Mirom Scha, the Third Son of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, had two Sons, *Mirzah Homar* who succeeded him in the Government of

Aderbaion, and *Abubaka* in that of *Bagdat*. *Teymur* dying, *Homar* took upon him the Title of King, and possessing himself of his Brother's Lands, confin'd him at *Sultania*; but he corrupting some of his Guards, and killing others that would have stopp'd him, broke Prison, and ranging about *Persia*, gather'd a considerable Number of Men, with whom he march'd against his Brother; and *Homar* being defeated, fled towards *Karason*, to his Uncle *Mirzah Scharok*, who gave him *Strabut* and *Mazandaron* to live on; but he being of a restless Temper, made War on his Benefactor *Scharok*, by whom he was also overthrown; and flying through *Samarkand* towards *Morgab*, was kill'd by the way, in the Year of the *Hegira* 809, of CHRIST 1406.

Ann. 1406.

Tamarlan's *Race in* Persia *Extinct.*

Mirzah Abubakar, Brother to *Homar*, Son to *Mirom Scha*, and Grandson to *Teymur*, by his Brother's Death, remain'd peaceable in *Tauriz*, and was a very brave Commander, but unfortunate; for being invaded by *Kara Iſſuf*, the *Turk*, who fled from *Mezere*, or *Cairo* in *Egypt*, he was twice defeated by him, near the River *Euphrates*, and his Father kill'd the first Time. *Abubakar* thus routed, in the Year of the *Hegira* 810, of CHRIST 1407, went away to *Kermon*, and then to *Siston*, and returning thence the next Year with a considerable Army, he was kill'd by the way. In him ended the Successors of *Chinguis Kan*, and *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, the *Tartars*, who govern'd *Persia*, which we will now again speak of more particularly.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Turkish *Family of* Kara Kuyonlu, *that is, the Hord or Tribe of the* Black Sheep, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia.

WHEN *Sultan Weys Helcony* was Governor of *Bagdat*, *Kara Mahamed*, the *Turk*, was employ'd in his Service, and for his great Merit by him appointed Chief or Commander of his Hord or Tribe of *Kara Kuyonlu*, that is, of the *Black Sheep*, which it is likely was their Ensign or distinctive Mark, and they themselves were call'd Black, for that is the meaning of *Kara*, by way of difference from the others, whose Ensign or Emblem was a white Sheep, as shall be observ'd hereafter. It is to be observ'd, that much about the same Time, that the Factions of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*, or the Black and White, divided *Italy*, those same Names, and the Consequences of them, were predominant in *Persia*. *Kara Mahamed* being, as was said, constituted Chief of his Hord, or Tribe, and having so continu'd as long as he liv'd, that Post at his Death devolv'd to his Son *Kara Issuf*, who in Requital for the Favour bestow'd on his Father and himself, assaulted *Bagdat*, and took it from *Sultan Weys*, on whom *Tamerlan* had bestow'd it, he being then gone into the Country of *Rumestan* against *Bajazet*; but at his Return, being inform'd of the Treachery of *Kara Issuf*, he sent his Grandson *Abubakar* against *Kara Issuf*, who recover'd and restor'd it to *Sultan Weys Helcony*; yet he enjoy'd it not long, being

Kara Mahamed *Chief of the* Turks *of the* Black Sheep.

Kara Issuf *succeeds him.*

ing expell'd again by *Mirom Scha*, who gave it to the same *Abubakar*, his Son.

Kara Issuf was fled for Safety into *Egypt*, where the King secur'd him, and he continu'd confin'd till News was brought that *Tamerlan* was dead. Upon this News *Kara Issuf* found means to Escape, and making towards *Persia*, gather'd an Army, with which he durst attack *Abubakar*. *Helcony*, who being dispossess'd of *Bagdat*, hover'd about at hand, waiting for some Opportunity to recover it, would not let this slip, but whilst *Abubakar* was marching towards *Kara Issuf*, drew near to *Bagdat*, and took it. At the same time, *Kara Issuf* and *Abubakar* met at *Nakxoan*, where *Issuf* got the Day, and the City *Tauriz*, which having well provided with all Necessaries for its Defence, he mov'd against *Kara Osman Bayandury*, then possess'd of the Country of *Diarbek*, which he abandon'd and fled. *Issuf* plac'd Garrisons there, and return'd to *Tauriz*, whence he march'd his Army against *Helcony*, whom he slew in Battle, and took the City. After this, in the Year of the *Hegira* 815, of CHRIST 1413, he went to *Schirvan*, and entring the Country of *Gurgestam*, slew *Constantin*, the King of that Nation, in Battle, and brought away *Scheque Ebrahem*, King of *Xirvan*, Prisoner to *Tauriz*, who afterwards ransom'd himself for a great Sum of Money. *Kara Issuf* also took *Sultania*, *Casbin*, and *Taron*, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 821, of CHRIST *Ann.* 1420. 1420, march'd to *Anteb*, a City in *Syria*, near *Aleppo*; but *Mirzah Scharrok* coming against him from *Karason*, he desisted from that Enterprize, and went to meet him. Before they *His Death.* could meet, *Kara Issuf* died at *Ojon* near *Tauriz*; and having no Son nor Kinsman with him, nor

nor so much as a true Friend, for Tyrants never have any, the Soldiers after plundering his Tent, left him unburied, stripp'd to his Shirt, and his Ears cut off, to take the Jewels he wore in them. Thus he lay in the Field for several Days, till being afterwards found by some that knew him, they in Compassion carry'd and interr'd him at *Ergis*. He enjoy'd the Title of King Fourteen Years, and died in that of the *Hegira* 823, of CHRIST 1421. He had Six Sons, the Eldest of them *Pyr Budad Kan* died before his Father; the Second was *Amir Scander*; the Third *Mirzah Joon Scha*; the Fourth *Scha Mahamed*. This last had the Government of *Persia* Twenty three Years, and in that of the *Hegira* 833, of CHRIST 1431, was kill'd by *Hamed Hamadony*; the Fifth Son was *Amir Apsal*, who died also before his Father; the Sixth was *Abusayd*, kill'd by his Brother *Amir Scandar*, of whom we shall speak next.

Amir Scander succeeds Issuf. *Ann.* 1422.

Amir Scandar, Second Son to *Kara Issuf*, succeeded his Father, in the Year of the *Hegira* 824, of CHRIST 1422, and continu'd the War against *Mirzah Scharrok*, by whom he was overthrown in *Mesopotamia*. He retir'd towards the River *Euphrates*, and *Scharrok* return'd to *Tauriz*, where they would not admit him, both for Love and Fear of *Scandar*; and therefore thinking his Stay would be to little Purpose, he went to *Karason*, and *Scandar* to *Tauriz*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 824, of CHRIST 1426, he Depos'd and put to Death *Amir Schamzadin* King of *Kalat*, and in 830, or 1428, he did the same by *Sultan Hamed Curd*, Governor of the Province of *Curdestam*. Two Years after he took *Sultania*, turning out *Mirzah Scharrock*'s Garrison, who being in-

form'd of it, march'd again to *Tauriz*. *Scandar* and his Brother *Joon Scha* went out to meet him, and found him at *Salmas* not far from *Tauriz*, where they ingag'd: *Scandar* was routed, and retir'd in that Condition into the Provinces of *Rumestan*. Yet could not *Scharrok* this Time neither make himself Master of *Tauriz*, but returning to *Karason*, and recruiting his Army, march'd to the City *Rey* and took it. There *Joon Scha*, Brother to *Scandar* attended, and was reconcil'd to him, and *Scharrok* gave him the City of *Tauriz*. Upon this Consideration, *Joon Scha* arm'd against his Brother *Scandar*, and obtain'd a Victory over him. *Scandar* withdrew into *Kala Aleniak*, where *Joon Scha* besieg'd him; and during the Siege, *Schakobad*, a Son of *Scandar*'s, tir'd with his Father's ill Fortune, murder'd him. This happened in the Year of the *Hegira* 841, of CHRIST 1438, and of his Reign the Sixteenth. He had during his Life kill'd his Brother *Abusayd* upon some Suspicion conceiv'd.

His Death. *Ann.* 1438.

After the Death of *Scandar*, his Brother *Joon Scha* possess'd himself of all that had been his, and when well establish'd on the Throne, march'd against the King of *Gurgestam*, and took him; then moving about to several Parts of *Persia*, reduc'd them all under his Obedience, expelling from some of them the Garrisons plac'd in them by *Mirzah Mamud*, the Son of *Baysangor*, who was dead; all which he perform'd in the Years of the *Hegira* 856 and 857, of CHRIST 1453 and 1454, when he also subdu'd *Kermon*. In 861, which is 1458, he march'd towards *Karason*, and the next Year made War on *Mirzah Ebrahem*, the Son of *Aladaolet*, whom he defeated. In this Battle

Joon Scha *succeeds him.*

Battle *Amir Zadaka Zagatay* was kill'd. *Sultan Abusayd* then reigning at *Balk*, mov'd against *Joon Scha*, who made up Matters peaceably with him, because he had receiv'd Advice, that one of his Sons had rebell'd in *Tauriz*, whither he return'd, and seizing that rebellious Son, closely confin'd him. No sooner was this Insurrection quell'd, but *Pyr Budak*, another of his Sons, who was Governor of *Bagdat*, revolted. *Joon Scha* march'd thither; and after having held him a Year besieg'd, some well-minded Persons interposing, they agreed. When all Things were adjusted, *Mahamedy*, Brother to the Rebel, murder'd him, without the Father's Knowledge. *Joon Scha* return'd to *Tauriz*, which he was Sovereign of; as also all *Aderbaion*, *Hyerak*, *Persia*, *Kermon*, and a great Part of *Syria*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 872, of CHRIST 1468, he *Ann.* 1468. march'd his Army against *Ozun Azembek*, Governor of *Diarbek*, but was forc'd home again by the Severity of the Winter, and took the Field again the next Summer. *Joon Scha*, either to Sleep the sounder, and lay aside all Care, or because he delighted in it, was wont to make himself drunk every Night, and then Sleep till far in the Day. This being his constant Custom, the Army march'd, and he follow'd afterwards, attended by about 1000 Horse of his Guard. *Ozun Azembek* had Intelligence of it, and taking along with him 5000 chosen Men, lay in wait for and attack'd him so seasonably, and in so proper a Place, that before any Relief could come, he was kill'd, and two of his Sons taken. *Mahamed Mirzah*, the Eldest, was immediately put to Death, and *Issuf Mirzah* had his Eyes put out. *Joon Scha* reign'd Thirty two Years, liv'd

His Death.

liv'd Seventy, and was the wickedest and lewdest of all the Princes in those Parts, at that Time.

Acem Aly *last of the Race.*

Acem Aly, Son to *Joon Scha*, inherited his Father's Kingdom, and all his Treasures, which being very great, and he not over Wise, he rais'd 200000 Horse and Foot, and gave them a Year's Pay before-hand; most of whom having receiv'd it went over to *Sultan Abusayd*, King of *Karason*, who was then marching against him. He flying from this Enemy, fell upon *Ozun Azembek*, who defeated and kill'd him; and in him ended the Sovereignty of the Family or Hord of *Kara Kuyonlu*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 873, of CHRIST 1469.

Ann. 1469.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the Turkish *Family, or Hord of* Akuyonlu, *which is, the Tribe of the* White Sheep, *by another Name, call'd* Bayonduryah, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia.

THE *Bayonduris*, or *Turks* of Hord *Bayonduriah*, took the Name of *Akuyonlu*, that is, the Hord or Tribe of the White Sheep, in Opposition to those of the Black Sheep, spoken of above in the last Chapter; and the White prevailing against the Black, made themselves Masters of *Persia*, their Dominion beginning in *Ozun Azembek*, as follows.

Ozun

Ozun Azembek, the Son of *Alybek*, the Son of *Osmonbek*, the Son of *Cotolukbek*, was a *Turkyman*, and so expert and fortunate in War, that he subdu'd the best Part of *Persia*. This is he whom we generally call *Usun Cassan*. (*What is here commonly writ* Bek, *is otherwise* Bey, *or* Beg, *and signifies Lord, being the Addition to the Proper Name.*) It has been already mention'd, that *Osmon*, or *Otmonbek*, Grandfather to *Ozun Azembek*, was possess'd of the Country of *Diarbek*, and expell'd it by *Kara Issuf*, upon whose Death, *Persia*, in a second Descent, falling under his Son *Joon Scha*, *Ozun Azembek*, who had succeeded his Grandfather, after recovering his own Lands, slew him at an Attack, and then possessing himself of *Tauriz* and *Aderbaion*, kill'd *Mirzah Sultan Abusayd*, who had march'd against him out of *Karason*. When *Joon Scha* was kill'd, as was said above, he had two Sons with him, one whereof was slain with his Father, the other call'd *Mirzah Issuf* remain'd alive, but had his Eyes put out, and in that Condition retir'd to *Xyraz*, where he continu'd as Sovereign. *Ozun Azembek* march'd against him, and entring the City by Force, kill'd blind *Issuf*. Thence he proceeded to *Kermon*, which he also made himself Master of, as he afterwards did of *Bagdat*; and when he had subdu'd *Hyerak*, *Aderbaion*, *Pars*, and other Provinces in *Persia*, *Sultan Mahamed*, King of the *Rumes*, or Great *Turk*, made War on him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 876, of CHRIST 1472, overthrew him at *Arzenion*, killing his Son, *Zeinel Bek*, who was Governor of *Casbin*, since the Court of *Persia*. *Azembek*, after his Defeat, fled to *Tauriz*, and the *Turks* return'd to *Constantinople*. *Azembek* having reign'd Eleven Years, died in

Ozun Azembek, *or* Usun Cassan.

His Death. Ann. 1478.

in that of the *Hegira* 882, of CHRIST 1478; as did *Ogorlu Mahamed*, the Eldest of Seven Sons he had, the Second of which was *Sultan Kalil*, the Third *Yamb Mirzah*, the Fourth *Maciah Mirzah*, the Fifth *Iſſuf Mirzah*, the Sixth *Makſudbek*, who slew his Brother *Sultan Kalil*, and the Seventh *Zeynelbek*, who was kill'd in the War with the *Turks*.

Sultan Kalil *succeeds.*

Sultan Kalil, or *Hhalil*, ascended the Throne upon his Father's Death, and immediately sent his Brother *Yamb Bek* to govern the Country of *Diarbek*. One *Moradbek* rais'd War against *Kakil*, who routed and made him fly to the Fortress of *Feruzkuk*, where one *Ozembek Gelony* was Commander, who having admitted *Moradbek*, sent him Prisoner to *Kalil*, and he order'd him to be put to Death in *Karaſon*, where he then was. In the mean while, *Yambbek*, then Governor of *Diarbek*, revolted, and march'd his Army to *Tauriz*, attended by his Brother *Makſudbek*. *Kalil* hasted thither, they

Is kill'd.

fought, and he was routed and kill'd by his Brother *Makſudbek*, when he had Reign'd but Six Months.

Yamb Bek *succeeds.*

Yamb Bek, the Son of *Ozun Azembek*, having slain his Brother, possess'd himself of the Crown. A Commander of his, call'd *Buyandurbek*, rebell'd against him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 886, of CHRIST 1482, but was by him defeated and kill'd, at *Savah* near *Kom*. This same Year *Sultan Mahamed*, the Son of *Sultan Murad*, died at *Conſtantinople*, and was succeeded in the Empire by his Son Sultan *Bajazeth*. At this Time, *Sultan Aydar* from *Ardavel* made War on the Country of *Gurgeſtam*, and as he march'd by the way of *Xirvan* to possess himself of that Kingdom, he was prevented by *Farrok Yazer* the King of it, who having made

Appli-

Application to *Yamb Bek* for Succour, and receiv'd it, under the Command of *Seleymon Bek Bigan*, one of his Generals, routed and slew *Aydar* at *Tabasaron*, taking two young Sons of his, the Eldest call'd *Aly Mirzah*, the other *Scha Ismael*, who were secur'd in the Castle of *Sterkfaz*, and of whom we shall speak hereafter. *Yamb Bek* having Reign'd Twelve Years and Ten Months, died at *Harabage* near *Tauriz*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 896, of CHRIST 1492, being but Twenty eight Years of Age. *Dies.* *Ann.* 1492.

Bayfangor Mirzah, the Son of *Yamb Bek*, succeeded his Father in the Throne, and being very young, was under the Tuition and Government of *Sufy Kalil Musulu*, one of his Generals. There were great Commotions and Troubles upon his Accession to the Throne, because those of the Hord of *Bayonduryah* were for Enthroning of *Maziah Mirzah*, Uncle to the Infant King, and Brother to his Father; and joyning with him, made War on *Sufy Kalil*, who presently took the Field, and coming to a Battle, *Maziah* was defeated and kill'd, and his Nephew *Rostom Bek*, Son to his Brother *Maksud*, taken and sent to the Fortress of *Aleniak*. At this Time, *Soleymon Bigen*, who we said had routed and slain *Xeque*, or *Sultan Aydar*, advanc'd from *Diarbek* against *Kelil*, in Defence of *Farrok Yazor*, King of *Schirvan*, whom *Kalil* overthrew and kill'd at *Woan*. In the mean while, *Hayde Sultan Bayondur*, who had the Command of some Troops, assaulted *Aleniak*, where *Rostam Bek* was Prisoner, and rescuing him, he was proclaim'd King. He march'd away with them, and many more that joyn'd with him, towards *Tauriz*, in quest of *Bayfangor*, who abandonning the Country fled away with *Kalil* to *Diarbek*. *Rostam* sent some Troops

Bayfangor *succeeds.*

Troops after them, which took and put *Kalil* to Death. *Bayſangor* eſcap'd that Time, and *Roſtam Beg* remain'd poſſeſs'd of the Kingdom, in the Year of the *Hegira* 397, of CHRIST 1493.

Is expell'd.

Ann. 1493.

Roſtam *ſucceeds.*

Roſtam Bek, the Son of *Makſud*, and Grandſon to *Ozun Azembek*, being rais'd to the Throne, as ſoon as he came into *Tauriz*, releas'd *Aly Mirzah*, or *Aly Patza*, and *Scha Iſmael*, two Sons of *Aydar*, that were in Priſon, and taking the Field with *Aly Mirzah*, ſet out after *Bayſangor*, who came to meet them at *Guania* and *Bardah*, but was there by them routed and ſlain. After this Victory, *Roſtam* return'd to *Tauriz*, and *Aly Mirzah*, with his Leave, went away to *Ardavel*, his native Country, and Abode of his Father *Xeque Aydar*. *Roſtam* repented he had let him go, fearing his Preſence and the Memory of his Father might occaſion ſome Commotion, where he preſently ſent after him, and tho' he ſtood upon his Guard, he was kill'd. His Brother *Scha Iſmael* made his Eſcape, and got Safe to *Gueylon*, where *Karkya Mirzah Aly* then reign'd, to whom *Roſtam Bek* ſent Embaſſadors, demanding to have him deliver'd up to him, which *Karkya* refus'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 902, of CHRIST 1498, *Hamed Bek*, the Son of *Ogorlu Mahamed*, and Grandſon to *Ozun Azembek*, march'd from *Diarbek* againſt *Roſtam*, whom he engag'd near *Tauriz*, and obtain'd the Victory. *Roſtam* fled to *Gurgeſtam*, where he was kill'd, when he had Reign'd Five Years and Six Months.

Ann. 1498.

Is kill'd.

Hamed *King.*

Hamed Bek having expell'd *Roſtam*, aſcended the Throne. He gave the Government of the Kingdom of *Kermon* to *Haybe Sultan*, and that of *Perſia* to *Kazambek Pernaque*. Theſe two conſpir'd together, and made War upon him,

him, and after some Encounters he was slain in a Battle he lost near *Ispahan* in the Province of *Hyerak*. There now remain'd of all the Race of *Ozun Azembek*, only three Youths, his Grandsons, *viz.* *Sultan Morad*, the Son of *Tamb*, in *Xirvan*; *Alwan Bek*, the Son of *Issuf Bek*, in *Aderbaion*; and *Mahamed Mirzah*, Brother to the latter, at *Yazd*; and among these three were divided all the Dominions of *Persia* that had been in the Possession of the Hord of *Akuyonlu*.

Alwan Bek, the Son of *Issuf Bek*, and Grandson to *Ozun Azembek*, was saluted King of *Persia*, by *Kazembek Pernaque* and *Gazybek Bayondur*, his Generals and Kinsmen, who were joyn'd at *Tauriz* by *Haybe Sultan*, who came from *Kermon*. *Mahamed Mirzah*, Brother to *Alwan*, who was at *Yazd*, took also upon him the Title of King of *Ispahan*, or *Hyerak*, against whom *Alwan* march'd his Army, and he withdrew, without making any Opposition, into the Fortress of *Stha*. *Ozem Quiah Geloky* was Governor of it, who joyning *Mahamed*, they both advanc'd towards *Alwan*, who was then upon his return, and meeting, they came to a Battle, which *Alwan* lost, and retir'd to *Tauriz*, whither *Mahamed* pursu'd. *Alwan* ventur'd out again, and was again routed, with the Loss of *Haybe Sultan*, and he fled himself to *Diarbek*. During these Confusions, the Brothers of *Haybe Sultan* declar'd *Sultan Morad*, who was at *Xirvan*, King of *Hyerak*, and conducting him thence with a good Army, mov'd in quest of *Mahamed Mirzah*, whom they met near *Ispahan*, and ingag'd, where *Mahamed* was routed and kill'd, when he had Reign'd a Year, in that of the *Hegira* 905, of CHRIST 1500.

Alwan Bek *reigns.*

Is outed by Mahamed.

He is slain by Morad.

Ann. 1500.

Sultan

Sultan Morad, the Son of *Yamb Bek*, by the Death of *Mahamed Mirzah*, obtain'd the Kingdoms of *Pars* and *Hyerak*, and *Alwan* remain'd possess'd of *Tauriz* and *Aderbaion*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 906, of CHRIST 1501, they both rais'd Forces, and taking the Field, met at *Casbin*. There without Blows, by the Interposition of some Persons, they agreed that each should hold what he had. This was a miserable Time throughout all *Persia* for Robbing, Violence, Famine, Pestilence, and universal Confusion. In the Year of the *Hegira* 907, of CHRIST 1502, *Scha Ismael*, the Son of *Scheque Aydar*, march'd with his Army from *Nakxoam* to *Tauriz*, where *Alwan* resided, who abandonning the Country, fled to *Bagdat*, and thence to *Diarbek*, where he afterwards died. Thus *Tauriz* fell under the Dominion of *Scha Ismael*, who the next Year, which was 1504, made War on *Sultan Morad*, who advanc'd from *Schiras* to meet him. They fought at *Amadon*, where *Morad* lost the Day, fled back to *Schiras*, and thence to *Bagdat*, where *Baribek* was Governor, who receiv'd and protected him; but the following Year *Scha Ismael* came upon him, and both *Baribek* and *Morad* left the Place, and fled to *Karamon*, or *Karamania*, whence *Morad* return'd to *Diarbek*, where the *Kazel Backs* kill'd him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 920, of CHRIST 1515, and in him ended the Sovereignty of the Hord of *Akuyonly*, or of the White Sheep, in *Persia*.

End of this Race.

Ann. 1515.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Chinguyskan's *Successors, who Rul'd in* Usbek *and* Maurenahar.

WHILST, what has been said above happen'd in *Persia*, the Progeny of *Tuxykhon*, the Son of *Chinguis Kan*, reign'd in *Usbek*. *Schaybek Kan*, the Son of *Budah Sultan*, being Sovereign of those great Dominions, march'd out of *Usbek*, with mighty Numbers of Men, in the Year of the *Hegira* 900, of CHRIST 1496, and ranging the Provinces of *Maurenahar* and *Karason* for four Years together, possess'd himself of the greatest Part of them, expelling the Successors of *Teymur Langh* or *Tamerlan*. In the Year 1508, *Sultan Ocem Mirzah* dying, as he was going to meet *Schaybek Khan*, from *Herat* to *Maurenahar*, where he rul'd, his Son *Pady Azamon Mirzah* succeeded him, who not being able to withstand him, fled to *Kandar*, whence he return'd with what Force he was able to make against *Schiabek*, was by him defeated, and oblig'd to fly into *Persia*, to the Protection of *Scha Ismael Safy*, who treated him honourably. In the Year of the *Hegira* 916, of CHRIST 1511, *Scha Ismael* march'd against *Schaybek*. They met at *Marwo*, where *Schaybek* was kill'd in Battle, when he had Reign'd Twelve Years.

Kuchengy Kan succeeded *Schaybek* in *Maurenahar*. In the Year of the *Heigra* 918, of CHRIST 1513, *Scha Ismael*, King of *Persia*, plac'd *Nagemy Sony* at the Head of a good Army, and sent him into *Maurenahar*, where he was joyn'd by *Babor*, King of *India*, and they both together fought the *Usbeks* at *Gagidaon*, and

and were by them defeated, *Nagemy Sony* being kill'd, and *Babor* flying back into *India*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 935, of CHRIST 1530. *Kuchengy Kan* march'd with his Victorious Army into *Persia*, at the Time when *Scha Thamas*, the Son of *Scha Ismael*, rang'd there successfully. They met and came to a Battle, which the *Usbek* lost, and retir'd to *Maurenahar*; whence he again return'd to *Marwo*, and would have again broke into *Persia*; but a Treaty of Peace was set up between him and the *Persians*, which took effect; so that *Kuchengy Kan* went back to *Maurenahar*, where he died that same Year, when he had Reign'd Twenty.

His Son *Abusayd Kan* Reign'd after him Four Years, and died at the End thereof, without doing any Thing remarkable, in the Year of the *Hegira* 939, of CHRIST 1533.

Obeyd Kan, Cousin-German to the aforesaid *Abusayd*, Son to *Mahamed Kan*, the Brother of *Schaybek*, was declar'd King. This Prince marching his Army out of *Maurenahar* into *Karason*, intended to have enter'd *Persia*, but was prevented by *Scha Thamas*, before whom he fled, without seeing him, abandoning the Country of *Karason*. When *Scha Thamas* was gone home, he return'd a second Time, and very much harrass'd that Country, till the Year of the *Hegira* 946, of CHRIST 1540, when he died at *Bokara*, having Reign'd but little above Six Years.

Abdula Kan, the Son of *Kuchangy Kan*, succeeded *Obeyd Kan* in the Throne, which he enjoy'd but Six Months, and then died.

Adelatife Kan, the Son of *Abdula Kan*, reign'd after his Father, till the Year of the *Hegira* 948, of CHRIST 1542, when he died; and in him ended the Sovereignty of the Successors of *Chinguis Kan* over *Maurenahar*. CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Scha Ismael Sufy, *King of* Persia, *his Origin, and Progeny to this Time.*

I Will now, with my usual Brevity, give an Account of *Sha*, or *Sheque Ismael Sufy*, or *Sofi*, and his Successors. He was the Son of *Sheque Aydar*, the Son of *Sultan Juneyd*, the Son of *Sheque* or *Xeque Ebrahem*, the Son of *Xeque* or *Sheque Aly*, the Son of *Xeque* or *Sheque Muza*, the Son of *Scheque Sufy*, and in short, the Thirtieth Descendant from *Morts Aly*, Nephew and Son-in-Law to *Mahomet*. When *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, return'd into *Persia* Victorious over the *Turk Bajazeth*, he carried away with him great Numbers of People Captives of several Families, out of *Caramania*, all whom he intended to put to Death, upon some remarkable Occasion, and with this Resolution he enter'd *Ardevel*, where he continu'd some Days. At that Time, there liv'd in that City, one *Xeque* or *Sheque Safy*, reputed by those People a Saint, and as such, much honour'd and respected. The Fame of his Holy Life and Virtue mov'd *Tamerlan* to covet his Friendship, and therefore he several Times visited him in Person; and when about to depart *Ardevel*, took his Leave, offering to grant him any Favour he should ask. *Xeque Safy*, who had been inform'd of *Tamerlan*'s Design to put the Captives to Death, laying hold of that Opportunity, made it his Request, that he would spare them. *Tamerlan* desiring to oblige him, not only granted their Lives, but deliver'd them up to him, to dispose

of them as he thought fit. *Scheque Safy* receiv'd them all, and having made the best Provision of Cloaths and other Necessaries that he was able, dismiss'd them to return to their own Homes. This general Benefit so far gain'd the Hearts of those People, that both they and the rest that had been left in their Country, to shew their Gratitude, often came to visit *Safy*, bringing him Gifts and Presents; and this so frequently, that few Days pass'd, on which he was not visited by many; and this sort of Acknowledgment their Posterity continu'd to the Race of *Safy*, till the Days of *Sultan Juneyd*, his Third Grandson, who liv'd in the Days of *Joon Xa*, or *Sha*, the Son of *Kara Iſſuf*, above spoken of. This Man, considering how those Visits were continu'd, the Multitude of those that made them, both a Foot and a Horseback, the great Authority *Juneyd* began to be in, and growing jealous of all those Circumstances, order'd him not to receive the Visits of such a Multitude of People. *Juneyd* resented this heinously, and to avoid a second more disagreeable Command, went away with his Devotees from *Ardevel* towards *Diarbek*. *Ozun Azembek*, who then reign'd there, receiv'd him favourably, and gave him to Wife a Sister of his own, call'd *Kadiia Katun*, who bore him a Son, whom they call'd *Aydar*. *Xeque Juneyd* was wont to make some Excursions thence into *Gurgestam*, under Colour of Zeal for his Sect, compelling those he made Prisoners to embrace it; and thus he continu'd to do, till once entring the Kingdom of *Trabizond*, and killing the King, he possess'd himself of that Country, and plac'd his Son *Aydar* on the Throne, who held it after his Father's Death. It happen'd afterwards, that *Azembek* slew *Joon Scha*, as has been

been said; whereupon *Aydar* remov'd to *Ardevel*, where he marry'd *Alemxa*, the Daughter of *Azembek*, his own Cousin-German, by whom he had *Aly Patxa*, and *Scha Ismael*, who was born in the Year of the *Hegira* 892, of CHRIST 1488, and he took the Name of *Sufy*, or *Sofi*, for the Reason given in the First Book. Scha Ismael *born.* *Ann.* 1488.

The following Year, *Aydar* entring the Kingdom of *Schyrvan*, was kill'd by *Farrok Yassar*, King of that Country, who routed and slew him, with the Assistance of *Yamb Bek*, as was observ'd before; and his two Sons *Aly Patxa* and *Scha Ismael* were taken; the latter whereof afterwards *Sultan Rostam Bek* set at Liberty, when he had put to Death *Aly Patxa* the Eldest. *Scha Ismael* went away into *Gueylon*, where he staid Six Years; and then seeing *Persia* was all in Confusion, with the Troubles occasion'd by those of the Hord of *Akuyonlu*, he remov'd into *Arzenion*, and having there gather'd 7000 *Caramanians*, devoted to *Safy*, of the Tribes, or Families of *Estayalu*, *Xambu*, *Takaluh*, *Versatlu*, *Rombu*, *Zulkaderlu*, *Auxar*, *Kayar*, *Sufiah*, *Karayadak*, and many others that follow'd him, when he was but Fourteen Years of Age, in the Year of the *Hegira* 906, of CHRIST 1501, he invaded *Schirvan*, and ingaging *Farrok Yassar*, who had slain his Father *Aydar*, overthrew, kill'd, and possess'd himself of his Kingdom. The next Year he made War on *Alwan*, in *Nacxon*, whence *Alwan* fled, and *Ismael* took *Tauriz*. Having obtain'd this Victory, he instituted the *Tage*, which is the Turbant, or great red Cap, with Twelve Edgings round it, which he gave his Followers as a Mark of Distinction, in Memory of the Twelve Sons of *Ozem*, the Son of *Aly*, whom they reckoned as Saints, and

Gains the Crown. *Ann.* 1501.

and he boasted himself to be Descended from them; and thence that new Soldiery had the Name of *Cazel Basch*, which signifies *Red Heads*, from *Basch*, a Head, and *Cazel*, Red. This done, he went away to *Arzenion*, and march'd his Army into the Kingdom of *Zulkador*; but as soon as he had turn'd his Back, *Alwan* return'd to *Tauriz*, to the Relief whereof *Ismael* hasted, and *Alwan* fled from him to *Bagdat*, and thence into *Diarbek*, where he died two Yeas after. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 908, of CHRIST 1503. *Ismael* staid at *Tauriz*, but sent his Forces into *Persia*, against *Morad Bek*, who being defeated by him, with the loss of 10000 Men, in the Year 1504, abandon'd to him *Persia* and *Kermon*, which all fell under the Dominion of *Ismael*, who went to winter at *Kom*, and thence sent *Elias Bek* with an Army against the City *Rey*: *Ozem Bek Gelobi*, General to *Kabat Feruz Kuk*, lay in the way to meet him, and coming to a Battle, defeated and kill'd him. *Ismael* being inform'd of this Overthrow, set out immediately in quest of *Ozem Bek Gelobi*, who retir'd to *Feruz Kuk*, a Place strong by Art and Nature. *Ismael* besieg'd, and finding no other way to reduce him, cut off his Water, which was convey'd from without by Aqueducts, the want whereof oblig'd the Besieg'd to surrender within a Month. As little while as this War lasted, there died in it 30000 Men. Having quell'd this Commotion, *Ismael* set out for *Karason*; but as soon as he was gone, one *Reish Mahamed Karrahy*, with some Forces, possess'd himself of *Yazd*. *Ismael* turn'd back upon him; and tho' he defended himself Bravely, the City was at length taken, as was *Karrahy*, whom *Ismael* caus'd to be burnt, in the Year

Year of the *Hegira* 911, of CHRIST 1506. He mov'd thence to *Schiras*, where he put out a Proclamation, ordaining, That every Man who had been in the War against his Father *Aydar* should be put to Death; upon which Edict between 30 and 40000 Men perish'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 914, of CHRIST 1509, whilst he was wintering at *Turon*, *Sultan Ozem Mirzah*, King of *Karason* died, and *Schabek Kan*, the *Usbek*, possess'd himself of his Dominions, the dead King's Sons flying to *Hyerak*.

Ismael march'd his Army into the Country of *Rumestan*, or the *Turks*; and having given the Government of *Diarbek* to *Mahamed Kan Estayalu*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 916, of CHRIST 1511, advanc'd to *Bagdat*, where *Barbeyk* govern'd, who left that City to him and fled to the *Turks*; and he possess'd himself of it, notwithstanding the Loss of Men he sustain'd in passing the River *Tygris*, as was mention'd in the First Book. Hence he proceeded to *Kusistam*, which is the same as *Suster*, the City *Susa*, or *Sus*, where *Ahasuerus* and *Esther* liv'd, and it still flourishes, which Place he took, and in the Depth of Winter march'd his Forces to *Schirvan*, *Bahu*, and *Darband*, and took them. In the Year of the *Hegira* 914, of CHRIST 1512, he mov'd into *Karason*, against *Schaybek Kan*, who hearing of his Approach, retir'd to *Marwo*. *Ismael* provok'd him to take the Field: He did so, they came to a Battle, which *Schaybek Kan* lost, together with his Life, and *Karason* fell under the Dominion of *Ismael*.

This Year died *Bajazeth* the Second, King of the *Rumes* or *Turks*, and his Son *Selim* succeeded him in the Throne. In the Year of Selim, *Grand Signior*.

the *Hegira* 919, of CHRIST 1514, was born *Xa*, or *Sha Thamas*, the Son of *Scha Ismael Sufy*, or *Sofi*; and the next Year *Selim* march'd his Army to *Arzenion*. *Ismael* was then at *Ispahan*, the Capital of the Province of *Hyerak* in *Persia*, whence he remov'd to *Chalderon*, where the two Armies met and fought; and *Ismael* being routed, with the loss of 5000 Men, retir'd to *Tauriz*, and thence to *Gazin*. *Sultan Selim* enter'd *Tauriz*, where he staid but a Fortnight, and then return'd to *Amasiah*. This Year the *Cazelbax*'s slew *Sultan Morad* in *Diarbek*, and brought his Head to *Scha Ismael*; and the next Year *Selim* took the important Fortress of *Kemak*, and possess'd himself of the Lands of *Aladaolet* and *Zulkader*, and of *Aleppo* in *Syria*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 923, of CHRIST 1518, he subdu'd *Diarbeck*, which is *Mesopotamia*, and dying in 1521, was succeeded by his Son *Soliman*. *Sha Ismael Sufy*, or *Sofi*, having been King of all *Persia* Twenty Years, died in 1525, at the Age of Thirty eight. He was resolute in War, formidable and undaunted; rather harsh and cruel, than mild. He was wont to say, That as there is but one God in Heaven, so there ought to be but one King upon Earth; and his insatiable Ambition made him aspire to be the Man. He was much respected, and honour'd by his Subjects, as a religious and holy Person; and sometimes his barbarous Troops would have attributed to him some sort of Divinity; but as haughty as he was, he always rejected it. This he did most signally one Time; when after gaining a costly and most important Victory, some saluted him by the Title of a Prophet, others of an Angel, and others of a God; and not being able to dissuade them from it, he caus'd

Scha Ismael *dies.* *Ann.* 1525.

caus'd a mighty Pit of a great Depth to be dug, and throwing one of his Shooes into it, order'd the Man that lov'd himself best to go fetch it out. No sooner was the Word out of his Mouth, than some Thousands leap'd in, and the Moment they were down all the Earth that had been dug out of it was thrown upon them; and thus their Ignorance and Barbarity was chastiz'd by being Buried alive. He had four Sons, *Scha Thamas* the Eldest, the Second *Aleas*, or *Elias Mirzah*, the Third *Som Mirzah*, and the Fourth *Barhon Mirzah*. *His Issue.*

Scha Thamas, Eldest Son to *Scha Ismael Susy*, or *Sofi*, succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Persia*, and was ingag'd in some Wars, the most considerable of them with the *Turks*. He reign'd Fifty three Years, and died in the Year of the *Hegira* 983, of CHRIST 1576, leaving two Sons, *Scha Ismael*, and *Mahamed* the Blind. Scha Thamas *succeeds him.*

Scha Ismael, Eldest Son to *Scha Thamas*, inherited his Father's Kingdom of *Persia*, and held it but one Year and Ten Months, at the end whereof he died, and left the Crown to his Blind Brother *Mahamed*, in the Year 1578. Scha Ismael.

Scha Mahamed, Second Son to *Scha Thamas*, and Brother to *Scha Ismael*, upon his Death ascended the Throne, and tho' Blind, govern'd the Kingdom Seven Years, at the end whereof he died. Scha Mahamed.

Scha Abas, Son to Blind *Mahamed*, by his Death inherited the Crown of *Persia*, and is still reigning, having rul'd Thirty three Years, during which Time he has undertaken several Expeditions, the most remarkable whereof were into *Gueylon*, which had rebell'd, and by him reduc'd, with eminent Danger to himself and Forces, as was said in the First Book. He march'd to *Balk*, in *Usbek*, which he held Scha Abas.

some Months besieg'd, and was at last forc'd to rise without taking it, after sustaining some Loss. He destroy'd the Kingdom of *Lar* in *Persia*, the King whereof was taken and put to Death, for offering Violence to, and robbing the Caravans that pass'd that Way. He recover'd the City *Tauriz* from the *Turks*, who were in Possession of it since the Days of his Grandfather *Scha Thamas*, from whom they took it, on which Account the *Turks* continue the War in *Persia*. I write no more Particulars of this King, or his Predecessors, thinking what I have said sufficient to answer my Undertaking, to give an Account of the Kings of *Persia*, and the Succession of them till our Days, leaving a more ample Relation to such as have more Ability, Leasure and Curiosity, and praising God, for that he has been pleas'd to permit me to put an End to this Abridgment.

Thus far our Author Teixeira; *we shall now add a Brief Account of the Kings of* Persia, *who have Reign'd from that Time till our Days.*

THE

THE SUPPLEMENT TO *Teixeira*'s History of *Persia*.

TO what has been above said concerning *Sha Abas*, in the Thirty third Year of whose Reign *Teixeira* concluded his History, we may add what follows. He was call'd the Great for his many considerable Actions, having reduc'd all the great Monarchy of *Persia* under his Obedience by Force of Arms, tho' but an inconsiderable Part of it own'd him at his first Accession to the Throne. Besides his many warlike Exploits, he is famous for having built a noble *Caravanſera*, or House for Entertainment of Strangers, and most Magnificent Mosque, and the Royal Palace at *Ispahan*; but the greatest of his Works was cutting through Mountains, to render the River, which runs by that City, Navigable. Nor was he only remarkable for his Success in War and Structures, his prudent Government gain'd him no less Renown, and he was look'd upon as a just Prince. One cruel Action has left a Stain upon his Reputation. Of all his Sons he had only one left, call'd *Sephi Mirza*, a Prince Scha Abas.

Prince excellently qualify'd and expert at all Weapons. The People had a great Esteem for him, which gave his Father some Jealousie, as fearing he might not wait for his Death to ascend the Throne. His Jealousie was increas'd by this Accident. *Sephi Mirza* happen'd to let fly the first Arrow at a wild Boar in his Presence, which is a Capital Crime in *Persia*, no Man being permitted to shoot before the King. However, *Scha Abas* did not express his Resentment, the Reason why he then suppres's'd his Anger, being that Prince's having no Children; but he soon after getting a Son on a young Woman Slave, he had taken a Fancy to, as *Scha Abas*'s Affection increas'd towards the Infant, so the Jealousie he had conceiv'd of his Son advanc'd, till being no longer able to conceal it, he caus'd that Prince's Eyes to be put out. Nor would that satisfie him, for being still afraid of him, Blind as he was, he order'd a great Man of the Court to bring him his Head. That Nobleman, surpriz'd at such a Command, refus'd to obey it, saying, He would rather lose his own Head than embrew his Hands in his Prince's Blood. The King, offended at his Disobedience, Banish'd him, and the next Day having enjoyn'd another Prime Man to do the same, he immediately put it in Execution, and brought him his Son's Head in a gold Bason. That dismal Object brought him to himself, and not being able to forbear shedding Tears at such a Melancholy Spectacle, turn'd out that Executioner with many Reproaches, seiz'd all his Estate, and allow'd him only a *Mamoudi*, that is, about Nine-Pence a Day to subsist on. The other Nobleman, who had so generously refus'd to obey the cruel Command, was soon after re-

Kills his only Son.

call'd,

call'd, and had one of the best Governments in the Kingdom bestow'd on him as a Reward for his Loyal Disobedience.

Ever since then, all the Male Children of the Blood Royal are kept shut up in the *Haram*, or Women's Apartment, with two or three Eunuchs, who teach them to Read and Write, and to shoot with a Bow. They also ride about the Gardens on an Ass, but never a Horseback, nor are they seen by the People. Thus it was that *Scha Abas* bred his Grandson. He reign'd upwards of Forty Years, and died in the Year of our Lord 1628. Before his Death, he order'd himself to be buried in some Place that might be altogether unknown to all Men; that his Grandson should be immediately upon his Demise seated on the Throne, and that he should be call'd *Scha Sephi*.

Dies. Ann. 1628.

As soon as *Scha Abas* had expir'd, the Generals of the Horse and of the Musketiers, who had receiv'd his last Orders, hasted to the Palace at *Ispahan*, where being attended by many more of the Nobility, they brought out the young Prince, and proclaim'd him King; taking off the Vest he had on, and tearing it, which is a sign of Mourning in *Persia*, and putting him on another plain one, which he wore till Midnight. Then was he Clad in the Royal Robes, seated on the Throne, and complimented by all the Nobility, as was done the next Day by the Commonalty. He continu'd some Years very unskilfull in the Art of Reigning, as well by Reason of his tender Years, as because his Grandfather had in his Infancy stupify'd him, by taking too much Opium; for which Reason, the Physicians advis'd him to drink Wine, to warm his Blood and

Scha Sephi.

and chear his Spirits. At length, with these Helps, he came to himself; and the first remarkable Thing he did, was striking off the Head of *Ali Couli Kan*, who had conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Lar* and *Ormus* for his Grandfather. He also caus'd three of that General's Sons to be beheaded; as also seven other Prime Men of the Court after his Return to *Ispahan*; and so by Degrees took the Government into his own Hands. The Occasion and Manner of the Death of those great Men was thus.

It was thought that *Scha Abas* had left a private Order with the Sultaness and *Mirza Tahe*, enjoyning them to take off those Noblemen as soon as *Scha Sephi* was well settled on the Throne, and had appointed such Governors in all Parts as he could rely on. Those Gentlemen having got the wind of that Order, and concluding that the Time drew near for putting of it in Execution, prevented *Mirza Tahe*, by murdering of him one Morning at his Levee, which they immediately acquainted the King with themselves, in a very presumptuous Manner. *Scha Sephi* dissembled his Resentment, and told them, They had done very well. It is to be observ'd, That the Sultaness and *Mirza Tahe* held their private Councils at Night, he being cut Close, and disappointed all that those great Men us'd to project in the Day. The Sultaness therefore contriv'd their Death. Eight or nine Days after they had committed the Murder, those Persons sitting in Council with the King, an Eunuch came in, which was the Signal for the King to rise; and as soon as he withdrew, the Room was fill'd with Eunuchs, who fell upon *Jani Kan* and his Accomplices, and struck off their Heads; which,

with

with their Bodies, were immediately expos'd to the View of the People in the *Meydan*, or Great Square of *Ispahan*; and the People in *Persia* never presuming to examine what the King does, most of them kick'd the Heads about, saying to one another, *These are the Heads of the Dogs, who have displeas'd the King.*

Punishment of Sodomy.

Having said, that *Mirza Tahe* was cut Close, which gave him the Liberty of entring the *Haram*, or Women's Apartment, it may not be amiss to mention how he came so. Being Governor of *Giulan*, under *Scha Abas*, he abus'd one of his Pages in the unnatural Way. The Youth rode Day and Night till he came with his Complaint to the King, who gave him the Government of *Giulan*, with Orders to send him *Mirza Take*'s Head. That Governor missing his Page, and concluding he was gone to complain, which would be his inevitable Ruin, resolv'd to prevent it by punishing himself, which he accordingly did, cutting off all the Part wherewith he had committed the Crime. In that Condition he caus'd himself to be carried to Court in a Horse-Litter, with an able Surgeon attending; and getting to *Ispahan* along an uncommon Road, was convey'd in that Condition to the King, to whom he presented the undeniable Testimonials of his Repentance, begging Pardon for his Offence, which was granted, upon Consideration that he had receiv'd a sufficient Punishment, and he sent back to his Government, other Satisfaction being made to the Page. This Man *Scha Abas* thought worthy to be made *Athenat Doulat*, or Prime Minister, after his Death, which cost him his Life, as was said above.

Scha

Notable Story of Abi Merdan Kan.

Scha Sephi being rid of those dangerous great Men above mention'd, was desirous to have the Head of *Ali Merdan Kan*, Governor of *Candahar*, of whom he had conceiv'd much Jealousie, on Account of his prodigious Wealth, all his Service being of Gold, and his Houshold as Magnificent as the King's. But he could never compass it; for that Governor, being press'd to come to Court, and suspecting it was to undergo the same Fate with the others, deliver'd up the Province of *Candahar* to the *Mogol*, by whom he was much honour'd and caress'd. His Wealth was not acquir'd by himself, but came by Inheritance; for he was descended from the ancient Kings of *Candahar*, who were of the *Tartar* Extraction. The *Mogol* could not honour *Ali Merdah Kan* more than *Scha Sephi* did his two Sons, whom he had in his Power, and whom all Men expected he would have put to Death. This Policy of *Scha Sephi* was afterwards very advantageous to his Son *Scha Abas* the Second, when he laid Siege to *Candahar*, with 50000 Men; for the *Mogol's* Army being mostly compos'd of *Persians*, they call'd to Mind how kind *Scha Sephi* had been to *Ali Merdan Kan's* two Sons, and therefore made little Opposition against the King of *Persia*, who, accordingly soon recover'd *Candahar*. The *Mogol* being concern'd at that Loss, one Day ask'd *Ali Merdan Kan*, how he might recover *Candahar*, who answer'd, It would be an easie Matter, if he could find out such another Traitor as himself.

The Reign of *Scha Sephi* was tyrannical, whereof I will here give but one Instance. Returning one Day from the House of the *Kelonter*, who is as it were Mayor of the Town,

Town, at *Zulfa*, where he had been making merry and drank Wine to Excess, as soon as he came to the Palace, he sent for his Sultaness; she, being inform'd that he had drank hard, made no haste to him, so that he fell asleep. Awaking soon after, and not finding the Queen, he sent for her a second time, and she came. As she came into the Room she perceiv'd he was fallen asleep again, and expecting him to awake again, went into a Nich, or sort of Closet cover'd by the Hanging, us'd to lay by the Quilts and Bedding. The King awaking again, and still missing the Queen, ask'd in a Passion, why she did not come. The King's Mother, who was no other than a *Georgian* Slave, and mortally hated the young Sultaness who was Daughter to the King of *Georgia*, because little Account was made of her, being then in the Room, laid hold of this Opportunity to incense the King against her, and made a Sign with her Hand, to show the young Queen was in the Nich. The King then starting up in a Rage, stabb'd that unhappy Princess five or six times, and without any Concern laid him down to sleep again. The next Morning having only a confused Notion of what he had done over Night, he ask'd for the Queen, and being told what had happen'd, he was much concern'd, and immediately sent Orders throughout all the Kingdom, that no Wine should be drank; directing all Governours to stave all Vessels in which any should be found; which was accordingly done in all Places, except the Houses of the *English*, the *Dutch* and the *Capucins*. However this Regulation was of no long Continuance, for the next Year Wine was made and drank as before.

Drunken Cruelty.

Another

Another time having been entertaind by a private Person, call'd *Gorgia Sultenon*, at *Sulfa*, and drank very hard, the next Day he was much out of Order, and fell into a violent Fever, which had like to have carry'd him off. Some Enemies of that *Armenian* told him he had made that Entertainment to poison the King, who was dangerously sick, and if he happen'd to die, he must look to himself. The *Armenian* was in such a Fright at it, that he poison'd himself, and dy'd in two or three Hours after. There was some Show made of enquiring who had put him into that Fright; but great Men at Court being concern'd in it, all was hush'd up. This King reign'd 14 Years, and dy'd in 1642, of excessive drinking, which he was much addicted to.

Scha Sefy Dies. An. 1642.

His Son *Scha Abas* the Second was enthron'd at *Casbin* with the usual Ceremony about the latter end of the same Year, and made his solemn Entry into *Ispahan* the Beginning of the next. The Day for his Entry being appointed, all the Inhabitants were under Arms, and made a Lane along the Road, without the City, which with abundance of Horse and Foot from all Parts, and other People coming, extended five Leagues in Length. All the Way for two Leagues was cover'd with Brocards of Gold or Silver, Silks and other rich Stuffs, which cost the King nothing, the *Scha Bander*, or Chief of the Merchants, obliging every one to furnish his Part for that Solemnity. The *European* Merchants were also order'd to attend the King, and being presented to him, kiss'd his Boot. None rides on the Silks above mention'd but the King, and as soon as he is pass'd, the Mob scrambles for them. When the King was arriv'd in the City, there were

Scha Abas II.

were curious Fire-works in the *Meidan*, as also Illuminations, and all other Sorts of Rejoicings.

The next Year, 1643, the Prince of the *Usbecks* came to *Ispahan*, to crave Succour of the *Persian* King, against his Sons, who were in Rebellion, and had defeated him in two Battels, in the last of which he had lost an Eye. *Scha Abas* went out himself to meet and receive him with the greatest Honours, giving him the Left Hand, which in *Persia* is the most honourable. After having friendly entertain'd him for some Time, he assisted him with 15000 Horse, 8000 Foot, and 6000 *Tomans* in Mony, being about 200000 Pounds Sterling, with which he recover'd his Dominions. *His Generosity.*

Scha Abas was a brave and generous Prince, and a great Lover of Strangers. He understood Drawing, and was nice in all Sorts of curious Workmanship, but he lov'd Wine, like his Father, and having drank to Excess was guilty of some Actions, which would be thought cruel in *Europe*, and yet in *Persia* they are look'd upon as just Punishments for disobeying the Prince. It is an establish'd Principle among those People, that they ought to obey the King as they would God, whom he represents, and when a *Persian* swears by the King's Head, that he will do any thing, he infallibly performs it, and that out of hand. *Loyalty of* Persians.

Scha Abas having one Day drank to Excess in his *Haram*, or Apartment of the Women, he commanded three Ladies to drink. They excus'd themselves, alledging, that they intended shortly to go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*; but the King repeating his Command two or three Times, and they still refusing to obey, he order'd them all to be bound, a great Fire to be lighted, *Drunken Cruelty.*

lighted, and them to be cast into it, where they were burnt.

At another Debauch, the King again desir'd a Lady to drink Wine, and she refusing, he started up and order'd the Chief of the Eunuchs to burn her, as had been done by the other three. He was about performing it, but the Lady prevail'd with her Prayers and Tears to spare her, hoping the King would relent, when the drunken Fit was over, because he had an extraordinary Affection for her. The King awaking, ask'd the Eunuch, whether he had fulfilled his Commands, and he answering, he had thought himself oblig'd to respite the Execution, that Prince was so highly offended, that he caus'd the Eunuch to be immediately burnt, and pardon'd the Lady.

Death of Scha Abas, 1664.

Scha Abas reign'd above 22 Years, and dy'd at a Place call'd *Tehzon*, in the Year 1664, of an Inflamation in the Throat, occcasion'd by excessive drinking, after the Example of his Father. His Body was convey'd to *Kom*, where he had built his Monument.

As soon as he was dead, the General of the Musketeers, and the chief of the Astrologers, repair'd to the *Haram*, or Women's Apartment, where they saluted the Prince, King. He prostrated himself at the Gate of the *Haram*, and then sitting on his Heels, one of them that brought him the News of his Accession to the Throne, according to Custom, put on his Sword, saying, *Your Majesty may be pleas'd to remember, that your Slave has had the Honour of girding on this Cymiter.* Having so said, he withdrew to go order the Trumpets to sound and the Drums to beat as usual, and all the People hearing that Noise, resorted in the Morning to the *Meydan*, or great Square, crying

ing before the Palace Gate, *Patscha Salamelek*, that is, *I salute you Emperor.* This is all the Ceremony of Enthroning a King of *Persia*, only the Cap of the *Sophis* is set on his Head, but there is no Crown, or Coronation.

Scha Sefi *the Second, or* Soliman.

This Monarch was call'd *Scha Sefi* the Second, and having been always of a weakly Constitution, fell dangerously ill, presently after his Advancement. It is the Custom, upon such Occasions, for all the great Men of the Court, and the Governors of Provinces, as soon as they have Notice of the King's Indisposition, to send each of them a Sum of Money to Court, according to their Ability, or Generosity. It is generally in Gold, and is put into a Gold Bason, adorn'd with precious Stones, which is wav'd three times over the King's Head, uttering these Words at the same Time, *Patscha bachena courbon olson*; that *This Money is a Sacrifice for the Health of the King's Head.* If the King recovers, all that Money is given to the Poor, with much more added by him and all the *Haram*; but if he happens to die, it is all put into the Treasury, and the Poor have nothing. The 20th of *August*, 1667, his Distemper was at the highest, and it was thought he would not have liv'd till the next Day. All the great Men of the Court, seeing him in that Condition, repair'd to the Mosque call'd *Babaron*, without the City, to pray for his Health, and all of them together gave near 1000 *Tomans* in Charity to the Poor; being near 4000 Pounds. The next Day all the *Armenian* Christians were commanded to pray for the King's Health, and they all, as well Clergy as Laiety, went to offer up their Devotions, on the Bank of the River, which is between

Prayers for him.

Ispahan and *Zulpha*. They also sent their *Kelonter*, or Chief, with 50 *Tomans* in Gold, to be wav'd over the King's Head; but that is not done with the same Words that are express'd when they wave the Money sent by those who profess the Law of *Ali*, for they then only utter these Words, *Berrai se sadduk*, that is, *Design'd for Alms*.

Superstition. The King, a few Days after, was out of Danger, but the Matter was, to restore him to perfect Health. Having been always in a languishing Condition, and his Physicians never able to discover the Cause of his Distemper, he suspected that their Ignorance retarded his Recovery, and two or three of them were therefore ill treated. At Length, the other Physicians, fearing it might be their own Turn next, bethought themselves, that *Persia* being at the same time afflicted with a Scarcity of Provisions, and the King's Sickness, the Fault must be in the Astrologers, who had not chosen a favourable Hour when the King was set upon the Throne, and therefore perswaded him, that the Ceremony must be perform'd again, and he change his Name in a more lucky Minute. The King, and his Council, approving of their Notion, the Physicians, and Astrologers together, expected the first unfortunate Day, which, according to their Superstition, was to be follow'd in the Evening by a propitious Hour. Among the *Gavres*, or original *Persians*, Worshipers of Fire, there are some, who boast their Descent from the *Rustans*, who formerly reign'd over *Persia* and *Parthia*. On the Morning of the aforesaid unlucky Day, they took one of those *Gavres*, of that Blood-Royal, and having plac'd him on the Throne, with his

Back

Back against a Figure that represented him to the Life, all the great Men of the Court came to attend him, as if he had been their King, performing all that he commanded. This Scene lasted till the favourable Hour, which was a little before Sun-setting, and then an Officer of the Court came behind, and cut off the Head of the Wooden Statue with his Cymiter; the *Gaure* then starting up, and running away. That very Moment the King came into the Hall, and the *Sofy*'s Cap being set on his Head, and his Sword girt to his Side, he sat down on the Throne, changing his Name for that of *Soliman*, which was perform'd with the usual Ceremonies, the Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding, as before. It was requisite to act this Farce, in order to satisfie the Law, which requires that in order to change his Name, and take Possession of the Throne again, he must expel a Prince that has usurp'd it upon some Pretensions; and therefore they made Choice of a *Gaure*, who pretended to be descended from the Ancient Kings of *Persia*, and was, besides, of a different Religion from that of the Government. The King continuing to recover his Health from that Day, and the Price of Provisions abating, the Physicians retriev'd their Credit, and all the Astrologers were disgrac'd, except 2 or 3, look'd upon to be the ablest of them.

Scha Soliman, before his Accession to the Throne, had scarce seen any thing but Women, and black Eunuchs, among whom he had no Opportunity to learn the Art of Government, and was only educated in Cruelty, and Lasciviousness. Being led by his bloody Temper, the first Part of his Reign was extraordinary severe and rigid, of which we *Cruelty.*

have a considerable Instance in what he did by one of his Concubines. It is a Custom among the Kings of *Persia*, to marry their Concubines to Men of low Condition, and accordingly *Scha Soliman* gave one he was most fond of, to a Scowrer of Cloth; but his Kindness still continuing, he took her again into the *Haram*, sending her Husband into some remote Parts, with an honourable Employment, after she had Six Children by him. The King being curious, or rather jealous, ask'd her one Day, which of the two she lov'd best; and she answering undauntedly, that it was her Husband, because he had her in a lawful Manner; he, in a Passion, order'd her to be thrown into the River; but his Affection returning upon him, he forgave her, as he did afterwards, having order'd her to be burnt alive, and she continu'd in the *Haram* after his Death.

Lewdness.

He practis'd his Cruelty a long Time, puting to Death many great Men of the Court, upon slight Occasions; but giving himself up afterwards to Drunkenness and Women, he seem'd to bear only the Title of a King, leaving the whole Administration of the Government to *Mirza Taber*, his prime Minister. This Man was a downright Knave, and not regarding his great Age, which was about 80 Years, because still of a hail Constitution, he regarded only the highest Bidder, and sometimes was so mean as to take a Crown. It was reported of him, that being one Day ask'd by the King, how many Children he had, he answer'd, he did not remember the Number, but that, when he went home, he would send it him in Writing.

Scha

Scha Soliman being sometimes urg'd to declare War against the *Turks*, upon an extraordinary favourable Opportunity, answer'd, that having once concluded a Peace, as requested of him, he ought not to break his Word; and being farther told, that the Grand-Seignior would certainly make War on him, as soon as he was at Peace with the Christian Princes, he reply'd, he should be contented as long as *Ispahan* was left him.

However, he had War with *Sultan Colican*, King of the *Usbecks*, and was a Loser by it. The Occasion of it was, that the said King's Brother going in Pilgrimage to *Mecca* with the Queen, attended by 3000 *Tartars*, *Scha Soliman* would permit only 200 of them to come into *Ispahan*, and a Casket of Jewels being by them left in his Custody, till the Return of those Princes; he understanding that the Queen return'd without her Brother-in-Law, who had dy'd by the Way, made her go by the Way of *Sciras*, and not by *Ispahan*, refusing to restore her Jewels.

To conclude with this King, his Reign was not remarkable for any honourable Actions, and therefore it will be convenient to come to the end of it. On *Wednesday*, the 21st of *July*, 1694, the King was taken ill, or rather grew worse of his Distempers, occasion'd by Excess of Wine; being apprehensive of the Danger of his Life, he the next Day order'd 3700 *Tomans* to be distributed among the Poor, and Directions to be sent to all Governors of Provinces, to discharge all Prisoners throughout the Kingdom. Nothing avail'd, for he dy'd the 28th of the aforesaid

Month, at 53 Years of Age, when he had reign'd 30.

Scha Offen, 1694. The next Day his Son, *Scha Offen*, was seated on the Throne, and being advis'd to take the Name of *Scha Ismael*, he answer'd, he had already a Name of his own, and so kept it. One of his first Actions was, to forbid the Use of Wine, upon pain of Death; breaking all the Vessels in the Palace, wherein it had been kept for his Father. He was 25 Years of Age when his Father dy'd, and is still living; but of his Actions, we have hitherto no particular Account, only, that he did not Murder, or put out the Eyes of his Brothers, long after his Exaltation, according to the barbarous Custom of that Country, and it is believ'd that he may abrogate it.

The End of the History of Persia.

A

BRIEF ACCOUNT

Of the most

Remarkable PROVINCES,

And which have continu'd longest under the Dominion of *Persia*.

By PETER TEIXEIRA, *Author of the History of* PERSIA.

PERSIA, by the Natives call'd *Pars*, or *Agem*, and thence the Natives *Parsi*, or *Agemy*, being one of the greatest and most renowned Monarchies in the World, cannot be assign'd any certain Boundaries, by reason of its various Extent under several Possessors, whose Dominion sometimes extended over more, and sometimes over fewer Kingdoms and Provinces, of which I will mention those that continu'd longest under its present Government, and were least subject to change, taking Notice of the principal Towns in them, for the more Perspicuity, leaving a more particular Description to Geographers.

PARS

Is one of the Provinces of that Kingdom, but not of the largest, whose Capital is *Schiras*, a great and noble City. It abounds in Corn, Flesh, and Fruit, yields great Quantities of Rose-Water, and Hides, and has a considerable Trade with all the Kingdoms subject to the Crown of *Persia*. They here wear some Silks of their own Product. Here is also the City *Lar*, by the *Portugueses* call'd *Lara*, which gives Name to the *Laris*, an extraordinary pure Silver Coin, well known and current throughout all the East. This City is Metropolis of a Kingdom, and in it the best Bows they have in *Persia* are made. In the Year of our Lord 1593, and in the Month of *September*, there happen'd such a dreadful Earthquake in this City as overthrew above 1200 Houses, ruin'd most of the Walls, spoilt many Cisterns, for they have no other Water but what they save when it Rains, and kill'd 3000 of the People. There are besides in this Province of *Pars*, the Towns and Cities of *Tarom*, *Jaharom*, *Kazru*, *Lastam*, where the *Ingo*, that is, the *Assa Fatida* grows, *Stahabanon*, where the *Pagnis* graze which have the Bezoar Stones, and the Natives are all Bald; *Neriz*, whose Mountains are full of Mines of excellent Steel, where they make good Arms, and many Curiosities; *Pazah* and *Dar-Aguerd*, renown'd for abounding in Provisions, fresh and dry Fruit, and Rose Water, besides many other Places of less Note.

HY-

HYERAK

Is another large and considerable Province of *Persia*: Its Metropolis is *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahan*, a very populous City, sometimes the Residence of the *Persian* Kings, has a great Trade, and is plentifully supply'd with all Necessaries. Here is also the City *Yazd*, not so famous for its Bigness, as the delightful Situation, and for the many rich Carpets made in it, which are the best in all the World, much Silk, and excellent Rose Water. *Kaxon* is noted for the great Quantity of Silk wove in it, and for the Fertility of its Soil for all Sorts of Fruit, among which the Quinces are known by the Name of *Kaxon*, as being the most delicious. Here are also, *Kam*, *Saoah*, *Kazbin*, the Court of the Kings of *Persia*, after they lost *Tauriz*, *Amedom*, *Nahaoand*, *Targazin*, *Damaoand*, *Taharon*, *Rey Scharear*; where there is much *Manna*, but not of the purest; and many other Towns of less Note.

ADERBAION, or *AZARBAION*,

Is another great Province, its Capital the famous City *Tauriz*, the Court of the *Persian* Kings, before it was taken by the *Turks*. This Country abounds in all Things necessary, and drives a great Trade with *Russia*, *Poland*, *Muscovy*, *Circassia*, *Gurgestam*, and all the Provinces of *Persia*. It produces some Silver, and a great Quantity of Allom, and Madder for dying. The Natives are commonly call'd *Calonges*. The other Towns are *Xyrvan*, *Nakxoan*, *Hordobat*, *Ardauel*, or *Ardeuil*, &c.

GUEY-

GUEYLON, or *GUILON*,

Is another Province subject to *Persia*, of a great Extent, containing much excellent Land, and lyes along the *Caspian* Sea, which has its Name from it, for the *Persians* call it *Daryah Gueylany*, the Sea of *Gueylon*. It is divided into five Governments, the Capitals whereof are the Cities of *Raxt*, *Laion*, *Gaxkhar*, *Langarkanon* and *Kudam*. They generally call *Gueylon*, by the Name of *End Safet*; that is, *White India*, because it is a pleasant, temperate and fruitful Country. It borders on *Muscovy*, which the *Persians* call *Moscau*.

There follow along near the Caspian *Sea*,

Mazandaron, *Strabat*, *Bostam*, *Sabzabah*, *Nicabar*, where the *Turky* Stones are found, and other Places, all of them formerly the Capitals of Kingdoms and Provinces, now reduc'd to particular Governments of *Persia*, but still populous Cities.

KARASON,

The *Portugueses* generally call it *Corason*, another Province subject to *Persia*, containing very considerable Towns and Cities. The chief of them all is *Mexed*, a great and populous City, where the *Persian* Kings, ever since *Scha Ismael Sufy*, or *Sofi*, have their Place of Burial. Here is also the City *Thun*, large and abounding in rich Silks; *Tabos* very famous; *Kahem*, fruitful in Saffron; *Hrey*, yielding much

much excellent Manna, the Walls of it washed by the delightful River *Habin*; *Marwo*, *Herat*, and others sufficiently known. They also export from this Province Carpets, *Assa fetida*, *Surma*, and other Commodities. It has plenty of Provisions, and tho' it always belong'd to the *Persian* Kings, yet a great Part of it is now subject to the *Uzbeks*, who finding those Kings engag'd in War with the *Turks*, invaded their Lands and possess'd themselves of many they have in this Province.

KERMON,

Another *Persian* Province, lyes between it and *Karason*, and takes its Name from a great City, so call'd; it has many other Towns, but not very considerable, and yields Rose-Water, Carpets, Tutty, Wormseed and *Surmah*, a Stone good for sore Eyes, and us'd there to make them black.

The other Provinces of Persia *are*

Sagistam, *Tabarstam*, *Rablestam*, *Nim-Ruz*, *Stha-Har*, *Sistom*, *Curdestam*, *Lorestam*, and several others of less Note, which I omit, to avoid being tedious. *Persia* for the most part abounds in Corn, Flesh, new and dry Fruit, both of the *European* Sorts, and several others, all at very reasonable Rates. The Natives are Fair, Beautiful and well fashion'd; their Habit is the *Turkish*, and their Sect, that of *Morts Aly*, which differs a little from that of *Mahomet*. They generally fight a Horseback, with Spears, Bucklers, Bows, Arrows, Cymeters, Battle-Axes,

Axes, Coats of Male, and they ride with short Stirrups. In War they are brave, and endure much Hardship; in Peace, much addicted to Reading, and value themselves upon it; being particularly affected to Poetry, in which some among them have gain'd Renown, and they have many learned Pieces in it. They are very amorous, and acquainted with all speculative Sciences, which their Professors discourse of very judiciously; only their Law has no more Volumes, than only that of their Sect, by which they are wholly govern'd, committing the Administration of Justice to Persons of Integrity. The Men are jealous, and the Women not over Chaste. In short, *Persia* is one of the polite Monarchies of the World, and none of the least. Mighty Caravans usually resort from all Parts of *Persia*, to *Harmuz* or *Ormuz*, to trade with the *Portugueses*, and other Christians, Heathens, and *Mahometans*, residing in that Place, and barter their Commodities, which are Gold, Silver, raw and wrought Silk, Brocades, Carpets, Horses, Madder, Allom, Tutty, Rheubard, Rose-Water, and several others, for very fine Cloth, and Muslin, Cloves, Cinnamon, Pepper, Cardamon, Ginger, Mace, Nutmeg, Sugar, Tin, Sandal, or Sanders, *Sapom*, that is *Brazil* Wood, China-Ware, Musk, Amber-Greese, Lignum Aloes, precious Stones, Seed Pearl, Indigo, Lake, *&c.* The *Persians* sail upon no Sea, but the *Caspian*, and some that go into *India*, take their Passage in *Portuguese* Ships, or others, with their Leave. *(Observe this was writ, when the* Portugueses *were Masters of* Ormuz, *since which that Matter is alter'd.)* All the Natives of *Persia* are either

Schyay

Schyay Mahometans, which are much the greater Number, or Heathens, call'd *Gaor Yazds*, or *Gauris*, who worship Fire, and these tho' numerous, are but few in Comparison of the others; or else *Jews*, who enjoy their Liberty throughout all the Provinces of *Persia*, and there may be between eight and ten thousand Families of them; besides a good Number of *Armenian* and *Nestorian* Christians.

MAURENAHAR

Is the Name of those Countries, which lye beyond the River *Gehun*, that divides them from *Karason*, and it contains *Koarrazm* and *Gaznehen*, and then follow *Turkestam*, *Uzbek*, *Tatar*, *Ketao Kotan*, and very many more no less wealthy and plentiful than warlike.

UZBEK

Is a Province of vast Extent, and tho' formerly always subject to *Persia*, is now not only independent, but makes War on that Kingdom, and has gain'd some Lands from it. This Province, as it is so large, contains several Towns and Cities of great Note. The Metropolis of it is *Balk*; besides which there are *Samarkand*, where *Tamerlan* was born; *Damarkand*; *Bohara*, the Place of *Boaly*, or *Avincen*'s Birth; *Kaxghar*, and *Axkhar*, whence we have the best Rhubarb, and many more. The Natives are Warlike, and fight a Horseback, with Bows and Arrows, Spears, Swords, Bucklers, and Battle-Axes, always flying, and they have in our Days much extended their Dominions. Among the rest, they have possess'd them-

themselves of the Kingdom of *Kandar*, or *Kandahar*, the King whereof went away to implore the Assistance of the *Mogol*, putting himself under his Subjection; and yet he, tho' so potent, was not able to restore him. The *Uzbeks* have no King by Inheritance, but when their Commander in Chief dies, they chuse another. Their Faces and Beards resemble the *Chineses*, their Bodies large and strong, they speak a little through the Nose, like the *Chineses*, and have much of them in their Habit, Countenance and Pronunciation.

A Chronological Table,

Of the Sovereigns of PERSIA, *till the* Arabs *enter'd that Country, according to* Mirkond.

The Years of their Rule are taken from the same Historian. Those distinguish'd by a G, *are Governors, though some call them Kings. Such as are link'd together thus,* ⸢ *are the King, and those who govern'd under him. Where there is no Number of Years, the Time that those Persons govern'd is uncertain.*

		Years.	Mon.	Days.
Contemporaries.	R Ayumarras	40	00	00
	Syamek	00	00	00
	Ouxangh	50	00	00
	Thamures Divband	30	00	00
	Jambxed	00	00	00
	Zoahk	00	00	00
Abraham.	Fraydhun	00	00	00
	Manucher	120	00	00
Moses.	Naudar	7	00	00
	Afrasiab	12	00	00
	Zaab, *or* Bazab	5	00	00
	Kay Kobad	100	00	00

		Years.	Mon.	Days.
Solomon.	Kay Kaus	150	00	00
	Kay Khozrao	60	00	00
	Loraſp, *or* Loraſeph	120	00	00
	Guſtaſp, *or* Guſtaſeph	120	00	00
	Bahaman Daras Daſt *or* Ardſchir	112	00	00
	Homay, *a Queen*	30	00	00
	Darab	12	00	00
	Darab *II.*	14	00	00
	Scander, *or* Alexander	14	00	00
	An Interregnum	72	00	00
	Schapur	60	00	00
	Ardſchir Babakhon	50	00	00
CHRIST	Schapur Zabel Ketaf *G.* Ardſchir Farzand Hormoz	0	00	00
	Shapur	60	00	00
	Baharon Kermon Scha	15	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	22	00	00
	Kezere Khozrao	00	00	00
	Baharon Gur	00	00	00
	Narſy, *or* Narſa *G.*	00	00	00
	Baharon Gur	00	00	00
	Narſy, *or* Narſa, *G.*	00	00	00
	Baharon Gur	23	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	00	00	00
	Narſy, *G.*	00	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	00	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	21	00	00
	Hormoz Farzand	1	00	00
	Feruz	00	00	00
	Sufara, *G.*	00	00	00
	Feruz	00	00	00
	Sufara, *G.*	00	00	00
	Feruz	26	00	00
	Belax	5	00	00
	Jamaſp, *G.*	00	00	00
	Kobad	43	00	00

Keſere

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Kesere Anuxiron, *or* Nauxirvan	48	00	00
Hormoz	12	00	00
Baharon Chuby	00	00	00
Khozrao Parvez	38	00	00
Kobad Schyruyhe	00	08	00
Scharear	1	00	00
Joon Schyr	1	00	00
Turon Dokt, *a Queen*	1	04	00
Jaranceda	0	00	06
Azarmy Dokt, *a Queen*	0	06	00
Kesere	1	00	00
Feroghzad	0	01	00
Yazd Gerd	20	00	00

Next follow the Califs of Bagdad *who were Sovereigns of* Persia, *after the* Arabs *broke into it.*

Homar	1	00	00
Osman, *or* Otman	11	06	00
Morts Aly	4	06	00
Acen	0	06	00

Of the Hord or Family of Ben Humya.

Mawya	20	00	00
Yezid	3	00	00
Mawya *II.*	0	01	10
Marwan	1	00	00
Abdel Malek	21	01	00
Oelyd	9	08	00
Soleymon		06	00
Hamar, *or* Homer	2	05	00
Yezyd *II.*	4	08	00
Oschon	19	08	00
Oelyd *II.*	1	02	00

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Yezyd *III.*	0	06	00
Ebrahem	0	02	00
Marwan *II.*	5	00	00

Of the Hord or Family of Eben Abas.

Safa	4	09	00
Abu Jafar	23	01	00
Mahady Bila	11	00	00
Elady Bila Musa	1	03	00
Arraxid Bila Harun	23	07	00
Mahamed Amin	4	07	00
Mahamun	12	00	00
Abu Ezach Matazon	8	09	00
Wazek	5	00	00
Almotowakul Bila Jafar	12	00	00
Montacer	0	06	00
Abul Abas Hamed	5	09	00
An Interregnum	0	00	00
Mostahkin	1	04	00
Almotez Bila	3	06	00
Motady Bila	0	11	00
Almat Hamed Bila Hamed	23	00	00
Motazed Bila Hamed	9	09	00
Moktafy Bila	4	00	00
Moktader Bila	7	00	00
Jafar	20	00	00
Kaher Bila Mahamed	1	06	00
Razy Bila Mahamed	4	00	00
Moktafy Bila Ebrahem *II.*	4	00	00
Mostachfy Abdala	4	04	00
Mutya Bila Fazele	29	06	00
Tahya Abel Karim	17	02	00
Kader Bila Hamed	41	04	00
Kakem, *or* Alkakem Beamaryla Abu Jafor Abdula	44	04	00

Almok-

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Almoktady Bila	19	05	00
Almostazer Bila	25	06	00
Almostarzed Bila Fazele	17	02	00
Raxet Bila	2	00	00
Almoktafy Bila	24	00	00
Almostanget Bila Issuf	11	00	00
Almostanzy Benur Elah Azen	9	08	00
Nacer, *or* Nacere Ladiula	47	00	00
Alzaker, or Altaker Bila Mahamed	00	09	00
Almostanzer Bila Manser	17	00	00
Almostacem Bila Abdula	15	07	00

Mogols, *or* Tartars, *that were Sovereigns of* Persia, *descended from* Chinguis Khan.

Chinguis Khan	1	00	00
Otkay Khan	13	00	00
Sayurk Khan	1	00	00
Manchu Khan	13	00	00
Ulaku Khan	6	00	00
Haybak Khan	17	00	00
Hamed Khan, *or* Nicudar Oglan	2	02	00
Argon Kahn	3	00	00
Baydu Kahn	1	00	00
Gazun Khan,	8	09	00
Alyaptu King, *afterwards called* Sultan Hamed	12	09	00
Sultan Abusayd Bahader Khan	19	00	00

Mogols, *or* Tartars, *descended from* Tamerlan, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia.

Teymur Langh, *or* Tamerlan	36	00	00
Mirzah Scharrock	43	00	00
Ologh Beg	2	00	00
Mirzah Abdelatife	0	06	00

	Years.	Mon.	Days
Mirzah Abdula	1	00	00
In Maurenahar, Mirzah Sultan Abusaid	18	00	00
Mirzah Sultan Hamed	28	00	00
Mirzah Babor	38	00	00
Mirzah Hyadigar	2	00	00
In Karason, Mirzah Sultan Ozen	38	04	00
Bahady, *or* Pedy Azamon, *and* Muzafa Mirzah, *Brothers, jointly*	1	00	00
Myron Scha	0	00	00
Mirzah Abubakar	0	00	00

Turkymans *of the Hord of* Kara Kuyonlu, *that were Sovereigns of* Persia.

Kara Issuf	14	00	00
Amir Scandar	16	00	00
Joon Scha	32	00	00
Acen Aly	1	00	00

Turkymans *of the Hord of* Akuyonlu, *that were Sovereigns of* Persia.

Ozun Acen Beg	11	00	00
Sultan Kalil	0	06	00
Yacub Beg	12	10	00
Baysangor Mirzah	1	00	00
Rostambek	5	06	00
Haymed Beg	1	00	00
Alwan Beg	1	00	00
Morad Beg	1	00	00

Scha Ismael Sophy, *and his Race, Sovereigns of* Persia.

Scha Ismael Sophi	20	00	00
Scha Thamas	53	00	00

Scha

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Scha Ismael	1	00	00
Scha Mahamed, *the Blind*	7	00	00
Scha Abas	40	00	00
Scha Sephi	14	00	00
Scha Abas *II.*	22	00	00
Scha Sephi *II.*	30	00	00
Scha Ossen, *now living.*			

A

Brief Account

Of the Kingdom of Harmuz, *or* Ormuz, *and of its Kings, 'till it was subdu'd by the* Portugueses, *extracted from the History written by* Torunxa, *King of that City.*

TOrunxa, King of *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, having compos'd a Book in his *Persian* Tongue, both in Prose and Verse, which he calls *Scha Noma*, that is, a Relation of the King or Kings, and wherein he treats of the first Original of that Kingdom, and the Kings his Predecessors, he begins his History at *Adam*. For my Part, I shall reduce to a few Leaves the Substance of what he swells out to a considerable Volume, and with my usual Brevity speak of the first founding of that Kingdom, the Number of Kings, their orderly Succession, and whatsoever more may be of Use, and not to be omitted.

Torunxa gives two very different Relations of the erecting of that Kingdom of *Harmuz*, and the Creation of its first King, leaving every Man to chuse that he likes best. He tells us that an *Arabian* Prince, whose Name was *Mahamed*

Mahamed Dram Ku, lineally descended from the ancient Stock of the Kings of *Sabah*, a Province in *Arabia*, where the Queen that went to visit *Solomon* reign'd, being ambitious to extend his Dominions, as generally Monarchs are, departed his own Lands; and ranging about with arm'd Force, subdu'd those about him, without stopping, 'till he came to the Shore of the *Persian* Gulph, by the *Portugueses* call'd the Gulph of *Ormuz* and there perswaded his Men to cross over the Sea with him, assuring them of Success on the *Persian* Side, where he intended to build a *Bandel*, or Sea-port Town, which should be more renown'd, and of greater Trade, than that of *Soar*, a Port on the Coast of *Arabia*, upon the same Gulph, then much frequented by Merchants, and tho' now by the Injury of Time reduc'd to an inconsiderable Place, yet the Conveniency of its Situation, and the Ruins still remaining, do testifie it was formerly a Place of Note, and such I believ'd it to have been, when I saw it.

Having fixt this Resolution, he mov'd with all his Men to *Kalayat*, a Port in *Arabia*, on the *Persian* Gulph, near Cape *Rozalgat*, where having provided all Necessaries, he embark'd with all his Followers, and crossing the Gulph, arriv'd at *Jasques*, a Place well known on the Coast of *Persia*, and running along it to the Northward, put into *Kostek*, another Port there. *Scha Mahamed* had left a Son of his at *Kalayat*, attended by a *Wazir*, or Vizier, a discreet Man, with Orders, that in case any Misfortune befel him on the other Side, he should secure that Port for his Retreat. He landed his Men at *Kostek*, and seeking about for some proper Place to settle on, was informed

form'd that a little further up, there was one very fit and commodious for his Design. He march'd thither, and having maturely consider'd and liking it, stay'd there, mark'd out and founded a City, divided the Land, which was not very populous, as he thought fit, and coin'd Mony, whence he had the Name of *Dram Ku*. He had with him a Son call'd *Soleymon*, through whose Industry the City increas'd and prosper'd very much, and there *Scha Mahamed* resided, governing in Peace and Justice, and being a Man of good Temper, wise and brave, the Governours of *Schiras* and *Kermon*, his Neighbours, maintain'd a strict Amity with him. Some Years after the building of *Harmuz*, *Scha Mahamed* dy'd, leaving that City in a prosperous Condition to his Son *Soleymon*.

The other Account *Turon Scha* gives of the Original of this Kingdom of *Hormuz* is thus. When *Scha Mahamed*'s Father was King in *Arabia*, being at War with another, he lost a Battle, and not thinking himself safe in *Arabia*, cross'd the *Persian* Gulph, and landing at *Mogostan* in *Persia*, settled there, with his Son *Mahamed*, who had bore him Company. At that time a tyrannical Prince reign'd in those Parts, who besides the other Wrongs he did his Subjects, oblig'd them to give him the first Night's Lodging with every Maid that was to be marry'd. *Mahamed*, tho' young, had a great Spirit, and a generous Soul, and therefore taking Compassion on the Oppression of those People, he offer'd to deliver them, tho' it cost him his Life, which he perform'd after this Manner. He pretended to marry a Maiden of Quality, out of the Town, and being himself handsome, and as yet beardless, cloath'd

cloath'd himself in a Woman's Habit, but well arm'd underneath, and thus disguis'd and well attended, they brought him in the Evening to the King, who supposing him to be the Maid he expected, shut himself up with him in a Room, little thinking what he did. *Mahamed* pretending to be bashful, endeavour'd to gain Time the best he could, 'till a fair Opportunity offer'd, which he laid hold of, and stabb'd him dead. Then hasting out of the Chamber, he acquainted those who waited for him with what he had done, and they immediately proclaim'd Liberty. This Service was so acceptable to all those People, that in Return they agreed to confirm on him the Dignity and Title of the murder'd Tyrant. Thus *Mahamed* was declar'd King, and took the Stile of *Scha Mahamed*, signifying King *Mahamed*, adding the Name of *Dramku*, on account of the Mony he presently coin'd. Being thus created King, the better to improve his Dominions, he founded the City *Harmuz*, in a Plain of the same Name, whence all the Kingdom was so call'd, and behav'd himself, as was said above, 'till his Death. This is the most likely Original, the Reader may chuse which he pleases.

Upon the Death of *Scha Mahamed Dramku*, first King of *Harmuz*, his Son *Soleymon* succeeded, and was the second King. He was affable, and well belov'd of all Men for his Virtue and Justice, which gain'd him great Renown, and having reign'd many Years in Peace, he dy'd and left the Crown to his Son *Iza*, the Third King, who prov'd a good Prince, and under him his People enjoy'd Peace and Prosperity. He made his People apply

apply themselves to Tillage, and planting of Palm-Trees, being himself very assisting to them, by his Goodness and Favour; and they, in Gratitude, sometimes hazard'd their Lives and Fortunes to serve him, so that he considerably extended his Dominions, and dying was succeeded by his Son

Laxkary, the fourth King, as good as his Father, a Lover of Justice, and Protector of the Poor, by which Means he gain'd the Affections of his Subjects. Among the rest he had a Son, call'd *Kaykobad*, to whom for his excellent Qualities, he resign'd the Crown, and retir'd himself from Court, to lead a solitary Life, where he dy'd some Years after.

Kaykobad, the Fifth King, no way degenerated from his Predecessors, but was a Lover of Justice, supported the Needy, curb'd the Great Ones, and dying left the Throne to his Son,

Iza, the Sixth King, and second of that Name, who was a martial Man, undertook some Warlike Expeditions, which prov'd successful. The Kingdom of *Harmuz* prosper'd under him, and at his Death devolv'd to his Son,

Mamud, the Seventh King, a good Prince, and had many Children. It was the Custom of the Kings of *Harmuz*, for their own greater Security, and to prevent Commotions, to place all their Kindred, who might aspire to the Crown, in Forts and other Places, remote from their Residence, where they continu'd 'till farther Orders from the King. For this Reason, *Mamud*, of whom we here treat, had plac'd a Nephew of his, call'd *Mir Schabadin Molongh*, in the Fortress of *Gat*, which is in *Persia*, and in the Lands of *Brahem* and *Mostagam*,

Mostagam, as were several others possess'd by the Kings of *Harmuz*, and subject to the *Portugueses* in *Persia*. *Mamud* was inform'd, that his Nephew contriv'd to kill him, and order'd him to be secur'd, designing to put him to Death, if the Treason were prov'd; but *Mir Schabadin Molongh* understanding it, fled to the Fortress of *Scugon*, where he was well receiv'd and caress'd by the Governour, who also marry'd him to a Daughter of his own, by whom *Schabadin* had a Son, call'd *Nocerat Regbdar*, and a Daughter nam'd *Setalkatum Schahadin*. In the mean while *Mamud* dy'd at *Harmuz*, and his Son

Schaxanxa succeeded him, being the Eighth King. He persecuted *Molongh*, but notwithstanding all his Endeavours could not get him into his Hands. After some Years, great Numbers of Men came out of the Lands of *Hyr*, making an Irruption into those of *Harmuz*. *Schaxanxa* march'd out to oppose them, tho' with a Force much inferior to theirs. *Mir Schabadin Molongh* understanding the ill Condition his Uncle was in, and thinking this a proper Opportunity to be reconcil'd to him, with his Father-in-Law's Leave, gather'd all the Forces he could, and join'd *Schaxanxa*. After kissing his Foot, he fell back and follow'd him, attended by his Troops, but the Uncle made him come up to his Side, with Tokens of much Affection. Being come up with their Enemies, they engag'd, and in the Battle *Schaxanxa*, King of *Harmuz* was slain, whereupon

Mir Schabadin Molongh was proclam'd King, being the Ninth. He prosecuted the War against the People of *Hyr*, whom he entirely defeated, and then return'd to *Harmuz*; where he

he rul'd, to the general Satisfaction of the People. He marry'd his Daughter *Set Alkatun Schabadin* to *Amir Seyfadin Ben Azar*, Son to his Brother *Aly*, King of the Island of *Keys*. Soon after this Match, *Aly* dy'd, and the People of *Keys*, at the Instanee of *Mir Schabadin*, King of *Harmuz*, receiv'd *Amir Seyfadin* for their King, who immediately repair'd thither, with his Wife. Not long after dy'd *Mir Schabadin Molongh*, King of *Harmuz*, and one *Rex Scharear*, his *Wazir*, or Vizier, usurp'd the Kingdom. The People of *Keys*, as soon as they heard of the Death of *Molongh*, and the Revolt of *Scharear*, depos'd *Amir Seyfadin* from the Throne, and he fearing they might also take his Life, made haste out of the Island, and went away for *Harmuz*, where he was well receiv'd by all Men. *Scharear*, who had usurp'd the Crown, was then in the Fortress of *Kaream*, whither *Seyfadin* hasted. *Scharear*, who was in the Place, with ten of his Kindred, took up Arms, and bid every Man shift for himself, and sell his Life dear; but he and they were all kill'd, and *Seyfadin* remain'd possess'd of the Throne, and was the Tenth King.

The first thing he did was the marrying of three Daughters, *Rex Scharear* left, to three of the prime Men in his Court. Then calling to Mind, how he had been us'd by the People of *Keys*, he made War on them, carry'd over his Forces into their Island, and overthrew them, killing many and taking some of the Heads, whom he carry'd away with him; and putting into the Island of *Gerun*, now called *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, then not inhabited, slew them there on a Mountain, thence call'd *Kery Kostoron*, that is the Mountain of the Slain, which Name it preserves to this Day.

He

He went thence to *Harmuz*, where he spent the rest of his Life in Peace, and was succeeded by his Nephew,

Schabadin Mamud, the Eleventh King, and Second of the Name, Son to *Iza*, who enjoy'd Peace all his Days, and did nothing remarkable; but at his Death left the Crown to his Nephew,

Amir Roknadin Mamud, the Twelfth King, under whom *Harmuz* prosper'd very much. He kept numerous and good Forces, which gain'd him considerable Victories, and enlarged his Dominions, extending them as far as *Zafar*. He reign'd 35 Years, and dy'd in that of the *Hegira*, 676, of CHRIST, 1278. His Son,

Amir Seyfadin Nocerat, the Thirteenth King, ascended the Throne, and was oppos'd by two Brothers of his own, call'd *Amir Kodbadin Thabatan*, and *Amir Moehzadine Fulad*, or *Pulad*; and tho' most of the Troops favour'd *Nocerat*, yet could he not prevail against his Brothers, who oblig'd him, and his Mother *Babi Banek*, to fly the Kingdom. *Babi Banek* went away to *Kermon*, which Province was then govern'd by *Sultan Gelaladin Suraget Mex*, who gave her a very honourable Reception, and such a Supply of Forces, as restor'd her Son *Nocerat* to the Throne. However his Brothers did not give over molesting of him, but he took *Amir Moehzadin Fulad* and put him to Death. *Mir Kodbadin Thakanson*, the other Brother, being supported by one *Malek Seyfadin Abubakra Haony*, invaded *Hormuz*, and coming to a Battle with *Nocerat*, at *Denu*, defeated him, and he fled to *Komzara*, and thence in a *Tarranqui*, which is a light Boat, pass'd

pass'd over to *Lapht*, a Port and Town in the Island *Broct*, by the *Portugueses* generally call'd *Queixome*. When *Nocerat* was departed the Kingdom, the two Companions vary'd so much, that *Malek Seyfadin* kill'd *Kobadin*; and the People and Soldiers disapproving of *Malek*'s Proceedings, call'd home *Amir Seyfadin Nocerat*, and restor'd him to the Throne, expelling *Malek*. *Nocerat* being thus again possess'd of the Kingdom, two other of his Brothers, call'd *Amir Masand* and *Amir Turkon Scha*, aspiring to the Crown, murder'd him basely, and with him, his Sisters, *Bibi Banek* and *Bibi Neyty*. *Amir Seyfadin Nocerat* reign'd Twelve Years, and died in that of the *Hegira* 689, which was of CHRIST 1291.

Masand, having kill'd his Brother, possess'd himself of the Kingdom, as 14th King. He was of a martial Temper, and brave; but so cruel and stern, that he was soon sensible he had incurr'd the Hatred of all Men, which made him afraid of his Person, and therefore he put to Death many of the Nobles and Commons; whereupon most of the Men of Note repair'd to *Amir Bahadin Agaz Seyfin*. This Man had been Slave to *Nocerat*, the late King, who reposing much Confidence in him, had in his Life-time made him *Wazir* or Visier of *Kalagat*, a Port in *Arabia* above spoken of. He pitying the Sufferings and Calamities of the Kingdom of *Harmuz*, rais'd Forces, and transporting them over the Gulph of *Persia*, march'd towards *Amir Masand*, whom he fought and defeated. *Masand* fled to *Kermon*, and remov'd thence to *Syrion*, where he died several Years after, having Reign'd but Three.

Mir

Mir Bahadin Ayaz Seyfin, who, as has been said, had been a Slave to *Nocerat*, having routed *Masand*, took upon him the Government, as 15th King, and went about to Reform and bring Things into better Order, but was hinder'd by the Troubles that ensu'd; for *Mir Turkan Scha* and *Mir Saliak*, two Brothers to the banish'd *Masand*, held Correspondence with him, designing to restore him to the Throne. *Ayaz* being inform'd of it, seiz'd them, and chopt off their Heads, by which Means he had some Quiet. But in the Year of the *Hegira* 700, which was of CHRIST 1302, great Swarms of *Turks* coming out of *Turkestan*, possess'd themselves of many Lands in *Persia*, and breaking into the Kingdom of *Kermon*, came down from thence to that of *Harmuz*, destroying all as they went; and yet would that have been tolerable, had not the Wealth they found in those Parts invited them to come so often, that the *Harmuzians* no longer able to bear that Oppression, resolv'd to abandon those Lands, as they did. The Island of *Queixome*, or *Broct*, lies near to the Continent of *Persia*, divided from it by a narrow Arm of the Sea, being about 25 Leagues in Length, and two or three in Breadth. Thither *Ayaz* order'd the *Harmuzians* to pass over, which they readily obey'd, taking along with them all they had sav'd from the Fury and Violence of the *Turks*. When they were got over unto the Island, after some Days rest, *Ayaz* went out again, and ranging about the Gulph of *Persia*, sought for some convenient Island among those there are in that Sea, where he might settle with his People. He came to one that was Desart, two Leagues distant from that of *Queixome*, on a Point whereof was an old

Man, whose Name was *Gerun*, with his Wife, and liv'd there upon Fishing, furnishing the Ships that sail'd from *India* to *Keys*, or from *Keys* to *India*, with what he caught; and they giving him in return, Rice, Cloth, and other Things, for Cloathing and Sustenance. This *Gerun* understanding to what End *Ayaz* was looking for an Island, advis'd him to go over thither, because he would find no other so fit for his Turn. *Ayaz* having view'd it, he resolv'd to beg it of the King of *Keys*, to whom it belong'd, as did all the others in the Gulph of *Persia*. *Keys*, so call'd by the *Arabs* and *Persians*, and by the *Portugueses*, *Quays*, is a small Island, seated in the midst of the Gulph of *Bazora*, well wooded and water'd, once the Head of a Kingdom, tho' now not inhabited, since the Trade is fallen off, for fear of the *Noutaquis* and *Nichelus*, two sorts of Pyrates, continually infesting that Sea. It formerly had all the Trade that has been since remov'd to *Ormuz*, having lost all by the Wars, and scarce retain'd its Name. The Island of *Gerun* was subject to *Neyn*, then reigning in *Keys*. Whilst *Ayaz* was there, there came over a *Mulah*, or sort of Religious Man, call'd *Scheque Ismael*, born in a Village near the City *Lar* in *Persia*, who us'd every Year to go all about those Islands, a begging for himself and for the Poor of his Village. *Ayaz* discours'd him, and finding he was sufficiently qualify'd, thought fit to employ him to the King of *Keys*, to obtain of him that Island, either given, or sold, that he might go over to it with his People, promising the *Mulah* a considerable Reward for his Pains. He undertook it, and manag'd so well, that the King would have given him the Island *Gratis*, which

which he would not accept of, but that it should be sold for a certain Sum of Money. For this Service, it ever after remain'd an establish'd Custom for the Kings of *Harmuz* every Year to give the Descendants of that *Mulah* some certain Acknowledgement, which I my self have sometimes seen them come to demand. Having obtain'd the Island of *Gerun*, *Ayaz* and his People went over to Live there, and remembring their Native Country, they gave it the same Name of *Harmuz* or *Ormuz*, tho' the *Persians* and *Arabs* generally call it *Gerun*. However, the ancient *Harmuz* on the Continent lost not its Name, but retains it to this Day. Those who Sail the *Indian* Seas generally divide the Gulph of *Persia* into two Parts. The one they call the Gulph of *Harmuz*, which commences at *Guadel* in *Persia*, and Cape *Rozolgate* in *Arabia*. The other is the Gulph of *Bazora*, which is from *Harmuz*, or *Gerun*, upwards, as far as the City of *Bazora*, which is at the bottom of the Gulph, where the two famous Rivers, *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, being united, fall into the Sea. In the midst between these two, tho' the Distance be not equal, for the first is about One hundred Leagues in Length, and the other near Two hundred, lies this Island of *Harmuz*, or *Gerun*, as a Boundary, being betwixt Six and Seven Miles in Compass. It is Five Miles from the nearest Part of *Persia*, which is *Dozar*, and Nine Leagues from the Coast of *Arabia*; this Side is not so clean for great Ships as the *Persian*, but yet Navigable. This small Island has some Things very remarkable, some whereof I will briefly recount for the Reader's Satisfaction. Formerly, this Island *Gerun* was on Fire, which left it so uncouth,

couth, that it is amazing to those that behold it. In it is a high Mountain, that crosses it from Sea to Sea, running East and West. From the Foot of it to the North Point, where the City and Fort stand, being about a Mile, is a Plain somewhat more Level than the rest, but beyond the Mountain there is nothing but horrid Hills, Clifts, and Rocks. It yields abundance of very transparent Mineral Salt, and extraordinary pure Sulphur; some Mines whereof were discover'd whilst I was there, and a considerable Quantity taken out. During the Winter Season, which some Years lasts long, the Water runs down from the Mountain, and spreads over all the Plain about the City, which afterwards in the Summer, the Sun being there excessive Hot, is naturally converted into Salt. It is wonderful, that this City, which is in Twenty seven Degrees and a half of North Latitude, should in Summer be subject to such prodigious Heats, that they are almost intolerable; and the extremity is such, that it will scarce be believ'd but by such as have had Experience of them. There are in this Island three over-flowing Springs, gushing from several Parts at the Foot of the Mountain, which make three several Rivulets of pure clear Water, but as Salt as that in the Sea; and of this in the very Stream, the Sun makes Salt, which grows so hard, that I have several times gone a Horseback on it, without breaking it, the Water running underneath. Both the Mineral Salt, which is palpably found to grow, and the other Sort, are very Medicinal, but only that which is made of the Water by the Heat of the Sun is us'd for Seasoning of Meat; because the Mineral is so sharp, that instead of preserving Flesh, it corrodes and spoils

spoils it, or any other Thing it is us'd with. However, some Ships, and particularly those that come from *Cochin*, take in their Ballast of it to carry to *Bengale*, where for want of other, it is worth Money, for there is none made in all those Parts, except in the Island of *Sundiva*. It is likely many Provinces in *China* suffer the same want, the Salt there being the King's chief Revenue, and therefore most of the Gammons the *Portugueses* carry thence into *India* are salted or preserv'd with Allum. Leaving the Salt, lest we become insipid; the Island of *Gerun* or *Harmuz* has two *Bandels*, or Bays, one to the East and the other to the West, both of them so form'd that they terminate together in a sandy Point, where is now the *Portugueses* Fort, *(Note the Time when the Author writ, as we have observ'd elsewhere)* and it is one of the best in the Eastern Parts, and of most Consequence. There formerly liv'd the old Man *Gerun*, from whom the Island had its Name. It has no fresh Water, but what is gather'd from the Rain in Cisterns, whereof there are many, and they are a great Relief to the Poor People in Summer. Only at *Torunpuque*, which is a Peice of white Salt Clay Ground, at the end of the Island, there is a little fresh Water, made use of to water the King's, and the *Wazir*'s, or Vizier's Orchards, each of them having one there, which produce whatsoever is planted in Perfection, contrary to all the rest of the Island, where there is neither Tree nor Plant, unless in the Plain some prickly Shrubs bearing a Fruit like Haws, green all the Year about, which they call *Conar*, and some few Mallows on the Ground, in the Spring; also some purging *Senna*, which they call *Senna Moki*, that is

Senna of Moka. Of the salt Clay, they make drinking Cups, and Pots to hold Water, which when become fresh, keep the Water cool and give it a curious Taste. I remember, that when I was at *Harmuz*, in the Year 1596, *Ferragut Scha*, the King then reigning, who was ancient enough, fell in Love with the Wealth of one *Bifatima*, an old Woman, Widow to one *Rex Bradadin*, his Subject, who had been *Wazir*, or Vizier in the Country of *Mogostan*, on the Continent of *Persia*. She was reported to be worth a vast Sum of Mony, whereupon he offer'd to take her to Wife, but she to divert him from those Thoughts, answer'd, she would marry him when he had made a new Garden, and found another Spring at *Turunpuque*; looking upon it as impracticable. However the old Man incited by Avarice, lost no Time, but planted a better Orchard than the other he had there before, and discover'd a good Stream of fresh Water; and yet he got not the Money. Near this Place of *Torunpuque*, among some Rocks, at a small Distance from the Sea, gushes out some brackish Water, which the Native *Harmuzians* call *Abdormon*, signifying medicinal Water, which drank has a purging Quality, carrying off all Foulness; and abundance of People, at a certain time of the Year, repair thither, and drink it as often as they think convenient, and when they think they are well cleans'd to be fully convinc'd of it, they eat a little Orange or Lemmon, and if they immediately void the Seeds, or Kernels of it downwards, they conclude they are sufficiently purg'd, and then eat. The Island affords much Game, as *Gazelles*, Creatures like Wild-Goats, *Adibes*, which are a Sort of Foxes,

Foxes, Patridges, Turtle-Doves, and other Sorts of Fowl, and it is wonderful, that the Island affording no fresh Water, but what has been mention'd, it is not yet known where these Creatures drink. Some pretend that being excessive thirsty, they drink salt Water, and others have invented no less unlikely Fables. The City is not very large, tho' it once was, but the best and noblest Part of it was blown up, to make a spacious Place of Arms, before the Fort. The Houses are well built, of a Stone, which is not very hard, found in the Island, and of that taken out of the Sea, as has been said before, because it is light, and best to withstand the Earthquakes the Island is subject to; and with Mortar made of a fine white Lime, whereof there is great Plenty on the Continent, which they call *Gueche*. There is another Red Sort in the Island, but not so good. They make use of another Cement for Buildings, whose Foundations lye in the Water; or that are to stand against it, which being very strange to us, I will give a short Account of. They call it *Charu*, and it is made of the oldest rotten Dung that can be found in the Dunghils, and having taken off the superficial Part, they make up the rest into round Cakes, which they dry in the Sun, and when thoroughly dry they make a Heap of them and set Fire to it, letting it burn for a certain Time, and what remains is preserv'd. Then taking a Quantity of it, they lay it on a Floor that is hard and clean; and seven or eight *Arabs*, who make that their Profession stand about with each of them a Staff, or Beater in his Hand, with which they beat it, laying on all at once, one of them at every Stroke, reckoning in a Tune-

able Voice, from one to a certain Number, all the others at every Blow answering in the same Tone. Thus they work it to a proper Pitch, and then they use it immediately about the Structure; for if it grows cold, and is kept 'till the next Day, it spoils, and becomes unserviceable. This Cement has a particular Virtue for withstanding of the Water, and continues firm many Years under it. Most of the *Harmuzians* are fair and well shaped; the Men polite and genteel, the Women beautiful. They all speak the *Persian* Tongue, tho' not in Perfection; and are all *Mahomentans*; but some are *Schyays*, who follow *Haly*; other *Sunneys*, Followers of *Mahomet*, and the King is of these. Besides them there are many *Portugueſe* Christians, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Jacobies*, and *Nestorians*; as also Heathen *Baneans* of *Bengala* and *Cambaya*, and about 150 Families of *Jews*. And tho' the Island of it self yields nothing, it is very plentifully supply'd from abroad, and all Things are sold at moderate Rates and by Weight. The Air and Climate is healthy, and there is seldom any Distemper in Summer; for the terrible Heat consumes all peccant Humours with excessive Sweat; but in Autumn they pay for all Disorderss committed in the Summer. To conclude, *Gerun* is a free Mart and Fair, for all the World, where there is continually a Trade for all Commodities that can be desir'd, convey'd thither from several Parts, with a mighty Concourse of Merchants of several Nations, which I do not particularize, that I may return to my Account of the Foundation of *New Harmuz*, which happen'd, as was said above, in the Year of the *Hegira* 700, and of Christ 1302; taking its Name from the

the old *Harmuz*, which it still retains, and in 200 Years throve so fast, as to extend its Dominion over the greatest Part of *Arabia*, much of *Persia*, and all the Gulph, as far as *Bazora*. So it continu'd 'till subdu'd by the *Portugueses*, since which Time it began to decline, by reason of the Oppression and Insolencies of the *Portuguese* Governours and Officers, they being remote from any that can curb them.

Ayaz Ceyfin reign'd ten Years in *Harmuz* or *Gerun*, at the End whereof some say he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 711, which was of CHRIST 1312. Others say, that in the same Year, having settled the Affairs of that new State, he resign'd the Crown to *Amir Ayzadin Gordon Scha*, the Son of *Saldor* and of *Biby Zeyneb*, Grandson to the former Kings, and he return'd to his *Wazir*, or Viziership at *Calagat* in *Arabia*, where he some Time after dy'd in Peace. The Title of *Bibi*, which I have sometimes mention'd, in the *Persian* Tongue signifies the same as Lady, or Madam among us.

Amir Ayzadin Gordon Scha, the sixteenth King of the Number of the old, and second of the *New Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, as soon as he ascended the Throne, thought of ratifying the Peace and Amity with *Neim*, the King of *Keys*, of whom *Ayaz* had the Island. To this End he sent Embassadors, but propos'd such Terms and Conditions, that the King of *Keys* perceiving he intended to alter the Posture of Affairs, resolv'd to prevent him. To this End, he rais'd Forces to invade him, and for the more Surety, made use of the Assistance of *Malek Ayzadin*, Governour of *Schiras*. The principal Motive, among others, the King of *Keys* alledg'd to justifie his making War

War on *Gordon Scha* was, that he detain'd the Ships at *Harmuz*, which were bound from *India* to *Keys*, and by that Means wrong'd him of his Duties and Customs. Being join'd by the Governour of *Schiras*, with a good Number of Men, they both made towards *Harmuz*, whence *Gordon Scha* set out with his Army, and went out to meet them at *Sirmion*, a Village in the Island *Broct* or *Queixome* designing to cut off their Water. Whilst he lay there, News was brought him, that ten Sail bound from *India* for *Keys*, richly laden, were passing between *Harmuz* and *Larek*, an Island four Leagues to the Southward of *Harmuz*, towards *Arabia*. He set out with his Fleet to meet them, and after an Engagement took and carry'd them to *Harmuz*. About this Time the Forces of *Keys* and *Schiras* sailing along in 120 *Terrada*'s, which are small Vessels, all full of Men, and well provided, were near *Sirmion* surpriz'd by a dreadful Storm, which are sometimes very dangerous in that Gulph, and the whole Fleet shatter'd, and the ten Ships that escap'd, put into the little Island of *Augem*, which being very close to that of *Broct*, they both together form a spacious and safe Harbour. Here the King of *Keys* was inform'd of *Gordon Scha*'s having taken the Ships coming from *India*, and being incens'd with this News, he landed his Men, designing, the next Night, to go over to *Harmuz*. *Gordan Scha* having Intelligence of his Design, dispos'd his Forces, being about 12000 Men, posting above one Third of them on the Shore, about one thousand Paces from the City, at a Place call'd *Karú*, proper for the Enemy to land, who accordingly design'd it, but were repuls'd, with the Loss of many Men

Men and Ships, and putting off to Sea they propos'd a Peace, which the *Harmuzians* would not consent to; but on the contrary, *Gordon Scha*, following the Advice of *Sangor Roknadin*, his General, resolv'd to fall upon his Enemies by Surprize, who hearing of it fled, yet not so timely, but that the *Harmuzians* made much Slaughter among them. Thus roughly handled, they return'd to *Keys*, whence in the Year of the *Hegira* 714, which was of CHRIST 1315, they return'd to invade *Harmuz* with a greater Number of Men and Ships, which beset the Island for the Space of four Months so narrowly, that had not *Gordon Scha* provided for it in time, he must have been oblig'd to surrender; but so great a Quantity of Provisions had been brought into the Island, that there was never any want, nor did the Price rise. The King of *Keys* perceiving how little he prevail'd, propos'd a Peace again with a double Meaning, it was hearken'd to, and the said King and *Gordon Scha* agreed to have a Conference on the Shore, to which the King of *Keys* came in a small Boat, and leaping a-shore, he of *Harmuz* went to embrace him, when the other who was strong and able laid hold of and forc'd him into the Boat, and thence into his Ship, and immediately set Sail with all his Fleet, the *Harmuzians* being no way able to obstruct him; and thus he carry'd him away to *Keys*. *Bibi Sultan*, Wife to *Gordon Scha*, seeing what had happen'd, order'd *Malek Guayaradin Dinar*, Son to her Brother *Schanxa*, to take upon him the Government. Five Months after, the King of *Keys* return'd again towards *Harmuz*, bringing King *Gordon Scha* Prisoner with him, in one of his Vessels.

When

When he was about half way, there arose so violent a Tempest, that the whole Fleet was dispers'd into several Parts, and most of the Ships cast away; that wherein *Gordon Scha* was Prisoner being sav'd upon the Shore of *Harmuz*, whither a Multitude of People resorting, they conducted them with much Joy to the City. *Malek Guayaradin Dinar*, who had taken upon him the State of a King, would not submit to him; and therefore *Gordon Scha* took up in the House of one *Konia Mamed Kaleb*, his Secretary; but not thinking himself safe there, he went over that very Night to the Continent of *Persia*, and stay'd in the Fort of *Minab*, which signifies *Enamel*. *Dinar* was apprehensive of his Return, and perceiving that all Men forsook him, and went over to *Gordon Scha*, he left the Island and went away to the Lands of *Makron*, a Kingdom lying between *Persia* and *India*; and *Amir Ayzadin Gordon Scha* return'd to *Harmuz*, where he made his Entry and was peaceably receiv'd, and two Years after, being that of the *Hegira* 717, and of CHRIST 1318, he dy'd, leaving the Throne to his Son

Amir Mobarezadin Baharon Scha, who was the Seventeenth King. The Garrisons in the Forts on the Continent, at the same time proclaim'd his Brother *Scha Kodbadin* King, and as such conducted him from the Fortress of *Barkamin*, where he then was, to that of *Minab*. *Baharon Scha* hearing of these Commotions, made the necessary Preparations, and set out in quest of, and found him with another of his Brothers call'd *Malek Nazomadin*, both whom he defeated, and return'd victorious to *Harmuz*: His Commanders in Chief were *Mir Schabadin Issuf*, and *Mir Taiadin Zanguy-*

Amir

Amir, the one by Sea and the other by Land. These two fell at Variance about their Prince's Favour, disturbing the Country, whereupon the King seiz'd them both. At this Time the King of *Keys* again invaded *Harmuz*; but without any better Success than before, and return'd home dissatisfy'd. Upon this Occasion, the Ring of *Harmuz* had releas'd those two Commanders out of Prison, and *Mir Schabadin Issuff*, thinking himself wrong'd, meditated Revenge. The King was desirous to put an End to the Troubles rais'd by his Brothers, who still molested him; to this Purpose he embark'd with some Forces, to pass over to the Continent, and being hinder'd by contrary Winds, went back to lye in his own House that Night. In the Dead of it *Mir Schabadin Issuf*, with some Horse and Foot, came to the Palace Gate, calling out for him to come out, because *Bibi Sultan Salgor* was landed on the Island, with an arm'd Force. The King came out upon this Uproar, believing what he heard had been true, and was follow'd by his Mother and his Brother *Nazomadin Agen Scha*, who had been reconcil'd to him. *Mir Schabadin Issuf* secur'd them all, and took upon him the Title of King, in the Year of the *Hegira* 718, and of CHRIST 1319.

Hereupon the *Harmuzians* were divided, one Part following *Mir Schabadin Issuf*, and the other *Mir Kodbadin*, Brother to the Prisoner King, who had defeated him, as was said, on the Continent. *Malek Dinor*, who we said had fled towards *Makron*, return'd thence towards *Harmuz*, with a good Body of Men, giving out that he came to assist *Mir Scha Kodbadin*; but when he came to the Island, perceiving that *Mir Schabadin Issuf*'s Party prevail'd,

prevail'd, he made Friends with him. *Bibi Sultan*, Sister to *Dinor*, and *Bibi Nazmalek*, Wife to *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, undertook to reconcile theſe Differences; but *Schabadin*, to ſecure himſelf, cut off the Heads of the Priſoner King, his Mother, and Brother: *Scha Kodbadin* went over to *Kalayat*, with *Bibi Marian*, Wife to *Agaz Ceyſin*. *Schabadin Iſſuf* being now inform'd, that the Forces of *Keys* were ſailing towards him, went out to meet them; but when out, return'd home in a Fright. Neither did the People of *Keys* make any more of it this Time than they had done before. A Year after, *Scha Kodbadin* came from *Kalayat*, with *Malek Gelaladin Queyzy* and *Koaja Jamaladin Neym*, and falling on *Harmuz* unexpected, took it, and ſecur'd *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*.

Mir Scha Kodbadin, the Son of *Gordon Scha*, having made himſelf Maſter of the Iſland and Kingdom of *Harmuz*, immediately put to Death *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, his Wife *Bibi Nazmalek*, and his two Sons *Mir Emadadin Ozen* and *Amir Acen*, who had been Priſoners in the Fortreſs of *Gat*. Not long after, *Malek Geladadin Queyzy* and *Kouaj Gemaladin Neym*, who had reſtor'd *Scha Kodbadin* to the Throne, deſign'd to kill him, and ſecure to themſelves the Throne; *Kodbadin* being inform'd of it, would have ſeiz'd them, but they fled. *Gemaladin Neym* was drown'd, croſſing the Sea, the other with a few Followers retir'd to *Keys*. After this, *Kodbadin* and his Kingdom enjoy'd Peace for Ten Years. *Malek Guayazadin* had ſucceeded on the Throne of *Keys*, upon the Death of the former King. This Man, whilſt *Kodbadin* was in *Mogaſtam*, that is, the Continent of *Perſia*, paſſing the Summer Heats, which

which are insupportable at *Harmuz*, invaded the Island with a good Navy, and had made himself Master of it had it not been defended by *Mahamed Sorkab* and *Ebrahem Salgor*, two of *Kodbadin*'s Porters, to whom he had committed the Guard of it, and who oblig'd the Enemy to retire against their Will. *Scha Kodbadin* being inform'd of it, went over to the Island, and fitted out a Fleet with great Expedition, wherewith he sail'd for *Keys*, assaulted it, and made himself Master of the Island, killing many of the People, and taking King *Malek Guayazadin* and some of his Relations, whom he afterwards put to Death. Then leaving a good Garrison at *Keys*, he return'd towards *Harmuz*, by the way subduing the Island of *Barhen*, much talk'd of throughout the World, as well for the precious Pearls found in its Sea, as for the never failing Springs of fresh Water that rise under it; of both which, since we are come to the said Island, it will be proper to give a short Account.

Baharem *Island described.*

The Island of *Barhen*, or *Baharem*, lies in the Gulph of *Bazora*, between that City and the Island of *Gerun* or *Harmuz*, 100 Leagues distant from each of them, and but little remov'd from the Coast of *Arabia*, opposite to the Port of *Katifa*, which is in the Government of *Lacok*, one of those the *Turk* is possess'd of in those Parts. It is inhabited by *Arabs*, only the Garrison and *Wazir*, or Governor, being *Persians*, having belong'd to the Kingdom of *Harmuz*, but ever since the Year 1602 possess'd by the King of *Persia*. The Land is pleasant, and abounds in Fruit, especially Dates, whereof it produces great Quantities, but little Wheat, and some Barley. Rue, which is the most common Food, next

to

to Dates, is carried thither from *Harmuz*, of what that Place receives from *India*. It has several Waters, rather brackish than fresh, the best whereof is that of *Nanyah*, being a Parcel of extraordinary deep Wells in the midst of the Island. The next is that which they take under the Sea, after this manner. *Manama*, a Town seated on the Sea Coast, is the chiefest in the Island. In the Sea before this Place, at about three Fathom or three Fathom and a half Depth, there gush out certain Springs of pure fresh Water, free from any ill Quality. There are Men, who live by bringing it up in Skins, with much dexterity and ease, Diving down, and sell it very cheap. Having enquir'd into the Reason of it, some of the oldest *Mahometans* in the Island, with whom I discours'd about it, told me, That those Springs, in former Times, were upon the Land, remote from the Sea, which having broke in, had overwhelm'd them, as they now are; and hence I have Reason to believe the Island had the Name of *Barhen*, which in *Arabick* signifies two Seas, from *Bar*, which is, the Sea, and *Hen*, two; as it were to express, a fresh and a salt one; tho' it might also be taken from two considerable Streams which cross the Island; but the first seems to be the better. The Island of *Barhen* is famous for the many and precious Pearls taken up in the neighbouring Seas, which I will briefly speak of, because so universally known. There are two considerable Pearl Fisheries in the East; the one in the *Persian* Gulph, which is this of *Barhen*; and the other at *Manar* in *India*, in the Channel that runs between the Island of *Ceylon*, and the Continent we call *Tuto Kory*, or more properly *Tutan Kory*, which is Cape *Cory*, so call'd by

Fresh Springs under the Sea.

by the Natives, and by the *Portugueses*, *Comory*, on the Coast of *Coromandel*, or *Coro Bandel*, signifying, the Port of Rice, because of the great Quantities shipp'd off there for other Ports. The Pearl Fishery at *Barhen* begins some Years in *June*, but generally in *July*, and lasts all that Month and *August*. There joyn together about 200 *Terradas*, or Vessels of theirs, 100 of *Barhen*, 50 of *Julful*, and 50 of *Nikhelu*. They generally go a Fishing to *Katar*, a Port on the Coast of *Arabia*, 10 Leagues to the Southward of the Island *Barhen*. As soon an Oyster is brought up, they open it, and take out the Pearl. The Pearls of this Sea surpass all others in Goodness and Weight, I say in Weight, because two Pearls, one of this Place and one of another, being weigh'd, tho' equal in Size and Shape, that of *Barhen* will always be found heaviest. The Pearls publickly sold in this Island every Year amount to 500000 Ducats, besides the Value of 100000 more smother'd for fear of the *Wazir*, or Governor's Extortions. The Trade of this Island was worth to the *Portuguese* Governor of *Harmuz* above 4000 Ducats a Year, besides his own Dealings. In Selling and Buying, the Term of Dealing is by *Querates*, which we call Caracts, and by *Abas*, three of which make a Caract; as also by *Meticales*, each of them being 24 Caracts; and by this they sell the Seed Pearl, after the Rate of 20, 30, 40, *&c.* to a *Metica* The *Barhenians* fish with a Stone, which carries them down from 12 to 15 Fathom in Depth. Besides this general Fishery at *Katar*, at the Time above mention'd, there are others of less Note in *September*, at *Nikhelu*, *Barhen*, and *Julfar*; as also at *Mascate*, *Teue*, and *Rozalgate*, all within the Gulph of *Harmuz*; but

Pearl Fishery in Barhen.

these last are of little Value, tho' sometimes considerable enough for the Undertakers.

Pearl Fishery at Chilao, *or* Manar.

The Pearl Fishery at *Chilao*, so they call the second I nam'd at first, because formerly perform'd in a Port of that Name, in the Island of *Ceylon*, which was so call'd for this Reason, because *Chilao*, in the *Chingala* Language, which is that of the said Island, signifies, Fishery. This falls out in *April* and the beginning of *May*, a Month or two before that of *Barhen*, being the time when the Sun first begins to draw near to the Equinoctial, and consequently the Summer begins there sooner, and the Sea is then calmer. Between 4 and 500 Vessels meet, each of them carrying from 60 to 90 Men; one third of them are Fishers, whom they call *Harvas*, that is, Divers; the others they call *Mandecas*, that is, Helpers, two for each Diver. The Vessels are all distributed to certain Parts, call'd *Peitacas*, where every Diver lays the Oysters he fetches up apart; the Oysters they call *Chipo*, which are not to be open'd till a Day appointed by those who Govern there, which is after the Days of the Fishery, being generally two *Balyos*, and every *Balyo* is 8 Days. They every Day compute how much has been taken at 100, or 200, or 1000 *Chipos*, or Oysters for every Vessel, to know when they have done enough, because they will not far exceed the usual Proportion, to keep up the Value of Pearl; and when two *Balyos* do not suffice, they allow one, or a half more. The Fishers or Divers have Wages, besides that all they take is their own, bating that every Day they give the Owner of the Vessel one Draught, which is to be at the said Owner's Choice, and at the End of the Week they all give him a whole Day.

Day. The *Nayque* of *Madureh*, who is Lord of the Country they inhabit, has one Day of the whole Fishery. They also us'd to give another Day, for Pin-Money, to the *Portuguese* Governor of *Manar*'s Wife, he having the Command of that Sea, but this was taken away by the *Jesuits* who govern'd all there. They Fish from six to eight Fathom deep, Diving with a Stone. Two *Portuguese* Galliots us'd to guard this Fishery, because some *Malabar* Vessels had some times disturb'd the Fishers. The People that resort thither, which among Merchants, Servants, Officers and Fishers, may amount to between fifty and sixty thousand Men, form a Camp, which is pitch'd where the Fishery is carry'd on; for that is not always in the same Place, but sometimes in one and sometimes in another. What is taken every Year amounts to above a Million and a half of Gold. When the Fishery is over, Proclamation is made to open the *Chipo*, or Oysters, which being done, and the Fish thrown away and the Pearl sav'd, they go over to *Tutan Cory*, where the Fair is kept, beginning about the middle of *June*, and lasting *July*, *August* and *September*, and sometimes all *October*. The Pearl is bought and sold in the *Patare*, which is like a Custome-house, by Brokers appointed by the *Nayque*, who has four *per Cent.* of all that is bought there of the Seller; for the Buyer is free; and he has 48 Hours after the Purchase, to return the Goods, if they do not please him; all which is perform'd with much Ease and Integrity. The conceal'd Pearl that is privately sold out of the *Patare* is considerable, and free from Duty, or the Liberty of Return. The Method and Weight is by *Chegos*, very easy, but ingenious and sharp.

There is some Pearl in *China*, but not fine, being only rough and mishapen, which some *Portugueses* have got Estates by. So much has been writ concerning Pearl, that there remains little to add to it. However, with Submission to those who have treated of it, I cannot but say, it seems to me very unreasonable to believe and assert, that the Pearl is form'd of Dew, because there are very many Objections against it; as the Oyster it self, which being weighty and void of all Motion, cannot rise above the Water to receive the said Dew; much less can it receive any pure at the Bottom, since it must pass through so much Salt Water. Besides, Experience teaches us, that the Oysters which are taken out of the deepest Water have generally the most and the greatest Pearls, and those in the shalloweſt the least and smallest, which would not be so, were they form'd of the Dew; for then those neareſt the Superfices would receive most and the purest of it, and the Sun would have the greater effect on them; for his Power, as an Agent, would be more effectual on what was nearer than what was remoter, whereas we find the contrary. My Opinion is confirm'd by what I have often seen and try'd by my self, and in the Company of Christians, Mahometans and Heathens, all of them very knowing in what relates to Pearls, having taken from the Oyster Shells, with Instruments made for that purpose, Pearls growing from those very Shells, which either for want of Time, or the Disposition of the Matter, or of Nature, or for some other Cause, were not arriv'd to Perfection, but were still incorporated in the said Shell, of whose Substance they were form'd; and when taken out, polish'd and wrought, they appear'd as if they had been produc'd per-

fect

fect by Nature, and ſold at very high Rates. This makes me certainly conclude, that they proceed and are form'd from the very Subſtance of the Shell, and not from any outward Thing, this being very probable, whereas the other Opinion is liable to many Contradictions. This is much confirm'd by the likeneſs there is in Subſtance and Colour between the Pearl and the Oyſter Shell. Beſides, it has been obſerv'd, and is moſt certain, that the Fleſh of all the Oyſters which have Pearl is bruis'd and cruſh'd, as it might be where there are any greater or leſſer Excreſcencies in the Shell, whereas thoſe which have no Pearl are ſound and entire, as thoſe may be which have it, but extremely ſmall, which is no ſmall Argument to back my Opinion, yet I ſubmit it to able Judgments. However, I cannot but admire at thoſe Phyſicians, who to this Day, in their Recipes, order Pearls that are drill'd, or not drill'd, making much Account of that Difference, whoſe Miſtake is unpardonable, ſince they cannot be excus'd by Ignorance, which cannot be in this Caſe, or by Cuſtom, which is not allowable; ſince it is well known that all Pearls are alike for the uſe of Phyſick, whether whole, or drill'd by Art, for none have Holes naturally.

Let us now go on with *Scha Kodbadin*, who having, as we ſaid above, poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Barhen*, took alſo *Katifa*, *Karga*, and *Derab*, and ſubdu'd all the Coaſts of *Perſia* and *Arabia*, whence he receiv'd a conſiderable Yearly Income. *Scha Kodbadin* had a Brother, call'd *Nazomadin*, whom he lov'd and honour'd in a great Degree, and he in Return contriv'd to Murder him. *Kodbadin* went over to the Continent to Hunt, and being at that Sport at *Rudxur*, *Nazomadin* and all his Confederates pre-

tending to follow a Hare towards *Moridon*, got themselves far from the King, and came to the Shore of the *Dozar*, a Rivulet on the Continent of *Persia*, opposite to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*, 5 Miles distant from it, and embarking there, with others that lay ready for him on *Tarranques*, a sort of small Vessels, went over to the Island, which being destitute of the Prime Men, who were gone over with the King, was easily subdu'd; and as soon as possess'd of it, he stil'd himself King. *Scha Kodbadin* being inform'd which way his Brother was gone, pursu'd him full Speed; but when he came to the Side of the River *Dozar*, his Brother was landed on the Island; so that being unable, at that time to proceed any farther, he staid on the Continent, and withdrew to *Kolongo*, whence he sent Expresses to all his Dominions, demanding Men and other Assistance to reduce his Brother. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 745, of Christ 1345.

Malek Nazomadin having possess'd himself of the Island of *Harmuz*, and stil'd himself King, sent immediately Advice thereof to all the Dominions of that Crown, requiring the *Wazirs*, or Governors to own and submit to him, and promising great Rewards to such as comply'd. However, none answer'd his Expectation, except some Towns of *Kirakistan*, and these as soon as the Summer came on, sent to ask some Forces of him, to defend their Palm-Tree Groves against the Troops of *Kodbadin*, which infested them, so that they could not gather their Dates, which are the main Support of all those Lands; giving him to understand, that if he delay'd, they should be oblig'd to submit themselves to *Kodbadin*. *Nazomadin*, considering the Condition of those People, resolv'd to go over to the Con-

Continent; but first he sounded the Intentions of the *Wazirs* and Prime Men about *Kobdadin*; however, all his Practices had no Effect on any of them, except one *Homer Soiadin*, who was *Kodbadin*'s Chief Porter, and a Colonel in his Army. *Nazomadin* having gain'd this Man, went over into *Persia*, and advanc'd towards *Kolongon*. *Kodbadin* advanc'd to meet him, they ingag'd, and in the Heat of the Action, *Homer Soiadin* went over to *Nazomadin* with most and the best of the Army. *Scha Kodbadin* perceiving it, immediately retir'd towards *Jazquez*, a Town on the Coast of *Persia*, 40 Leagues from that where he lost the Battle, and crossing the Gulph, went over into *Arabia*, and landed at *Kalayate*, where he continu'd a Year; and by his Presence, that Port throve amain, the Ships bound from *India* to *Harmuz* stopping there. Here he receiv'd Advice, that *Nazomadin* was dead, and had ordain'd in his Will, that the eldest of his two Sons, *Schambe* and *Schadi*, should immediately go over to *Kalayate*, and kissing *Scha Kodbadin*'s Foot, resign the Kingdom into his Hands, because it was his Due; but the young Man did quite contrary. *Kodbadin* being inform'd of his Brother *Nazomadin*'s Death, seem'd to be much concern'd, and perform'd his Obsequies, after their Manner, with extraordinary Pomp, putting himself and all his Followers into Mourning, and writ very loving and consolatory Letters to his Nephews, offering to look upon them as his own Sons. They little regarding him, behav'd themselves after such a Manner in the Government, that the whole Kingdom was scandaliz'd at their Follies and Cruelties. *Kodbadin* hearing of the Disorders of his Nephews, prepar'd to invade them, and as he was sailing over to *Jaquin*, a Town

in *Persia*, inhabited by *Arabs*, as many others there are, there met him a great Number of *Terradas* or Vessels sent by his Nephews in warlike Manner; he ingag'd and defeated them, destroying abundance of the Men. Having obtain'd this Victory, he held on his Voyage to *Costah*, whence came out to meet him, one *Amir Aieb Schamzadin*, a Commander of his, who brought a good Number of Men to serve him from old *Harmuz*. Sailing thence, he made for *Gerun*, or *Harmuz*, and came to an Anchor at *Karu*, on the Coast of that Island, where he landed, and possess'd himself of it. His Nephews perceiving they were undone, and could neither defend themselves, nor fly, deliver'd themselves up to their Uncle, some Persons of Note interposing, and contenting themselves with some moderate Allowance for their Support. The King condescended, and gave them the Island of *Barhen* to live in, with their Followers. *Kodbadin*'s Return considerably advanc'd the Affairs of *Gerun*, or *Harmuz*, which had suffer'd very much under the Government of the two Brothers. Peace ensu'd, Justice was administer'd, the Price of Provisions fell, which till then had been very high; and those who had fled, or been banish'd by the Usurpers, were restor'd to their Houses and Estates. The two Brothers *Schambe* and *Schady* were gone to *Barhen*, where, being of a restless Nature, they began to raise Men, and gather Vessels, in order to invade *Ormuz*. King *Kodbadin* being inform'd of it imbark'd to oppose them, with the greatest Forcehe could make. Being come to *Keys*, where *Hady* then was, he landed his Men; but meeting with much Opposition, he proceeded slowly. Those in the Island were very much streightned, and

the

the King's Men incens'd that they held out so long; and being willing to put an End to that Enterprize, some of them, without Orders, provok'd *Schady* to engage, which he did not refuse, as having the Advantage, and accordingly obtain'd the Victory, killing many of the *Harmuzians*, the King, with such as escap'd, retiring to the Sea, whence he immediately made away for *Harmuz*, and having there recruited his Forces, return'd to *Keys*. *Schady*, not thinking himself safe there, abandon'd the Island, and went away to that of *Barhen*, where his Brother was. The King coming to *Keys* found no Resistance, and having given the Plunder of it to his Soldiers, and left a good Garrison there, return'd to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*, intending to set out again to reduce his Nephews that were at *Barhen*. They, as soon as he was gone, gather'd all the Force they could, and went over to *Keys*, in Hopes to recover it; but when they were half way, most of their Commanders and Soldiers deserted them, and went over to the King. Among the rest were *Schamcadin Mamud*, *Kamaladin Ismael*, and *Naceradin Mocelek*, all Men of the first Rank and Quality. They passing by *Keys*, gave Notice to *Mir Tagah*, who govern'd the Island for King *Scha Kodbadin*, of the coming of the two Brothers *Schady* and *Schambe*, that he might be prepar'd to receive them. Then call'd at *Lapht*, a Port in the Island *Broct* or *Queixome*, where *Sabekadin* was in Garrison; they took him with them to *Harmuz*, lest being suddenly attack'd by the two Brothers he should come to some Misfortune, having but a small Force with him. *Schambe*, and *Schady* were not mov'd by the Desertion of their Officers and Soldiers to desist from their Enterprize; but passing by *Keys*, where

where they were not admitted, arriv'd at *Broct*. The King having been timely advertis'd of their coming, had sent his Forces to *Broct*, which took up their Quarters at *Dargahon*, a Town near *Lapht*. There they had Intelligence of the Arrival of the Enemy, and being resolv'd to attack them, immediately went to Arms, and having waited for them all the Night, at length engag'd them at Break of Day. The King's Party gallantly oppos'd and repuls'd them both by Sea and Land, so that they return'd to *Barhen*, with considerable Loss. The two Brothers being come to their Island, fell at Variance among themselves, each charging the other with the late Disappointment, and the Difference ran so high, that *Schady* imprison'd *Schambe*, and would have put him to Death, but was hinder'd by his Mother, who reconcil'd them, and caus'd *Schambe* to be set at Liberty. He being again loose, departed *Barhen*, went over into *Persia*, and settled near *Schiraz*, in a Village call'd *Fal*, whence the *Reizes*, *Sharafos*, *Noradins*, and *Bradadins*, *Wazirs* and Governours of the Kingdom of *Harmuz*, draw their Original. The Governour of *Schiras* being inform'd of *Schambe*'s Residence at *Fal*, and who he was, sent for him, and shew'd him much Honour and Favour; on Account of the Friendship that had been between his Father and Ancestors, and himself and his Progenitors. This was the Posture of Affairs at *Harmuz*, when the Summer came on, which *Scha Kodbaden* resolv'd to spend at *Nakestam*, a Place in *Mogostam*, on the Continent of *Persia*, which is pleasant and abounds in Water and Fruit, both of them wanting at *Harmuz*. He went over thither with his Followers, and

soon

soon after fell sick and dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 447, of CHRIST 1347.

Turon Scha, Son to *Scha Kodbadin*, succeeded his Father in the Throne of *Harmuz*, and was the Man, who writ the Lives and Actions of the Kings his Predecessors, in the *Persian* Tongue, in Prose and Rhime, not so briefly as I do, but in a large Volume, whence I have collected this short Account. He was a good King, lov'd and honour'd by his People. As soon as seated on the Throne he sent one *Mamud Homer*, a Man of Valour and Experience, to govern the Island of *Keys*; and tho' *Schady*, who was at *Barhen*, knew him to be a good Commander, yet he did not desist from his Design of invading *Keys*. Being come thither, after several Rencounters, and little done in them, he had some underhand Practices with a Kinsman of *Mamud Homer*, with whom he concerted to deliver him up, on the first Opportunity. Having form'd this Conspiracy, *Schady* pretended to come to some Accommodation; and to that end demanded a Conference with *Mamud Homer*, who consented to it more readily than he ought to have done. They had an Interview, *Schady* who had a Design in his Head, continu'd to draw him at some distance from his Men, and then surprizing him before he could defend himself, put out his Eyes, or at least blinded him; a Practice long before and since practis'd by the Kings of *Persia* and *Harmuz* to secure themselves against those they might have cause to stand in Fear of, who were generally their own Kindred. There are still at *Harmuz* on a Hill, near the Hermitage of St. *Lucy*, a little above a Mile from the City, the Ruins of certain Towers, where the Kings kept their Kindred, who had been blinded

ed on this Account. The Manner of blinding them was this, they took a Copper Bason, and making it violent hot at the Fire, pass'd it along three or four, or more times close before the Eyes of the Person that was to be blinded, and thus they lost their Sight, without any other Harm, the Optick Nerves being quite spoilt by the Heat, and the Eyes as fair and clear to look at as before. *Mamud Homer* being blinded, *Schady* remain'd possess'd of the Island of *Keys*. The News of it being brought to *Turon Scha*, he presently sent out in Quest of *Kady*, who had Notice so late, that tho' he would have fled and left the Island he could not, for *Turon Scha* beset him closely by Sea. It was then Winter, and tho' the Sea was closely observ'd by the King's People, yet it being extreamly dark, *Schady* at length ship'd off in a *Tarranquin*, or small Vessel, and made to *Lapht*, a Port in the Island of *Queixome*. The King being inform'd of it, immediately pursu'd him, and cast Anchor at *Dargahon*, a Town near to *Lapht*, in the same Island; they who were with *Schady* hearing of it, left him alone and fled to the King. *Schady* finding himself forsaken, got speedily into his *Tarranquin*, and sail'd towards *Barhen*, with such Expedition, that tho' the King sent the first Moment to sieze him, he was gone. Being come to *Barhen*, *Schady* dy'd for meer Vexation, leaving a Son very young, on whom King *Turon Scha* bestow'd his Father's Place. But *Schambe*, Brother to the late *Schady*, who we said was fled to *Schyras*, hearing of his Brother's Death, hasted to *Barhen*, where finding a fit Disposition of Affairs, he took bloody Revenge of all those, who in the late Troubles between his Brother *Schady* and himself, had espous'd the

the other Side, killing many of them, without sparing the Infant, Son to his Brother; and many for Fear fled out of the Island. One *Mir Ageb*, a prime Man, resenting so much Tyranny and Insolence, with the Assistance of his Kindred and others that would follow him, assaulted *Schambe*'s House, and plundering it, kill'd him. *Schambe* had imprison'd one *Aly Mahamed Palaon*, a Commander of Note, who was immediately set at Liberty. *Mir Ageb* thought, with his Assistance, to have usurp'd the Sovereignty of the Island; and he not only consented, but taking along with him another *Arabian* Commander, of the Tribe, or Hord of *Ben Isasah*, call'd *Scheque Hamed Raxet*, went over to the Fortress of *Katifa*, on the Continent of *Arabia*, where *Scheque Mayed* was Governour, of whom *Palaon* demanded some Forces, to oppose *Mir Ageb*. The Governour suspecting that these two intended to usurp the Island of *Barhen*, did not only refuse what they ask'd, but secur'd them, and sent them over, in the Custody of an Officer call'd *Aly Maxady*, to *Harmuz*, to *Turon Scha*; who hearing what had happen'd, embark'd for *Barhen* and took them along with him. Being come to the Island, *Mir Ageb* demanded of him the Sovereignty of the Island, in Return for the Service he pretended to have done him in killing of *Schambe*, which the King refus'd and resolv'd to punish him. *Ageb* being inform'd of it, departed *Manania*, the principal Port in the Island, and retir'd to *Thiar*, another on the Back of it, where being found by the King's Party, he was brought before him, and had his Head struck off; and finding the two Prisoners had not serv'd against him, he gave them their

their Liberty and Preferment. Having settled the Affairs of *Barhen*, *Turon Scha* had a Mind to see *Katifa*, which is seated on the Coast of the Continent of *Arabia*, opposite to the Island, and only parted from it by a narrow Arm of the Sea. He went over with his Forces, and was well receiv'd and entertain'd by *Scheque Maged*, and having diverted himself there some Days, return'd to *Barhen*, and thence to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*. Thus far is taken from the History of this *Turon Scha*. He spent the rest of his Life in Peace, and when he had govern'd 30 Years dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 779, of CHRIST 1378.

Turon Scha's Sons succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Harmuz* after this Manner. *Massud* the eldest, who enjoy'd it peaceably during his Life.

Schabadin, the Second, in whose Time tho' there were some Commotions, they were not considerable, but easily quell'd.

Salgor Scha was the third, in whose Days there started up in *Persia*, *Suphy Khalila*, mention'd by us in the Account of the Kings of *Persia*, and possess'd himself of that whole Kingdom, to the very Coast, opposite to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*; whither he would fain have pass'd over, but could not, for want of Shipping; and it is said, that for meer Vexation he design'd to have level'd Mountains to fill up the Sea. It is reported, that *Salgor*, being inform'd of *Khalila*'s Concern and Trouble, went about the Island and City, singing in the Streets some *Persian* Verses in this Effect, *Dele Durzman bara man Kabab hast, Ke aguerd Aguerd Man darial hast*, the Meaning whereof is, My Enemy's Heart burns, because he sees I am encompass'd by the Seas. At last *Khalila* went away, without taking from him any thing but what he had on the Continent, where the Kings of *Harmuz* did and do still possess, tho'

tho' not so absolutely as before, seventy Leages along the Coast of the Gulph of *Persia*, and 28 up the Land, wherein are comprehended the *Amedizes* and *Gaules*, fierce and warlike Nations. I know not whether the Fiction of *Amadis de Gaul* was not deriv'd from hence. The Kings of *Harmuz* enjoy these Lands, paying those of *Persia* a certain Acknowledgment, which they call *Mokararias*, that he may not ravage them, as he does sometimes, when the Tribute is held back. It is to be observ'd that this *Sophy Khalila*, here spoken of, liv'd long before *Ismael Sophy*, who reign'd in *Persia*, when the *Portugueses* went to *Harmuz*. *Salgor* had no other remarkable War besides this, but spent his Days in Peace.

Schawes succeeded in the Throne, upon the Death of *Salgor*; under whom that Kingdom throve considerably, as enjoying Peace, no Disturbance hapning during his Reign. *Schames* dying,

Seyfadin inherited the Crown of *Harmuz*, and was possess'd of it, when the *Portugueses*, under the Command of *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, in the Year of our Lord 1507, possess'd themselves of that Kingdom, still allowing the Native Kings to Reign from Father to Son, as they did before; with this difference, that what before they held independent of any Man, they now enjoy by Grant of the King, who bestows on them the Inheritance of the Crown, and they have only the Government of their *Mahometan* Subjects, and even that with some Restriction. The King may not go out of the Island without the *Portugese* Governor's Leave, who for some Time us'd to grant it, but afterwards would not. They carry'd themselves in princely Manner, and had

had considerable Customs, the best Part whereof the *Portuguese* Governours diverted to their own Use. I proceed no farther in the Affairs of this Kindom after this Time, because they are treated of at large in the Commentaries of *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, and the Second Decade of *Ioao de Bayrros*. If any curious Person happning to be in the Eastern Parts, shall have a Mind to enquire after the Actions of *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, which are truly worthy of perpetual Fame, let him ask the *Mahometans* for *Malandy*, for they know him by no other Name, and that is it they give him, when they mention his Actions. I was some time puzzled about the Reason and Occasion of that Name, 'till I was inform'd, that they call him so, because he came from the Parts about *Melinde*, which they call *Maland*, and *Malandy* is a Man, or other thing that comes from thence; the Reader is desir'd to be satisfy'd with thus much, and to pardon all Faults.

Here *Teixeira* ends his History of the Kings of *Ormuz*, and indeed they had nothing left under the *Portuguese* Government but the bare Title and some small Revenue, being Prisoners confin'd to that Place, and for the most Part basely treated by the Governours. That Island was long since taking from the *Portugueses* by the *Persians*, who continue Masters of it to this Day.

F I N I S.